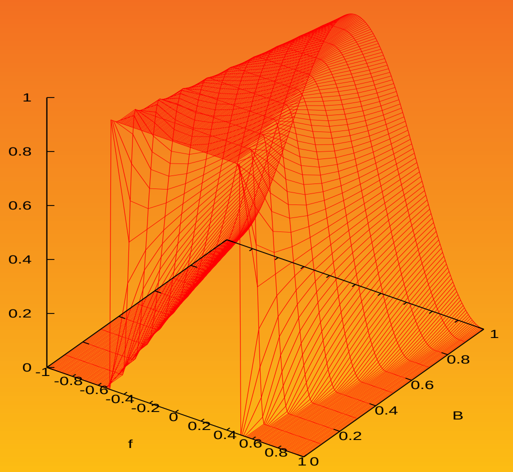
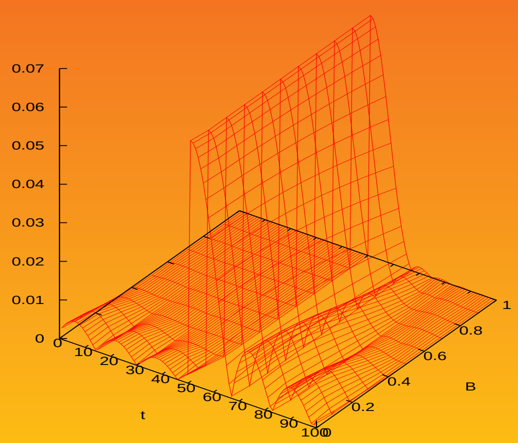
A Book Concerning Digital Communications

VERSION 0.01





Daniel J. Greenhoe

Signal Processing ABCs **series**

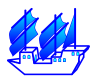
volume 4

title:	*A Book Concerning Digital Communications*
document type:	`book`
series:	*Signal Processing ABCs*
volume:	$\boxed{4}$
author:	Daniel J. Greenhoe
version:	VERSION 0.01
time stamp:	2019 September 03 (Tuesday) 10:42pm UTC
copyright:	Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
license:	Creative Commons license CC BY-NC-ND 4.0
typesetting engine:	XeLaTeX
document url:	https://github.com/dgreenhoe/pdfs/blob/master/abcdc.pdf

This text was typeset using XƎLaTeX, which is part of the TeXfamily of typesetting engines, which is arguably the greatest development since the Gutenberg Press. Graphics were rendered using the *pstricks* and related packages, and LaTeX graphics support.

The main roman, *italic*, and **bold** font typefaces used are all from the *Heuristica* family of typefaces (based on the *Utopia* typeface, released by *Adobe Systems Incorporated*). The math font is XITS from the XITS font project. The font used in quotation boxes is adapted from *Zapf Chancery Medium Italic*, originally from URW++ Design and Development Incorporated. The font used for the text in the title is Adventor (similar to *Avant-Garde*) from the *TeX-Gyre Project*. The font used for the ISBN in the footer of individual pages is LIQUID CRYSTAL (*Liquid Crystal*) from *FontLab Studio*. The Latin handwriting font is Lavi from the *Free Software Foundation*.

The ship appearing throughout this text is loosely based on the *Golden Hind*, a sixteenth century English galleon famous for circumnavigating the globe.[1]



[1] Paine (2000) page 63 ⟨Golden Hind⟩

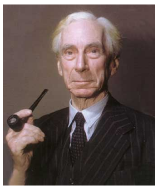
❝Here, on the level sand,
Between the sea and land,
What shall I build or write
Against the fall of night?❞

❝Tell me of runes to grave
That hold the bursting wave,
Or bastions to design
For longer date than mine.❞

Alfred Edward Housman, English poet (1859–1936) [2]

❝The uninitiated imagine that one must await inspiration in order to create. That is a mistake. I am far from saying that there is no such thing as inspiration; quite the opposite. It is found as a driving force in every kind of human activity, and is in no wise peculiar to artists. But that force is brought into action by an effort, and that effort is work. Just as appetite comes by eating so work brings inspiration, if inspiration is not discernible at the beginning.❞

Igor Fyodorovich Stravinsky (1882–1971), Russian-born composer [3]



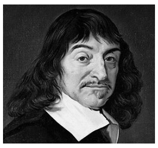
❝As I think about acts of integrity and grace, I realise that there is nothing in my knowledge to compare with Frege's dedication to truth. His entire life's work was on the verge of completion, much of his work had been ignored to the benefit of men infinitely less capable, his second volume was about to be published, and upon finding that his fundamental assumption was in error, he responded with intellectual pleasure clearly submerging any feelings of personal disappointment. It was almost superhuman and a telling indication of that of which men are capable if their dedication is to creative work and knowledge instead of cruder efforts to dominate and be known.❞

Bertrand Russell (1872–1970), British mathematician, in a 1962 November 23 letter to Dr. van Heijenoort. [4]

[2] quote: Housman (1936), page 64 ⟨“Smooth Between Sea and Land”⟩, Hardy (1940) ⟨section 7⟩
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Housman.jpg
[3] quote: Ewen (1961), page 408, Ewen (1950)
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Igor_Stravinsky.jpg
[4] quote: Heijenoort (1967), page 127
image: http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/PictDisplay/Russell.html

SYMBOLS

❝ *rugula XVI. Quae vero praesentem mentis attentionem non requirunt, etiamsi ad conclusionem necessaria sint, illa melius est per brevissimas notas designare quam per integras figuras: ita enim memoria non poterit falli, nec tamen interim cogitatio distrahetur ad haec retinenda, dum aliis deducendis incumbit.* ❞



❝ *Rule XVI. As for things which do not require the immediate attention of the mind, however necessary they may be for the conclusion, it is better to represent them by very concise symbols rather than by complete figures. It will thus be impossible for our memory to go wrong, and our mind will not be distracted by having to retain these while it is taken up with deducing other matters.* ❞

René Descartes (1596–1650), French philosopher and mathematician [5]

❝ *In signs one observes an advantage in discovery which is greatest when they express the exact nature of a thing briefly and, as it were, picture it; then indeed the labor of thought is wonderfully diminished.* ❞

Gottfried Leibniz (1646–1716), German mathematician, [6]

Symbol list

symbol	description	
numbers:		
$\mathbb{Z}$	integers	$\ldots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbb{W}$	whole numbers	$0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbb{N}$	natural numbers	$1, 2, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbb{Z}^{\dashv}$	non-positive integers	$\ldots, -3, -2, -1, 0$

…continued on next page…

[5] quote: Descartes (1684a) ⟨rugula XVI⟩, translation: Descartes (1684b) ⟨rule XVI⟩, image: Frans Hals (circa 1650), `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Descartes`, public domain

[6] quote: Cajori (1993) ⟨paragraph 540⟩, image: `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gottfried_Wilhelm_von_Leibniz.jpg`, public domain

symbol	description	
$\mathbb{Z}^-$	negative integers	$\ldots, -3, -2, -1$
$\mathbb{Z}_o$	odd integers	$\ldots, -3, -1, 1, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbb{Z}_e$	even integers	$\ldots, -4, -2, 0, 2, 4, \ldots$
$\mathbb{Q}$	rational numbers	$\frac{m}{n}$ with $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}\backslash 0$
$\mathbb{R}$	real numbers	completion of $\mathbb{Q}$
$\mathbb{R}^{\vdash}$	non-negative real numbers	$[0, \infty)$
$\mathbb{R}^{\dashv}$	non-positive real numbers	$(-\infty, 0]$
$\mathbb{R}^+$	positive real numbers	$(0, \infty)$
$\mathbb{R}^-$	negative real numbers	$(-\infty, 0)$
$\mathbb{R}^*$	extended real numbers	$\mathbb{R}^* \triangleq \mathbb{R} \cup \{-\infty, \infty\}$
$\mathbb{C}$	complex numbers	
$\mathbb{F}$	arbitrary field	(often either $\mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$)
∞	positive infinity	
$-\infty$	negative infinity	
π	pi	$3.14159265\ldots$
relations:		
®	relation	
Ⓐ	relational and	
$X \times Y$	Cartesian product of X and Y	
$(\triangle, \triangledown)$	ordered pair	
$\lvert z\rvert$	absolute value of a complex number z	
$=$	equality relation	
$\triangleq$	equality by definition	
$\to$	maps to	
$\in$	is an element of	
$\notin$	is not an element of	
$\mathcal{D}$(®)	domain of a relation ®	
$\mathcal{I}$(®)	image of a relation ®	
$\mathcal{R}$(®)	range of a relation ®	
$\mathcal{N}$(®)	null space of a relation ®	
set relations:		
$\subseteq$	subset	
$\subsetneq$	proper subset	
$\supseteq$	super set	
$\supsetneq$	proper superset	
$\nsubseteq$	is not a subset of	
$\not\subset$	is not a proper subset of	
operations on sets:		
$A \cup B$	set union	
$A \cap B$	set intersection	
$A \triangle B$	set symmetric difference	
$A \backslash B$	set difference	
A^c	set complement	
$\lvert\cdot\rvert$	set order	
$\mathbb{1}_A(x)$	set indicator function or characteristic function	
logic:		
1	"true" condition	
0	"false" condition	
$\neg$	logical NOT operation	

...continued on next page...

symbol	description	
$\wedge$	logical AND operation	
$\vee$	logical inclusive OR operation	
$\oplus$	logical exclusive OR operation	
$\Longrightarrow$	"implies";	"only if"
$\Longleftarrow$	"implied by";	"if"
$\Longleftrightarrow$	"if and only if";	"implies and is implied by"
$\forall$	universal quantifier:	"for each"
$\exists$	existential quantifier:	"there exists"
order on sets:		
$\vee$	join or least upper bound	
$\wedge$	meet or greatest lower bound	
$\le$	reflexive ordering relation	"less than or equal to"
$\ge$	reflexive ordering relation	"greater than or equal to"
$<$	irreflexive ordering relation	"less than"
$>$	irreflexive ordering relation	"greater than"
measures on sets:		
$\lvert X \rvert$	order or counting measure of a set X	
distance spaces:		
d	metric or distance function	
linear spaces:		
$\lVert\cdot\rVert$	vector norm	
$\lvert\lVert\cdot\rVert\rvert$	operator norm	
$\langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle$	inner-product	
$\operatorname{span}(\boldsymbol{V})$	span of a linear space $\boldsymbol{V}$	
algebras:		
$\Re$	real part of an element in a $*$-algebra	
$\Im$	imaginary part of an element in a $*$-algebra	
set structures:		
$\boldsymbol{T}$	a topology of sets	
$\boldsymbol{R}$	a ring of sets	
$\boldsymbol{A}$	an algebra of sets	
$\varnothing$	empty set	
2^X	power set on a set X	
sets of set structures:		
$\mathcal{T}(X)$	set of topologies on a set X	
$\mathcal{R}(X)$	set of rings of sets on a set X	
$\mathcal{A}(X)$	set of algebras of sets on a set X	
classes of relations/functions/operators:		
2^{XY}	set of *relations* from X to Y	
Y^X	set of *functions* from X to Y	
$\mathcal{S}_{\mathsf{j}}(X,Y)$	set of *surjective* functions from X to Y	
$\mathcal{I}_{\mathsf{j}}(X,Y)$	set of *injective* functions from X to Y	
$\mathcal{B}_{\mathsf{j}}(X,Y)$	set of *bijective* functions from X to Y	
$\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	set of *bounded* functions/operators from $\boldsymbol{X}$ to $\boldsymbol{Y}$	
$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	set of *linear bounded* functions/operators from $\boldsymbol{X}$ to $\boldsymbol{Y}$	
$\mathcal{C}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	set of *continuous* functions/operators from $\boldsymbol{X}$ to $\boldsymbol{Y}$	
specific transforms/operators:		
$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$	*Fourier Transform* operator	
$\hat{\mathbf{F}}$	*Fourier Series* operator	

...continued on next page...

symbol	description
$\breve{\mathbf{F}}$	*Discrete Time Fourier Series* operator
$\mathbf{Z}$	*Z-Transform* operator
$\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$	*Fourier Transform* of a function $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$
$\breve{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)$	*Discrete Time Fourier Transform* of a sequence $\left(x_n \in \mathbb{C}\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$
$\check{\mathsf{x}}(z)$	*Z-Transform* of a sequence $\left(x_n \in \mathbb{C}\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$

SYMBOL INDEX

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

COMMUNICATION CHANNELS

1.1 System model

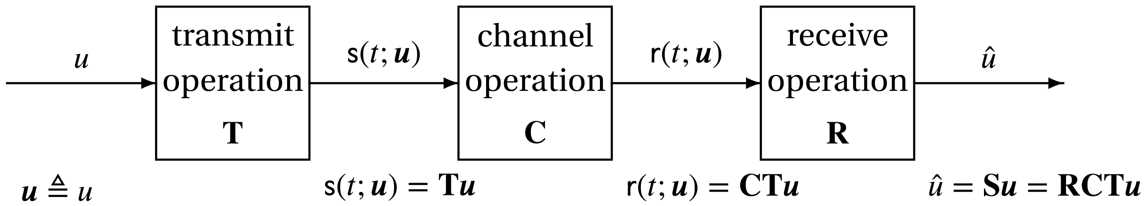


Figure 1.1: Communication system model

A communication system is an operator. $\mathbf{S}$ over an information sequence u that generates an estimated information sequence $\hat{u}$. The system operator factors into a receive operator $\mathbf{R}$, a channel operator $\mathbf{C}$, and a transmit operator $\mathbf{T}$ such that

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{RCT}.$$

The transmit operator operates on an information sequence u to generate a channel signal $\mathsf{s}(t;\boldsymbol{u})$. The channel operator operates on the transmitted signal $\mathsf{s}(t;\boldsymbol{u})$ to generate the received signal $\mathsf{r}(t;\boldsymbol{u})$. The receive operator operates on the received signal $\mathsf{r}(t;\boldsymbol{u})$ to generate the estimate $\hat{u}$ (see Figure 1.1 (page 1)).

Definition 1.1. *Let U be the set of all sequences u and let*

DEF

$$\begin{array}{llll}
\mathbf{S} & : U & \to U & \textit{(system operator)} \\
\mathbf{T} & : U & \to \mathbb{R}^\infty & \textit{(transmit operator)} \\
\mathbf{C} & : \mathbb{R}^\infty & \to \mathbb{R}^\infty & \textit{(channel operator)} \\
\mathbf{R} & : \mathbb{R}^\infty & \to U & \textit{(receive operator)}
\end{array}$$

*be operators. A **digital communication system** is the operation $\mathbf{S}$ on the set of information sequences U such that $\mathbf{S} \triangleq \mathbf{RCT}$.*

Communication systems can be continuous or discrete valued in time and/or amplitude:

$s(t) = a(t)\psi(t)$	continuous time t	discrete time t
continuous amplitude $a(t)$	analog communications	discrete-time communications
discrete amplitude $a(t)$	—	digital communications

In this document, we normally take the approach that

1. $\mathbf{C}$ is stochastic
2. There is no structural constraint on $\mathbf{R}$.
3. $\mathbf{R}$ is optimum with respect to the ML-criterion.

These characteristics are explained more fully below.

1.1.1 Channel operator

Real-world physical channels perform a number of operations on a signal. Often these operations are closely modeled by a channel operator $\mathbf{C}$. Properties that characterize a particular channel operator associated with some physical channel include

- linear or non-linear
- time-invariant or time-variant
- memoryless or non-memoryless
- deterministic or stochastic.

Examples of physical channels include free space, air, water, soil, copper wire, and fiber optic cable. Information is carried through a channel using some physical process. These processes include:

Process	Example
electromagnetic waves	free space, air
acoustic waves	water, soil
electric field potential (voltage)	wire
light	fiber optic cable
quantum mechanics	

1.1.2 Receive operator

Let $\mathbf{I}$ be the *identity operator* (Definition I.3 page 220). Ideally, $\mathbf{R}$ is selected such that $\mathbf{RCT} = \mathbf{I}$. In this case we say that $\mathbf{R}$ is the *left inverse*[1] of $\mathbf{CT}$ and denote this left inverse by $\mathbf{C}$. One example of a system where this inverse exists is the noiseless ISI system. While this is quite useful for mathematical analysis and system design, $\mathbf{C}$ does not actually exist for any real-world system.

When $\mathbf{C}$ does not exist, the "ideal" $\mathbf{R}$ is one that is optimum

1. with respect to some *criterion* (or cost function)
2. and sometimes under some structural *constraint*.

[1] $\mathbf{X}^{-1}X$ is the *left inverse* of $\mathbf{X}$ if $\mathbf{X}^{-1}X\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{I}$.
$\mathbf{X}^{-1}X$ is the *right inverse* of $\mathbf{X}$ if $\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^{-1}X = \mathbf{I}$.
$\mathbf{X}^{-1}X$ is the *inverse* of $\mathbf{X}$ if $\mathbf{X}^{-1}X\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^{-1}X = \mathbf{I}$.

When a structural constraint is imposed on $\mathbf{R}$, the solution is called *structured*; otherwise, it is called *non-structured*.[2] A common example of a structured approach is the use of a transversal filter (FIR filter in DSP) in which optimal coefficients are found for the filter. A structured $\mathbf{R}$ is only optimal with respect to the imposed constraint. Even though $\mathbf{R}$ may be optimal with respect to this structure, $\mathbf{R}$ may not be optimal in general; that is, there may be another structure that would lead to a "better" solution. In a non-structured approach, $\mathbf{R}$ is free to take any form whatsoever (practical or impractical) and therefore leads to the best of the best solutions.

The nature of $\mathbf{R}$ depends heavily on the nature of $\mathbf{C}$. If $\mathbf{C}$ does not exist, then the ideal $\mathbf{R}$ is one that is optimal with respect to some criterion. If $\mathbf{C}$ is deterministic, then appropriate optimization criterion may include

- least square error (LSE) criterion
- minimum absolute error criterion
- minimum peak distortion criterion.

If $\mathbf{C}$ is stochastic then appropriate optimization criterion may include

- Bayes: pdf known and cost function defined
- Maximum aposteriori probability (MAP): pdf known and uniform cost function
- Maximum likelihood (ML): pdf known and no prior probability information
- mini-max: pdf not known but a cost function is defined
- Neyman-Pearson: pdf not known and no cost function defined.

Making $\mathbf{R}$ optimum with respect to one of these criterion leads to an *estimate* $\hat{u} = \mathbf{RCT}\boldsymbol{u}$ that is also optimum with respect to the same criterion (Definition C.1 page 162).

1.2 Optimization in the case of additional operations

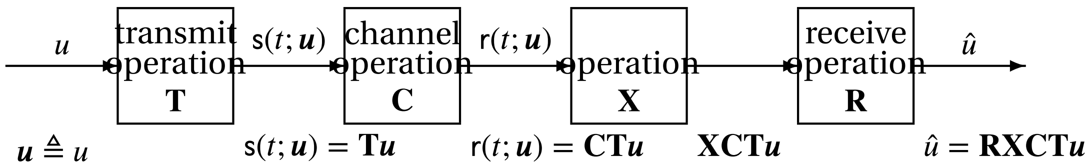


Figure 1.2: Theorem of reversibility

Often in communication systems, an additional operator $\mathbf{X}$ is inserted such that (see Figure 1.2 (page 3))

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{RXCT}.$$

An example of such an operator $\mathbf{X}$ is a receive filter. Is it still possible to find an $\mathbf{R}$ that will perform as well as the case where $\mathbf{X}$ is not inserted? In general, the answer is "no". For example, if $\mathbf{X}r = 0$, then all received information is lost and obviously there is no $\mathbf{R}$ that can recover from this event. However, in the case where the right inverse $\mathbf{X}^{-1}X$ of $\mathbf{X}$ exists, then the answer to the question is "yes" and an optimum $\mathbf{R}$ still exists. That is, it doesn't matter if an $\mathbf{X}$ is inserted into system as long as $\mathbf{X}$ is invertible. This is stated formally in the next theorem.

Theorem 1.1 (Theorem of Reversibility). [3] *Let*

[2] Trees (2001) page 12
[3] Trees (2001) pages 289–290

- *$\hat{\theta}$_$\mathbf{RCT}\boldsymbol{u}$ be the optimum estimate of $\boldsymbol{u}$*
- *$\mathbf{X}$ be an operator with right inverse $\mathbf{X}^{-1}X$.*

Then there exists some $\mathbf{R}'$ such that

THM $\hat{\theta}$_$\mathbf{R}'\mathbf{XCT}\boldsymbol{u}$.

✎PROOF: Let $\mathbf{R}' = \mathbf{RX}^{-1}X$. Then

$$\mathbf{R}'\mathbf{XCT}\boldsymbol{u} = \mathbf{RX}^{-1}X\mathbf{CT}\boldsymbol{u} = \mathbf{RCT}\boldsymbol{u} = \hat{\theta}.$$

✏

1.3 Alternative system partitioning

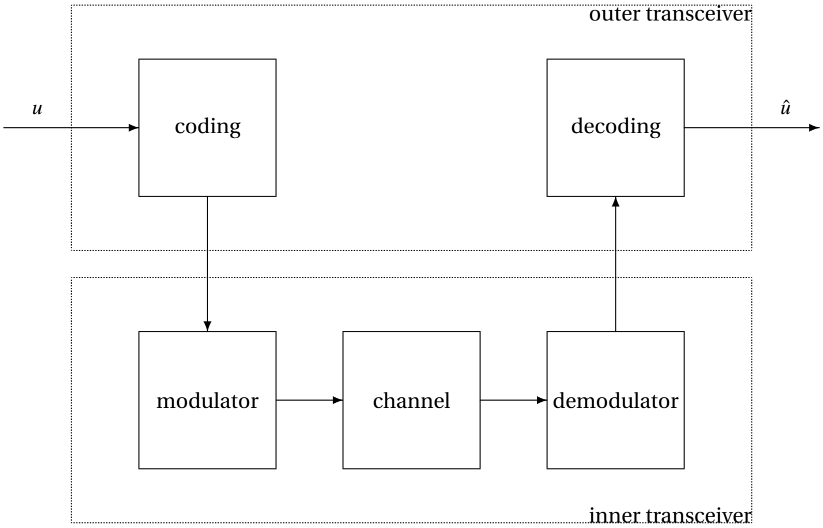


Figure 1.3: Inner/outer transceiver

A communication system can be partitioned into two parts (see Figure 1.3 (page 4)):[4]

1. outer transceiver: data encoding/decoding
2. inner transceiver: modulation/demodulation.

The outer transceiver can perform several types of coding on the data sequence to be transmitted:

1. source coding: compress data sequence size (lower limit is Shannon Entropy H)
2. channel coding: modify data sequence such that errors induced by the channel can be detected and corrected (all errors can be theoretically corrected if the data rate is at or below the Shannon channel capacity C).
3. modulation coding: make sequence "more suitable" for transmission through channel
4. encryption: increase the difficulty which an eavesdropper would need to be able to know the data sequence.

[4] Meyr et al. (1998), page 2

1.4 Channel Statistics

The receiver needs to make a decision as to what sequence $(\!(u)\!)$ the transmitter has sent. This decision should be optimal in some sense. Very often the optimization criterion is chosen to be the *maximal likelihood (ML)* criterion. The information that the receiver can use to make an optimal decision is the received signal $\mathsf{r}(t)$.

If the symbols in $\mathsf{r}(t)$ are statistically *independent*, then the optimal estimate of the current symbol depends only on the current symbol period of $\mathsf{r}(t)$. Using other symbol periods of $\mathsf{r}(t)$ has absolutely no additional benefit. Note that the AWGN channel is *memoryless*; that is, the way the channel treats the current symbol has nothing to do with the way it has treated any other symbol. Therefore, if the symbols sent by the transmitter into the channel are independent, the symbols coming out of the channel are also independent.

However, also note that the symbols sent by the transmitter are often very intentionally not independent; but rather a strong relationship between symbols is intentionally introduced. This relationship is called *channel coding*. With proper channel coding, it is theoretically possible to reduce the probability of communication error to any arbitrarily small value as long as the channel is operating below its *channel capacity*.

This chapter assumes that the received symbols are statistically independent; and therefore optimal decisions at the receiver for the current symbol are made only from the current symbol period of $\mathsf{r}(t)$.

The received signal $\mathsf{r}(t)$ over a single symbol period contains an uncountably infinite number of points. That is a lot. It would be nice if the receiver did not have to look at all those uncountably infinite number of points when making an optimal decision. And in fact the receiver does indeed not have to. As it turns out, a single finite set of *statistics* $\left\{\dot{r}_1,\ \dot{r}_2, \ldots, \dot{r}_N\right\}$ is sufficient for the receiver to make an optimal decision as to which value the transmitter sent.

CHAPTER 2

NARROWBAND SIGNALS

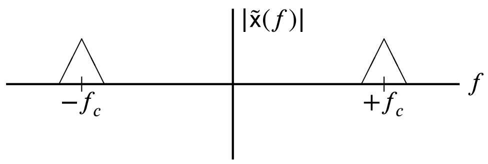


Figure 2.1: Narrowband signal

Communication systems are often assumed to be *narrowband* meaning the bandwidth of the information carrying signal is "small" compared to the carrier frequency (see Figure 2.1 (page 7)).

Definition 2.1. *Let* $x : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ *be an information carrying waveform,* $\tilde{x}(f) = [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}x](f)$ *and* $f_c \in \mathbb{R}$.

DEF

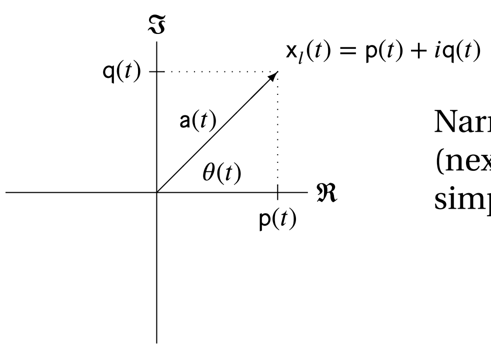
$x(t)$ *is a* ***narrowband signal*** *if*

(1). *The energy of* $\tilde{x}(f)$ *is located in the vicinity of frequency* $\pm f_c$ *and*

(2). *the bandwidth of* $\tilde{x}(f)$ *is "small" compared to* f_c.

If $x(t)$ *is the transmitted signal in a communication system* $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{RCT}$ *such that* $x(t) = \mathbf{T}u$*, then* $\mathbf{S}$ *is a* ***narrowband system***.

2.1 Time representation



Narrowband signals have three common time representations (next definition). These three forms are equivalent under some simple relations (next proposition).

Definition 2.2. *Let the following quantities be defined as*

DEF

$\mathsf{a} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$	*amplitude*	$\theta : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$	*phase*
$\mathsf{p} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$	*quadrature component*	$\mathsf{q} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$	*inphase component*
$\mathsf{x}_l : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$	*complex envelope.*		

A narrowband signal $\mathsf{x} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ *can be represented by any of the following three* ***canonical forms***:

DEF

1. *amplitude and phase:* $\mathsf{x}(t) = \mathsf{a}(t)\cos\left[2\pi f_c t + \theta(t)\right]$
2. *quadrature:*[1] $\mathsf{x}(t) = \mathsf{p}(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) - \mathsf{q}(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t)$
3. *complex envelope:* $\mathsf{x}(t) = \mathbf{R_e}\left[\mathsf{x}_l(t)e^{i2\pi f_c t}\right]$.

Proposition 2.1. *Under the relations*

$$\mathsf{x}_l(t) = \mathsf{p}(t) + i\mathsf{q}(t) = \mathsf{a}(t)e^{i\theta(t)},$$

the three forms given in Definition 2.2 (page 7) are equivalent and

PRP

$$\begin{array}{rclrcl}
\mathsf{a}(t) &=& \sqrt{\mathsf{p}^2(t)+\mathsf{q}^2(t)} & \theta(t) &=& \arctan\frac{\mathsf{q}(t)}{\mathsf{p}(t)}\\
\mathsf{p}(t) &=& \mathsf{a}(t)\cos\theta & \mathsf{q}(t) &=& \mathsf{a}(t)\sin\theta\\
\mathsf{p}(t) &=& \mathbf{R_e}\left[\mathsf{s}_l(t)\right] & \mathsf{q}(t) &=& \mathbf{I_m}\left[\mathsf{s}_l(t)\right]
\end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

Proof that (1) $\iff$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{x}(t) &= \mathsf{a}(t)\cos\left[2\pi f_c t + \theta(t)\right]\\
&= \mathsf{a}(t)\cos[\theta(t)]\cos[2\pi f_c t] - \mathsf{a}(t)\sin[\theta(t)]\sin[2\pi f_c t]\\
&= \mathsf{p}(t)\cos[2\pi f_c t] - \mathsf{q}(t)\sin[2\pi f_c t]
\end{aligned}$$

Proof that (2) $\iff$ (3):

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{x}(t) &= \mathsf{p}(t)\cos[2\pi f_c t] - \mathsf{q}(t)\sin[2\pi f_c t]\\
&= \mathfrak{R}\left([\mathsf{p}(t)+i\mathsf{q}(t)][\cos(2\pi f_c t) + i\sin(2\pi f_c t)]\right)\\
&= \mathbf{R_e}\left[s_l(t)e^{i2\pi f_c t}\right].
\end{aligned}$$

Component relations:

$$\begin{array}{rclcl}
\mathsf{p} &=& \mathbf{R_e}\left[\mathsf{p}+i\mathsf{q}\right] &=& \mathbf{R_e}\left[\mathsf{x}_l\right]\\
\mathsf{q} &=& \mathbf{I_m}\left[\mathsf{p}+i\mathsf{q}\right] &=& \mathbf{I_m}\left[\mathsf{x}_l\right]
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{rclclclcl}
\mathsf{p} &=& \mathbf{R_e}\left[\mathsf{p}+i\mathsf{q}\right] &=& \mathbf{R_e}\left[\mathsf{a}e^{i\theta}\right] &=& \mathbf{R_e}\left[\mathsf{a}\cos\theta + i\mathsf{a}\sin\theta\right] &=& \mathsf{a}\cos\theta\\
\mathsf{q} &=& \mathbf{I_m}\left[\mathsf{p}+i\mathsf{q}\right] &=& \mathbf{I_m}\left[\mathsf{a}e^{i\theta}\right] &=& \mathbf{I_m}\left[\mathsf{a}\cos\theta + i\mathsf{a}\sin\theta\right] &=& \mathsf{a}\sin\theta
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{rclclcl}
\mathsf{a}^2 &=& \mathsf{a}^2(\cos^2\theta+\sin^2\theta) &=& (\mathsf{a}\cos\theta)^2 + (\mathsf{a}\sin\theta)^2 &=& \mathsf{p}^2+\mathsf{q}^2\\
\tan\theta &=& \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} &=& \frac{\mathsf{a}\sin\theta}{\mathsf{a}\cos\theta} &=& \frac{\mathsf{q}}{\mathsf{p}}
\end{array}$$

✏

2.2 Frequency Representation

Any real-valued time signal $\mathsf{x} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is always *hermitian symmetric* in frequency such that (see Figure 2.2 (page 9)) $\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(f) = \tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(-f)$.

[1] $\mathsf{x}(t) = \mathsf{p}(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) - \mathsf{q}(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t)$ is also known as *Rice's representation*.
Reference: (Mandyam D. Srinath, 1996, page 23)

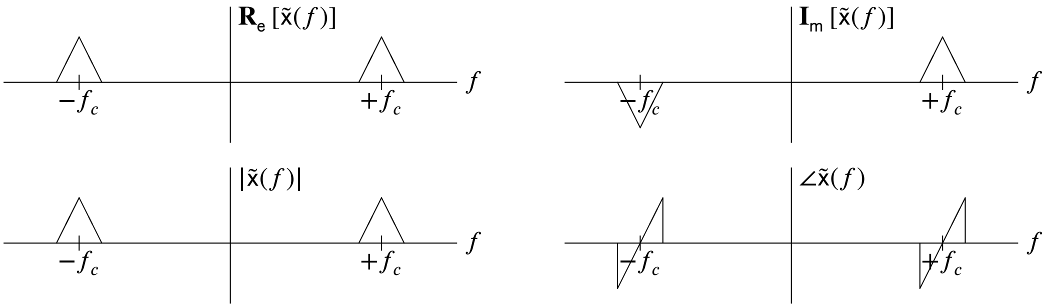


Figure 2.2: Frequency characteristics of any real-valued signal $x(t)$

Theorem 2.1. *For any real valued function* $x : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ *with Fourier transform* $\tilde{x} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$ [2]

THM

$$\left\{ x \text{ is } \textbf{\textit{real-valued}} \right\} \implies \left\{ \begin{array}{llcll} (1). & \tilde{x}(f) & = & \tilde{x}^*(-f) & \textit{(hermitian symmetric)} \quad \textit{and} \\ (2). & \mathbf{R_e}[\tilde{x}(f)] & = & \mathbf{R_e}[\tilde{x}(-f)] & \textit{(symmetric)} \quad \textit{and} \\ (3). & \mathbf{I_m}[\tilde{x}(f)] & = & -\mathbf{I_m}[\tilde{x}(-f)] & \textit{(anti-symmetric)} \quad \textit{and} \\ (4). & |\tilde{x}(f)| & = & |\tilde{x}(-f)| & \textit{(symmetric)} \quad \textit{and} \\ (5). & \angle\tilde{x}(f) & = & -\angle\tilde{x}(-f) & \textit{(anti-symmetric)} \end{array} \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{array}{lclclclcl} \tilde{x}(f) & \triangleq & [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}x(t)](f) & \triangleq & \langle x(t) \mid e^{i2\pi f t} \rangle & = & \langle x(t) \mid e^{i2\pi(-f)t} \rangle^* & \triangleq & \tilde{x}^*(-f) \\ \mathbf{R_e}[\tilde{x}(f)] & = & \mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{x}^*(-f)\right] & = & \mathbf{R_e}[\tilde{x}(-f)] \\ \mathbf{I_m}[\tilde{x}(f)] & = & \mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{x}^*(-f)\right] & = & -\mathbf{I_m}[\tilde{x}(-f)] \\ |\tilde{x}(f)| & = & |\tilde{x}^*(-f)| & = & |\tilde{x}(-f)| \\ \angle\tilde{x}(f) & = & \angle\tilde{x}^*(-f) & = & -\angle\tilde{x}(-f) \end{array}$$

✏

2.3 Lowpass representation

The complex envelope $x_l : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$ of a narrowband signal $x : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is sometimes called the **low-pass representation** of $x(t)$. Because all the information carried by $x(t)$ is contained within a small band of $\tilde{x}(f)$, the lowpass representation $x_l(t)$ along with the parameter f_c is a sufficient representation of $x(t)$ and thus the high frequency factor $e^{i2\pi f_c t}$ may be ignored.

The sufficiency of the low-pass representation $x_l(t)$ is demonstrated in that

1. $x_l(t)$ together with f_c is sufficient to represent $x(t)$ in time (by Definition 2.2 (page 7))
2. $\tilde{x}_l(f)$ together with f_c is sufficient to represent $\tilde{x}(f)$ in frequency (Theorem 2.2 (page 9))
3. $x_l(t)$ is sufficient to calculate the energy in $x(t)$ (Theorem 2.2 (page 9))
4. $x_l(t)$ and the impulse response $h(t)$ of an LTI operation is sufficient to calculate the output of the LTI operation on $x(t)$ (Theorem 2.3 (page 11)).

Theorem 2.2. *Let* $x : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ *be a narrowband signal at center frequency* $f_c \in \mathbb{R}$ *and* $x_l : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$ *the complex envelope of* $x(t)$ *such that* $x(t) = \mathbf{R_e}\left[x_l(t)e^{-i2\pi f_c t}\right]$. *Then*

[2] *Fourier transform of real-valued function*: see also Theorem G.7 (page 199) page 199

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{x}(f) &= \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\\
\mathbf{E}x(t) &\approx \tfrac{1}{2}E x_l(t)\\
|\tilde{x}(f)|^2 &= \tfrac{1}{4}\left|\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right|^2+\tfrac{1}{4}\left|\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)\right|^2\\
\angle\tilde{x}(f) &= \begin{cases} \angle\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c) & : f\approx +f_c\\ -\angle\tilde{x}_l(f+f_c) & : f\approx -f_c\end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}x(t) &\triangleq \|x(t)\|^2\\
&= \left\|\mathbf{R_e}\left[x_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}\right]\right\|^2\\
&= \left\|\frac{1}{2}x_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}+\frac{1}{2}x_l^*(t)e^{-j2\pi f_c t}\right\|^2\\
&= \left\|\frac{1}{2}x_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}\right\|^2+\left\|\frac{1}{2}x_l^*(t)e^{-j2\pi f_c t}\right\|^2+2\mathbf{R_e}\left[\left\langle\frac{1}{2}x_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}\,|\,\frac{1}{2}x_l^*(t)e^{-j2\pi f_c t}\right\rangle\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left\|x_l(t)\right\|^2+\frac{1}{4}\left\|x_l(t)\right\|^2+\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R_e}\left[\left\langle x_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}\,|\,x_l^*(t)e^{-j2\pi f_c t}\right\rangle\right]\\
&\approx \frac{1}{2}\left\|x_l(t)\right\|^2\\
&\triangleq \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{E}x_l(t)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{x}(f) &\triangleq [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}x(t)](f)\\
&\triangleq \left\langle x(t)\,|\,e^{j2\pi f t}\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle\mathbf{R_e}\left[x_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}\right]\,|\,e^{j2\pi f t}\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle\frac{1}{2}\left[x_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}+x_l^*(t)e^{-j2\pi f_c t}\right]\,|\,e^{j2\pi f t}\right\rangle\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left\langle x_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}\,|\,e^{j2\pi f t}\right\rangle+\frac{1}{2}\left\langle x_l^*(t)e^{-j2\pi f_c t}\,|\,e^{j2\pi f t}\right\rangle\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_t x_l(t)e^{-j2\pi(f-f_c)t}\,dt+\frac{1}{2}\left[\int_t x_l(t)e^{-j2\pi(-f-f_c)t}\,dt\right]^*\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left\langle x_l(t)\,|\,e^{j2\pi(f-f_c)t}\right\rangle+\frac{1}{2}\left\langle x_l(t)\,|\,e^{j2\pi(-f-f_c)t}\right\rangle^*\\
&\triangleq \frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{x}(f)\right] &= \mathbf{R_e}\left[\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right]+\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right]+\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{x}(f)\right] &= \mathbf{I_m}\left[\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right]+\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right]-\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
|\tilde{x}(f)|^2 &= \left|\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right|^2\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]^*\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\tilde{x}_l^*(f-f_c)+\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)+\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\tilde{x}_l^*(f-f_c)+\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left[|\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)|^2+2\mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)\right]+|\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)|^2\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\left[|\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)|^2+|\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)|^2+0\right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\angle\tilde{x}(f) &= \angle\left[\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\frac{1}{2}\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]\\
&= \angle\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]\\
&= \operatorname{atan}\frac{\mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]}{\mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)+\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]}\\
&= \operatorname{atan}\frac{\mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right]+\mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]}{\mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right]+\mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{x}_l^*(-f-f_c)\right]}\\
&= \operatorname{atan}\frac{\mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right]-\mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)\right]}{\mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c)\right]+\mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{x}_l(-f-f_c)\right]}\\
&= \begin{cases}\angle\tilde{x}_l(f-f_c) & : f\approx +f_c\\ -\angle\tilde{x}_l(f+f_c) & : f\approx -f_c\end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

✑

Theorem 2.3. ***Lowpass LTI theorem.***

1. *Let* $\mathsf{x}:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$ *be a narrowband signal at center frequency* $f_c\in\mathbb{R}$*, with complex envelope* $\mathsf{x}_l:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{C}$*, and Fourier transform* $\tilde{\mathsf{x}}:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{C}$*.*
2. *Let* $\mathsf{h}:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$ *be the narrowband impulse response of an LTI operation such that* $\mathsf{h}(t)$ *is located at center frequency* $f_c\in\mathbb{R}$*, has complex envelope* $\mathsf{h}_l:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{C}$*, and Fourier transform* $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{C}$*.*
3. *Let* $\mathsf{y}:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$ *be the response of the LTI operation on* $\mathsf{x}(t)$*. Let the complex envelope of* $\mathsf{y}(t)$ *be* $\mathsf{y}_l:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{C}$ *and the Fourier transform* $\tilde{\mathsf{y}}:\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{C}$*.*

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{y}_l(t) &= \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{h}_l(t)\star\mathsf{x}_l(t)\\
\tilde{\mathsf{y}}_l(f) &= \frac{1}{2}\tilde{\mathsf{h}}_l(f)\tilde{\mathsf{x}}_l(f).
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{R}_e\left[\mathsf{y}_l(t)e^{i2\pi f_c t}\right] &= \mathsf{y}(t)\\
&= \mathsf{h}(t)\star\mathsf{x}(t)\\
&= \int_u \mathsf{h}(u)\mathsf{x}(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u\\
&= \int_u \mathbf{R}_e\left[\mathsf{h}_l(u)e^{i2\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\right]\mathbf{R}_e\left[\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)e^{i2\pi\mathsf{f}_c(t-u)}\right]\mathsf{d}u\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\int_u\left[\mathsf{h}_l(t)e^{i2\pi f_c t}+\mathsf{h}_l^*(t)e^{-i2\pi f_c t}\right]\left[\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)e^{i2\pi f_c(t-u)}+\mathsf{x}_l^*(t-u)e^{-i2\pi f_c(t-u)}\right]\mathsf{d}u\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l(u)e^{i2\pi\mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)e^{i2\pi f_c(t-u)}\,\mathsf{d}u+\frac{1}{4}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l(u)e^{i2\pi\mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l^*(t-u)e^{-i2\pi f_c(t-u)}\,\mathsf{d}u\,+
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{4}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l^*(u)e^{-i2\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)e^{i2\pi f_c(t-u)}\,\mathsf{d}u + \frac{1}{4}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l^*(u)e^{-i2\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l^*(t-u)e^{-i2\pi f_c(t-u)}\,\mathsf{d}u \\
=\; & \frac{1}{4}e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l(u)\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u + \frac{1}{4}e^{-i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l(u)e^{i4\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l^*(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u + \\
& \frac{1}{4}e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l^*(u)e^{-i4\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u + \frac{1}{4}e^{-i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l^*(u)\mathsf{x}_l^*(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u \\
=\; & \frac{1}{4}e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l(u)\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u + \frac{1}{4}\left(e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l(u)\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u\right)^* + \\
& \frac{1}{4}e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l^*(u)e^{-i4\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u + \frac{1}{4}\left(e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l^*(u)e^{-i4\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u\right)^* \\
=\; & \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l(u)\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u\right] + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l^*(u)e^{-i4\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u\right] \\
=\; & \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[e^{i2\pi f_c t}[\mathsf{h}_l \star \mathsf{x}_l](t)\right] + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[e^{i2\pi f_c t}\int_u \mathsf{h}_l^*(u)\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)e^{-i4\pi \mathsf{f}_c u}\,\mathsf{d}u\right] \\
\approx\; & \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[e^{i2\pi f_c t}[\mathsf{h}_l \star \mathsf{x}_l](t)\right] + 0?
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that convolving $\mathsf{x}_l(t)$ with $\mathsf{h}(t)$ directly does not work (we still need the factor $e^{i2\pi \mathsf{f}_c(t)}$).

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[\mathsf{y}_l(t)e^{i2\pi f_c t}\right] &= \mathsf{y}(t) \\
&= \mathsf{h}(t)\star\mathsf{x}(t) \\
&= \int_u \mathsf{h}(u)\mathsf{x}(t-u)\,\mathsf{d}u \\
&= \int_u \mathsf{h}(u)\mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)e^{i2\pi \mathsf{f}_c(t-u)}\right]\mathsf{d}u \\
&= \mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[\int_u \mathsf{h}(u)\mathsf{x}_l(t-u)e^{i2\pi \mathsf{f}_c(t-u)}\,\mathsf{d}u\right] \\
&= \mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[\mathsf{h}(t)\star\left[\mathsf{x}_l(t)e^{i2\pi \mathsf{f}_c(t)}\right]\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

2.4 Narrowband noise processes

A narrowband noise process $\mathsf{n}(t)$ can be represented in any of the three canonical forms presented in Definition 2.2 (page 7) (page 7):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{n}(t) &= \mathsf{a}(t)\cos[2\pi f_c t + \theta(t)] && \text{(amplitude and phase)} \\
&= \mathsf{p}(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) - \mathsf{q}(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) && \text{(quadrature)} \\
&= \Re\left(\mathsf{n}_l(t)e^{j2\pi f_c t}\right) && \text{(complex envelope).}
\end{aligned}
$$

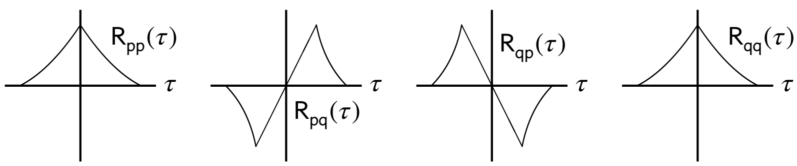


Figure 2.3: Correlations of inphase component $\mathsf{p}(t)$ and quadrature component $\mathsf{q}(t)$

Theorem 2.4. *Let* $\mathsf{n} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ *be a narrowband noise process with quadrature components* $\mathsf{p} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ *and* $\mathsf{q} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ *and complex envelope* $\mathsf{z} : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}$ *such that*

$$\begin{aligned} n(t) &= \mathsf{p}(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) - \mathsf{q}(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \\ &= \mathbf{R}_\mathsf{e}\left[\mathsf{z}(t)e^{i2\pi f_c t}\right] \\ \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xy}}(\tau) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{x}(t+\tau)\mathsf{y}^*(t)\right]. \end{aligned}$$

Then (see Figure 2.3 (page 12))

THM

1. $\mathsf{E}[p(t)] = \mathsf{E}[q(t)] = 0$ *(component means are zero)*
2. $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau) = \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qq}}(\tau)$ *(autocorrelations are equal)*
3. $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau) = -\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau)$ *(crosscorrelations are additive inverses)*
4. $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau) = \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(-\tau)$ *(autocorrelations are symmetric)*
5. $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau) = -\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(-\tau), \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau) = -\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(-\tau)$ *(crosscorrelations are anti-symmetric)*
6. $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(0) = 0$ *(components are uncorrelated for $\tau = 0$)*
7. $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{nn}}(\tau) = \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau)\cos(2\pi f_c\tau) + \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau)\sin(2\pi f_c\tau)$ *(noise autocorrelation)*
8. $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{zz}}(\tau) = 2\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau) - 2i\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau)$ *(complex envelope autocorrelation).*

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \mathsf{E}[n(t)] \\ &= \mathsf{E}\left[p(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) - q(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right] \\ &= \mathsf{E}\left[p(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t)\right] - \mathsf{E}\left[q(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right] \\ &= \mathsf{E}[p(t)]\cos(2\pi f_c t) - \mathsf{E}[q(t)]\sin(2\pi f_c t) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{nn}}(\tau) &= \mathsf{E}[n(t+\tau)n(t)] \\ &= \mathsf{E}\left[\left(p(t+\tau)\cos(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau) - q(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\right)\left(p(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) - q(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right)\right] \\ &= \mathsf{E}\left[p(t+\tau)p(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\cos(2\pi f_c t)\right] - \mathsf{E}\left[p(t+\tau)q(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right] \\ &\quad -\mathsf{E}\left[q(t+\tau)p(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\cos(2\pi f_c t)\right] + \mathsf{E}\left[q(t+\tau)q(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right] \\ &= \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau)\mathsf{E}\left[\cos(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\cos(2\pi f_c t)\right] - \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau)\mathsf{E}\left[\cos(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right] \\ &\quad -\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau)\mathsf{E}\left[\sin(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\cos(2\pi f_c t)\right] + \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qq}}(\tau)\mathsf{E}\left[\sin(2\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau)\left[\cos(2\pi f_c\tau) + \cos(4\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\right] - \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau)\left[-\sin(2\pi f_c\tau) + \sin(4\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\right] \\ &\quad -\frac{1}{2}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau)\left[\sin(2\pi f_c\tau) + \sin(4\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\right] + \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qq}}(\tau)\left[\cos(2\pi f_c\tau) - \cos(4\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau) + \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qq}}(\tau)\right]\cos(2\pi f_c\tau) + \frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau) - \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau)\right]\sin(2\pi f_c\tau) \\ &\quad +\frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau) - \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qq}}(\tau)\right]\cos(4\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau) - \frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau) + \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau)\right]\sin(4\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau) \end{aligned}$$

Because $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{nn}}(\tau)$ is not a function of t, the last two terms must be zero for all t, which implies

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau) &= \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qq}}(\tau) \\ \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau) &= -\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau). \end{aligned}$$

From these we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{nn}}(\tau) &= \frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau) + \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qq}}(\tau)\right]\cos(2\pi f_c\tau) + \frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau) - \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau)\right]\sin(2\pi f_c\tau) \\ &\quad +\frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau) - \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qq}}(\tau)\right]\cos(4\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau) - \frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau) + \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{qp}}(\tau)\right]\sin(4\pi f_c t + 2\pi f_c\tau) \\ &= \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pp}}(\tau)\cos(2\pi f_c\tau) + \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{pq}}(\tau)\sin(2\pi f_c\tau) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{pq}(\tau) &= -\mathsf{R}_{qp}(\tau) \\
&\triangleq -\mathsf{E}\left[q(t+\tau)p(t)\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[p(t)q(t+\tau)\right] \\
&\triangleq -\mathsf{R}_{pq}(-\tau)
\end{aligned}$$

This implies $\mathsf{R}_{pq}(\tau)$ is odd-symmetric.

$$\begin{aligned}
& \mathsf{R}_{pq}(\tau) = -\mathsf{R}_{pq}(-\tau) \\
\implies\ & \mathsf{R}_{pq}(0) = -\mathsf{R}_{pq}(0) \\
\implies\ & \mathsf{R}_{pq}(0) = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{zz}(\tau) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[z(t+\tau)z^*(t)\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[(x(t+\tau)+iy(t+\tau))\,(x(t)+iy(t))^*\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[(x(t+\tau)+iy(t+\tau))\left(x^*(t)-iy^*(t)\right)\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[x(t+\tau)x^*(t)\right] - i\mathsf{E}\left[x(t+\tau)y^*(t)\right] + i\mathsf{E}\left[y(t+\tau)x^*(t)\right] + \mathsf{E}\left[y(t+\tau)y^*(t)\right] \\
&\triangleq \mathsf{R}_{pp}(\tau) - i\mathsf{R}_{pq}(\tau) + i\mathsf{R}_{qp}(\tau) + \mathsf{R}_{qq}(\tau) \\
&= \mathsf{R}_{pp}(\tau) - i\mathsf{R}_{pq}(\tau) - i\mathsf{R}_{pq}(\tau) + \mathsf{R}_{qq}(\tau) \\
&= 2\mathsf{R}_{pp}(\tau) - 2i\mathsf{R}_{pq}(\tau)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

CHAPTER 3

MODULATION

The transmission is performed by allowing the information sequence u to affect the behavior of a *carrier* signal. This technique is called *modulation* and we say that the information sequence *modulates* the carrier. There are two general types of modulation:

1. memoryless modulation: only depends on the current signal value
2. modulation with memory: depends on current and past signal values.

The *receiver* generates an estimate[1] $\hat{u}$ of the sent information sequence u from the received signal $r(t)$.

3.1 Memoryless Modulation

3.1.1 Definitions

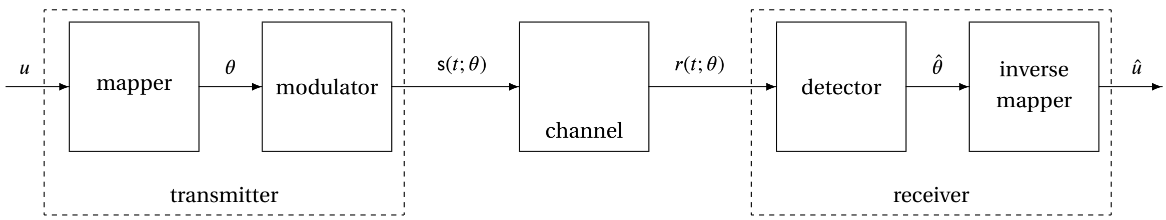


Figure 3.1: Memoryless modulation system model

Definition 3.1 (Digital modulation)**.** *Let*

- $a_n \in \{0, 1, \dots, K-1\}$, $f_n \in \{0, 1, \dots, M-1\}$, *and* $\theta_n \in \{0, 1, \dots, N-1\}$
- $a_{\text{offset}}, f_{\text{offset}}, \theta_{\text{offset}} \in \mathbb{R}$
- $E, F \in \mathbb{R}^+$
- $T \in (0, \infty)$ *be the signalling period*
- $\{u_n\}$ *be an information sequence to be sent to a receiver*

[1] *estimation theory*: Section 4.4 page 36, Appendix C page 161

- g *be a function of the form*

$$(a_n, f_n, \theta_n) = \mathsf{g}(u_n).$$

- S *be a set of modulation waveforms*

DEF $$S \triangleq \left\{ \mathsf{fs}(t;u_n) = \left[a_n - a_{\text{offset}}\right] \sqrt{\frac{2E}{T}} \cos\left[2\pi\left[f_c + Ff_n - f_{\text{offset}}\right]t + \left[\theta_n \frac{2\pi}{N} - \theta_{\text{offset}}\right]\right] \right\}$$

Then

- *A* ***memoryless digital modulation using sinusoidal carriers*** *(MDMSC) is the pair* (g, S)*.*
- *A* ***Pulse Amplitude Modulation*** *(PAM) is MDMSC with*

$$f_n = f_{\text{offset}} = \theta_n = \theta_{\text{offset}} = 0$$

- *A* ***Phase Shift Keying*** *(PSK) is MDMSC with*

$$a_n = a_{\text{offset}} = f_n = f_{\text{offset}} = 0$$

- *A* ***Frequency Shift Keying*** *(FSK) is MDMSC with*

$$a_n = a_{\text{offset}} = \theta_n = \theta_{\text{offset}} = 0$$

- *A* ***Quadrature Amplitude Modulation*** *(QAM) is MDMSC with*

$$f_n = f_{\text{offset}} = 0$$

Theorem 3.1. *Let* (g, S) *be an MDMSC. The energy* $\mathbf{E}\mathsf{f}\,\mathsf{s}(t;n)$ *of* $\mathsf{f}\,\mathsf{s}(t;n) \in S$ *is*

THM $$\mathbf{E}s_n \approx a_n^2 E$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}\mathsf{f}\,\mathsf{s}(t;n) &\triangleq \left\| a_n \sqrt{\frac{2E}{T}} \cos(2\pi(f_c + \Delta f f_n)t + \theta_n) \right\|^2 \\
&= a_n^2 \frac{2E}{T} \left\| \cos(2\pi(f_c + \Delta f f_n)t + \theta_n) \right\|^2 \\
&= a_n^2 \frac{2E}{T} \int_0^T \cos^2(2\pi(f_c + \Delta f f_n)t + \theta_n)\, \mathrm{d}t \\
&= a_n^2 \frac{2E}{T} \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T 1 + \cos(4\pi(f_c + \Delta f f_n)t + 4\theta_n)\, \mathrm{d}t \\
&= a_n^2 \frac{E}{T} \left[\int_0^T 1\, \mathrm{d}t + \int_0^T \cos(4\pi(f_c + \Delta f f_n)t + 4\theta_n)\, \mathrm{d}t \right] \\
&\approx a_n^2 \frac{E}{T} \int_0^T 1\, \mathrm{d}t \\
&= a_n^2 E
\end{aligned}$$

✐

3.1.2 Orthogonality

Proposition 3.1. *Let* $(V, \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle, S)$ *be a modulation space and* $\mathsf{s}(t;m) \in S$*.*

PRP $$\{(V, \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle, S) \text{ is PAM}\} \implies \left\{ \Psi \triangleq \left\{ \psi(t) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|} \lambda(t) \cos(2\pi f_c t) \right\} \text{ is an orthonormal basis for } S. \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that Ψ spans S:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{s}(t;m) &\triangleq a_m \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t)\\
&= a_m \psi(t)
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that Ψ is orthonormal with respect to $\langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi_c(t) \mid \psi_c(t) \rangle &= \left\langle \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \mid \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \right\rangle\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\langle \lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \mid \lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \rangle\\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\mathbf{L}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\cos^2(2\pi f_c t)\ dt\\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\mathbf{L}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\frac{1}{2}\left[1+\cos(4\pi f_c t)\right]\ dt\\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\frac{1}{2}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\,[1]\ dt\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda\|^2}\langle \lambda(t) \mid \lambda(t) \rangle\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda\|^2}\|\lambda(t)\|^2\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition 3.2. *Let $(V, \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle, S)$ be a modulation space and $\mathsf{s}(t;m) \in S$.*

PRP

$$\{(V, \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle, S) \text{ is PSK}\} \implies \left\{ \Psi \triangleq \left\{ \begin{array}{rcl} \psi_c(t) &=& \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t), \\ \psi_s(t) &=& -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \end{array} \right\} \right. \text{ is an orthonormal basis for } S$$

✎PROOF:

1. Ψ spans S:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{s}(t;a_m,b_m) &\triangleq r\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_m)\\
&= r\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\left[\cos\theta_m\cos(2\pi f_c t) - \sin\theta_m\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right]\\
&= r\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos\theta_m\cos(2\pi f_c t) - r\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\sin\theta_m\sin(2\pi f_c t)\\
&= r\cos\theta_m\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) - r\sin\theta_m\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\\
&= r\cos\theta_m\psi_c(t) + r_m\sin\theta_m\psi_s(t)
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that Ψ is orthonormal with respect to $\langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle$: See proof of Lemma 3.3 (page 19).

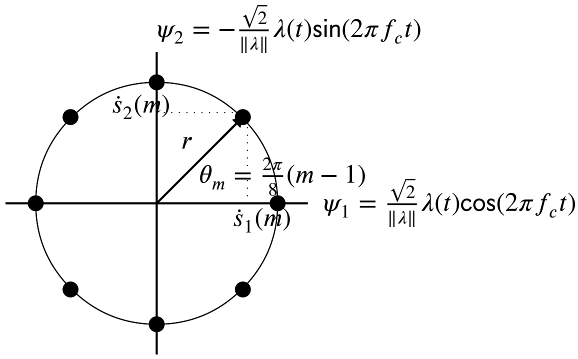


Figure 3.2: PSK vector representation, $M = 8$

✏

Theorem 3.2 (Orthogonality for FSK)**.** *Let (g, S) be an FSK modulation.*

1. *If $F \in \left\{ n\frac{1}{2T} | k \in \mathbb{N} \right\}$, then $\mathsf{s}_m, \mathsf{s}_n \in S$ are orthogonal for $m \neq n$.*
2. *If $\mathsf{s}_1, \mathsf{s}_2 \in S$ possibly different phases and $F \in \left\{ n\frac{1}{T} | k \in \mathbb{N} \right\}$, then $\mathsf{s}_m, \mathsf{s}_n \in S$ are orthogonal for $m \neq n$.*

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for identical phases:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi_m(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle &= \left\langle \sqrt{\frac{2}{T}}\cos[2\pi(f_c + mf_d)t] \,|\, \sqrt{\frac{2}{T}}\cos[2\pi(f_c + nf_d)t] \right\rangle \\
&= \frac{2}{T}\langle \cos[2\pi(f_c + mf_d)t] \,|\, \cos[2\pi(f_c + nf_d)t] \rangle \\
&= \frac{2}{T}\int_0^T \cos[2\pi(f_c + mf_d)t]\cos[2\pi(f_c + nf_d)t]\; dt \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\frac{2}{T}\int_0^T \cos[2\pi(f_c + mf_d)t - 2\pi(f_c + nf_d)t] + \cos[2\pi(f_c + mf_d)t + 2\pi(f_c + nf_d)t]\; dt \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \cos[2\pi(m-n)f_d t] + \cos[4\pi(f_c t + 2\pi(m+n)f_d t]\; dt \\
&\approx \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \cos[2\pi(m-n)f_d t]\; dt \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\frac{1}{2\pi(m-n)f_d}\sin[2\pi(m-n)f_d t]\Big|_0^T \\
&= \frac{\sin[2\pi(m-n)f_d T]}{2\pi(m-n)f_d T} \\
&= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } m = n \\ \frac{\sin[2\pi(m-n)f_d T]}{2\pi(m-n)f_d T} & \text{for } m \neq n. \end{cases} \\
&= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } m = n \\ 0 & \text{for } m \neq n \text{ and } f_d = \frac{k}{2T},\ k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for different phase:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi_m(t;\phi) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle &= \mathbf{L} \langle \cos(2\pi f_m t + \phi) \,|\, \cos(2\pi f_n t) \rangle \\
&= \mathbf{L} \int_t^{t+T} \cos(2\pi f_m t + \phi) \cos(2\pi f_n t) \, dt \\
&= \int_t^{t+T} \cos\left[2\pi(f_m - f_n)t + \phi\right] \, \mathrm{d}t \\
&= \left. \frac{\sin[2\pi(f_m - f_n)t + \phi]}{2\pi(f_m - f_n)} \right|_t^{t+T} \\
&= \frac{\sin[2\pi(f_m - f_n)(t+T) + \phi] - \sin[2\pi(f_m - f_n)t + \phi]}{2\pi(f_m - f_n)}
\end{aligned}
$$

3. For orthogonality, this implies

$$
\begin{aligned}
2\pi(f_m - f_n)(t+T) + \phi &= 2\pi(f_m - f_n)t + \phi + k2\pi, k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \\
2\pi(f_m - f_n)T &= k2\pi \\
(f_m - f_n)T &= k \\
f_m - f_n &= \frac{k}{T}
\end{aligned}
$$

✎

Proposition 3.3. *Let $(V, \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla \rangle, S)$ be a QAM modulation space and $\mathsf{s}(t; a_m, b_m) \in S$. Then the set*

$$
\Psi \triangleq \left\{ \begin{array}{lcl} \psi_c(t) &=& \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|} \lambda(t) \cos(2\pi f_c t), \\ \psi_s(t) &=& -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|} \lambda(t) \sin(2\pi f_c t) \end{array} \right\}
$$

is an orthonormal basis for S.

✎PROOF:

1. Ψ spans S:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{s}(t; a_m, b_m) &\triangleq a_m \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|} \lambda(t) \cos(2\pi f_c t) + b_m \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|} \lambda(t) \sin(2\pi f_c t) \\
&= a_m \psi_c(t) + b_m \psi_s(t)
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Ψ is orthonormal with respect to $\langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla \rangle$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi_c(t) \,|\, \psi_c(t) \rangle
&= \left\langle \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \,|\, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \right\rangle \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|} \langle \lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \,|\, \lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \rangle \\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\mathbf{L}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\cos^2(2\pi f_c t)\; dt \\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\mathbf{L}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\frac{1}{2}\left[1+\cos(4\pi f_c t)\right]\; dt \\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\frac{1}{2}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\,[1]\; dt \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda\|^2} \langle \lambda(t) \,|\, \lambda(t) \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda\|^2} \|\lambda(t)\|^2 \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi_s(t) \,|\, \psi_s(t) \rangle
&= \left\langle \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \,|\, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \right\rangle \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|} \langle \lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \,|\, \lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \rangle \\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\mathbf{L}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\sin^2(2\pi f_c t)\; dt \\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\mathbf{L}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\frac{1}{2}\left[1-\cos(4\pi f_c t)\right]\; dt \\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\frac{1}{2}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\,[1]\; dt \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda\|^2} \langle \lambda(t) \,|\, \lambda(t) \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda\|^2} \|\lambda(t)\|^2 \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi_s(t) \,|\, \psi_c(t) \rangle
&= \langle \psi_c(t) \,|\, \psi_s(t) \rangle \\
&= \left\langle \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \,|\, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \right\rangle \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|} \langle \lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \,|\, \lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \rangle \\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\mathbf{L}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\; dt \\
&= \frac{2}{\|\lambda\|^2}\mathbf{L}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\frac{1}{2}\left[\sin(4\pi f_c t)-\sin(0)\right]\; dt \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda\|^2}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\left[\mathbf{L}\sin(4\pi f_c t)-0\right]\; dt
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda\|^2}\int_0^T \lambda^2(t)\,[0-0]\;dt \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Definition 3.1 represents elements of S in rectangular form (a_m, b_m). The elements of S can also be represented in polar form (r_m, θ_m) as shown below.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{s}(t;m) &= \dot{s}_c(a_m)\psi_c(t) + \dot{s}_c(b_m)\psi_s(t) \\
&= r_m\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\left[a_m\cos(2\pi f_c t) - b_m\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right] \\
&= r_m\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\left[\cos\theta_m\cos(2\pi f_c t) - \sin\theta_m\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right] \\
&= r_m\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos\left[2\pi f_c t + \theta_m\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

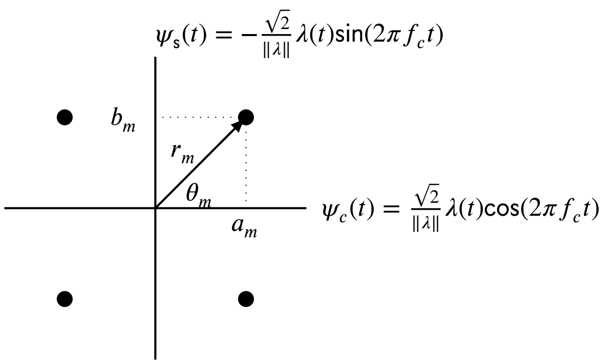


Figure 3.3: QAM rectangular (a_m, b_m) and polar (r_m, θ_m) representations

3.1.3 Measures

Measures

Theorem 3.3.

THM *The PAM modulation space has **energy** and **distance** measures*

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}\mathsf{s}(t;m) &= a_m^2 \\
\mathsf{d}(\mathsf{s}(t;m), \mathsf{s}(t;n)) &= |a_m - a_n|.
\end{aligned}
$$

✎PROOF: Because PAM is a modulation space,

- the energy measure follows from Theorem 3.4 page 21 (page 21)
- the distance measure from Theorem 3.5 page 22 (page 22).

✏

Proposition 3.4. *Let*

- *$(V, \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle, S)$ be a modulation space and* $\mathsf{s}(t) \in S$

- $\Psi \triangleq \{\psi_n(t) : n = 1, 2, \ldots, N\}$ *be a set of orthonormal functions that span* S
- $\dot{s}_n \triangleq \langle \mathsf{s}(t) \mid \psi_n(t) \rangle$

PRP *The* ***energy*** *in* $\mathsf{s}(t)$ *is*

$$\mathbf{E}\mathsf{s}(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} |\dot{s}_n|^2$$

PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}\mathsf{s}(t) &\triangleq \|\mathsf{s}(t)\|^2 \\
&= \left\| \sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{s}_n \psi_n(t) \right\|^2 \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N} |\dot{s}_n|^2
\end{aligned}$$

Proposition 3.5. *Let*

- $(V, \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle, S)$ *be a modulation space and* $\mathsf{s}(t;m) \in S$
- $\Psi \triangleq \{\psi_n(t) : n = 1, 2, \ldots, N\}$ *be a set of orthonormal functions that span* S
- $\dot{s}_n(m) \triangleq \langle \mathsf{s}(t;m) \mid \psi_n(t) \rangle$

PRP *The* ***distance*** *between waveforms* $\mathsf{s}(t;m)$ *and* $\mathsf{s}(t;k)$ *is*

$$\mathsf{d}(\mathsf{s}(t;m), \mathsf{s}(t;k)) \triangleq \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{N} |\dot{s}_n(m) - \dot{s}_n(k)|^2}$$

PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{d}^2(\mathsf{s}(t;m),\ \mathsf{s}(t;k)) &\triangleq \|\mathsf{s}(t;m) - \mathsf{s}(t;k)\|^2 \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N} |\dot{s}_n(m) - \dot{s}_n(k)|^2 && \text{by Theorem ?? page ?? (page ??)}
\end{aligned}$$

Theorem 3.4.

THM *The PSK modulation space has* ***energy*** *and* ***distance*** *measures*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}\mathsf{s}(t;m) &= r^2 \\
\mathsf{d}(\mathsf{s}(t;m), \mathsf{s}(t;n)) &= r\sqrt{2 - 2\cos\left(\theta_m - \theta_n\right)}.
\end{aligned}$$

PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}\mathsf{s}(t;m) &\triangleq \|\mathsf{s}(t;m)\|^2 \\
&= \left\| \dot{s}_c(m)\psi_1(t) + \dot{s}_s(m)\psi_2(t) \right\|^2 \\
&= \dot{s}_c^2(m) + \dot{s}_s^2(m) \\
&= \left(r\cos\theta_m\right)^2 + \left(r\sin\theta_m\right)^2 \\
&= r^2\left(\cos^2\theta_m + \sin^2\theta_m\right) \\
&= r^2
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{d}^2(\mathsf{s}(t;m),\ \mathsf{s}(t;n)) &= \|\mathsf{s}(t;m)-\mathsf{s}(t;n)\|^2\\
&= \left\|[\dot{s}_c(m)\psi_1(t)+\dot{s}_s(m)\psi_2(t)]-[\dot{s}_c(n)\psi_1(t)+\dot{s}_s(n)\psi_2(t)]\right\|^2\\
&= \left\|[\dot{s}_c(m)-\dot{s}_c(n)]\psi_1(t)+[\dot{s}_s(m)-\dot{s}_s(n)]\psi_2(t)\right\|^2\\
&= [\dot{s}_c(m)-\dot{s}_c(n)]^2+[\dot{s}_s(m)-\dot{s}_s(n)]^2 && \text{by Theorem ?? page ??}\\
&= [r\cos\theta_m - r\cos\theta_n]^2+[r\sin\theta_m + r\sin\theta_n]^2\\
&= r^2\left([\cos\theta_m-\cos\theta_n]^2+[\sin\theta_m+\sin\theta_n]^2\right)\\
&= r^2\left([\cos^2\theta_m-2\cos\theta_m\cos\theta_n+\cos^2\theta_n]+[\sin^2\theta_m-2\sin\theta_m\sin\theta_n+\sin^2\theta_n]\right)\\
&= r^2\left([\cos^2\theta_m+\sin^2\theta_m]+[\cos^2\theta_n+\cos^2\theta_n]-2[\cos\theta_m\cos\theta_n+\sin\theta_m\sin\theta_n]\right)\\
&= r^2[1+1-2\cos(\theta_m-\theta_n)]\\
&= 2r^2[1-\cos(\theta_m-\theta_n)]
\end{aligned}$$

✎

Theorem 3.5.

THM *The FSK modulation space has **energy** and **distance** measures equivalent to*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}\mathsf{s}(t;m) &= \dot{s}^2\\
\mathsf{d}(\mathsf{s}(t;m),\mathsf{s}(t;n)) &= \sqrt{2}\ \dot{s}
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF: The energy measure is a result of Theorem 3.4 page 21 (page 21).
For distance,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{d}^2(\mathsf{s}(t;m),\ \mathsf{s}(t;n)) &= \sum_{k=1}^{N}|\dot{s}_k(m)-\dot{s}_{nk}|^2 && \text{Theorem 3.5 page 22}\\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{N}|\dot{s}_k(m)-\dot{s}_{nk}|^2\\
&= (\dot{s}-0)^2+(\dot{s}-0)^2\\
&= 2\dot{s}^2.
\end{aligned}$$

✎

Theorem 3.6.

THM *The QAM modulation space has **energy** and **distance** measures equivalent to*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}\mathsf{s}(t;m) &= a_m^2+b_m^2 = r_m^2\\
\mathsf{d}(\mathsf{s}(t;m),\mathsf{s}(t;n)) &= \sqrt{(a_m-a_n)^2+(b_m-b_n)^2}
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}\mathsf{s}(t;m) &\triangleq \|\mathsf{s}(t;m)\|^2\\
&= \left\|a_m\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t)+b_m\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\|\lambda\|}\lambda(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t)\right\|^2\\
&= \left\|a_m\psi_c(t)+b_m\psi_s(t)\right\|^2\\
&= a_m^2+b_m^2\\
&= (r_m\cos\theta_m)^2+(r_m\sin\theta_m)^2\\
&= r_m^2\left(\cos^2\theta_m+\sin^2\theta_m\right)\\
&= r_m^2
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{d}^2(\mathsf{s}(t;m),\ \mathsf{s}(t;n)) &\triangleq \|\mathsf{s}(t;m) - \mathsf{s}(t;n)\|^2 \\
&= \left\|\left(a_m\psi_c(t) + b_m\psi_s(t)\right) - \left(a_n\psi_c(t) + b_n\psi_s(t)\right)\right\|^2 \\
&= |a_m - a_n|^2 + |b_m - b_n|^2 && \text{by Theorem ?? page ?? page ??}
\end{aligned}
$$

3.2 Continuous Phase Modulation (CPM)

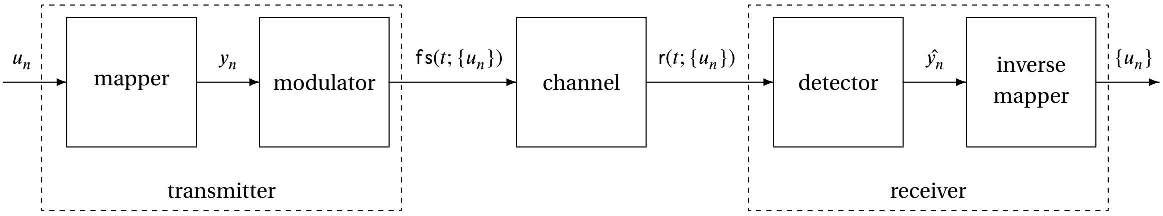


Figure 3.4: Continuous Phase Modulation system model

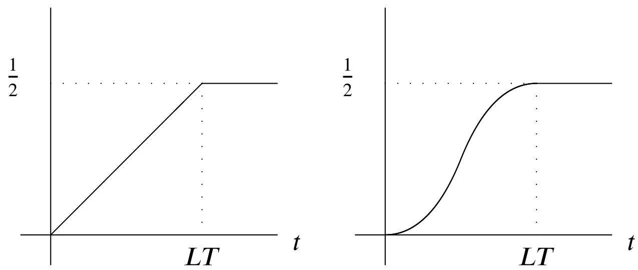


Figure 3.5: CPM phase pulses $\rho(t)$

Continuous modulation can be realized using *phase pulses* which are illustrated in Figure 3.5 (page 24) and defined in Definition 3.2 (next).

Definition 3.2. *Let $L \in \mathbb{N}$ be the* ***response length*** *and T the* ***signalling rate****. The function $\rho : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is a* ***phase pulse*** *if*

1. *$\rho(t)$ is continuous*
2. *$\rho(t) = 0$ for $t \le 0$*
3. *$\rho(t) = \frac{1}{2}$ for $t \ge LT$.*

Definition 3.3. *Let*

$$
\begin{aligned}
n &= \left\lfloor \frac{t}{T} \right\rfloor \\
x_n &\in \{0, 1, \ldots, M-1\} \\
y_n &= 2x_n - 1 \in \{\pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm(M-1)\}.
\end{aligned}
$$

*Then **Continuous Phase Modulation** (CPM) signalling waveforms are*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{s}(t;\ldots,u_{n-1},u_n) &= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left[2\pi f_c t + 2\pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} y_k h_k \rho(t-kT)\right]\\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(\underbrace{2\pi f_c t}_{\textit{carrier}} + \underbrace{\pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-L} y_k h_k}_{\textit{state}} + \underbrace{2\pi\sum_{k=n-L+1}^{n} y_k h_k \rho(t-kT)}_{\textit{maintains continuous phase}}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

3.2.1 Phase Pulse waveforms

$$\rho(t) = \int_t \rho'(t)\,dt$$

Rectangular (LREC)

$$\rho'(t) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2LT} & \text{for } 0 \le t \le LT \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \qquad \rho(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \\ \frac{1}{2LT}t & \text{for } 0 \le t < LT \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{for } t \ge LT \end{cases}$$

Raised Cosine (LRC)

$$\rho'(t) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2LT}\left[1-\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{LT}t\right)\right] & \text{for } 0 \le t < LT \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \qquad \rho(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \\ \frac{1}{2LT}\left[t - \frac{LT}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{LT}t\right)\right] & \text{for } 0 \le t < LT \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{for } t \ge LT \end{cases}$$

Gaussian Minimum Shift Keying (GMSK)

$$\rho'(t) = \begin{cases} \mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{2\pi B(t-\frac{T}{2})}{\sqrt{ln 2}}\right] - \mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{2\pi B(t+\frac{T}{2})}{\sqrt{ln 2}}\right] & \text{for } 0 \le t < LT \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \qquad \rho(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{t} \rho'(t)\,dt$$

3.2.2 Special Cases

Definition 3.4. ***Full response*** *CPM has response length $L = 1$.* ***Partial response*** *CPM has response length $L \ge 2$.*

In the case of Full Response CPM, the signalling waveform simplifies to

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{fs}(t;\ldots,u_{n-1},u_n) &= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(2\pi f_c t + \pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-L} y_k h_k + 2\pi\sum_{k=n-L+1}^{n} y_k h_k \rho(t-kT)\right)\\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(2\pi f_c t + \pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k h_k + 2\pi\sum_{k=n-1+1}^{n} y_k h_k \rho(t-kT)\right)\\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(\underbrace{2\pi f_c t}_{\text{carrier}} + \underbrace{\pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k h_k}_{\text{state}} + \underbrace{2\pi y_n h_n \rho(t-nT)}_{\text{maintains c.p.}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Definition 3.5. ***Continuous Phase Frequency Shift Keying*** *(CPFSK) is full response CPM ($L=1$) with $h_n = h$ is constant and LREC phase pulse.*

In CPFSK, the signalling waveform is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{fs}(t;\ldots,u_{n-1},u_n) &= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(2\pi f_c t + \pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-L} y_k h_k + 2\pi\sum_{k=n-L+1}^{n} y_k h_k \rho(t-kT)\right)\\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(2\pi f_c t + \pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k h + 2\pi y_n h\left(\frac{1}{2T}(t-nT)\right)\right)\\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(\underbrace{2\pi\left(f_c + \frac{h}{2T}y_n\right)t}_{\text{carrier}} + \underbrace{\pi h\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k}_{\text{state}} - \underbrace{\pi h n y_n}_{\text{maintains c.p.}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Two sinusoidal waveforms are *coherent* if their frequency difference is $k\frac{1}{2T}$. The waveforms of CPFSK are therefore orthogonal if $h = m\frac{1}{2}$.

Definition 3.6. ***Orthogonal Continuous Phase Frequency Shift Keying*** *is full response CPM ($L=1$) with $h_n \in \left\{m\frac{1}{2} | m \in \mathbb{Z}\right\}$ and LREC phase pulse.*

For $m \in \mathbb{N}$, orthogonal CPFSK signalling waveforms are

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{fs}(t;\ldots,u_{n-1},u_n) &= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(2\pi f_c t + \pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-L} y_k h_k + 2\pi\sum_{k=n-L+1}^{n} y_k h_k \rho(t-kT)\right)\\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(2\pi\left(f_c + \frac{h}{2T}y_n\right)t + \pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k h - \pi h n y_n\right)\\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left(\underbrace{2\pi\left(f_c + \frac{m}{4T}y_n\right)t}_{\text{carrier}} + \underbrace{\frac{m}{2}\pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k}_{\text{state}} - \underbrace{\frac{m}{2}\pi n y_n}_{\text{maintains c.p.}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The minimum value of m in orthogonal CPFSK is 1. When $m = 1$ (the minimum value for orthogonality), the orthogonal CPFSK is also called *Minimum Shift Keying*.

Definition 3.7. ***Minimum Phase Shift Keying*** *(MSK) is is full response CPM ($L = 1$) with $h_n = \frac{1}{2}$ and LREC phase pulse.*

In MSK, the signalling waveform is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{fs}(t; \ldots, u_{n-1}, u_n) &= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left[2\pi f_c t + \frac{\pi}{2}\left(\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k + \frac{t-nT}{T}\cdot y_n\right)\right]. \\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left[2\pi\left(f_c + \frac{m}{4T}y_n\right)t + \frac{m}{2}\pi\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k - \frac{m}{\pi}n y_n\right] \\
&= a\frac{2}{\sqrt{T}}\cos\left[\underbrace{2\pi\left(f_c + \frac{1}{4T}y_n\right)t}_{\text{carrier}} + \underbrace{\frac{\pi}{2}\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} y_k}_{\text{state}} - \underbrace{\frac{\pi}{2}n y_n}_{\text{maintains c.p.}}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

In summary:

Technique	$\rho(t)$	L	h_k
Continuous Phase Frequency Shift Keying (CPFSK)	LREC	1	h (constant)
Minimum Shift Keying (MSK)	LREC	1	$\frac{1}{2}$

3.2.3 Detection

The state of the signalling waveforms at intervals nT can be described by trellis diagrams.

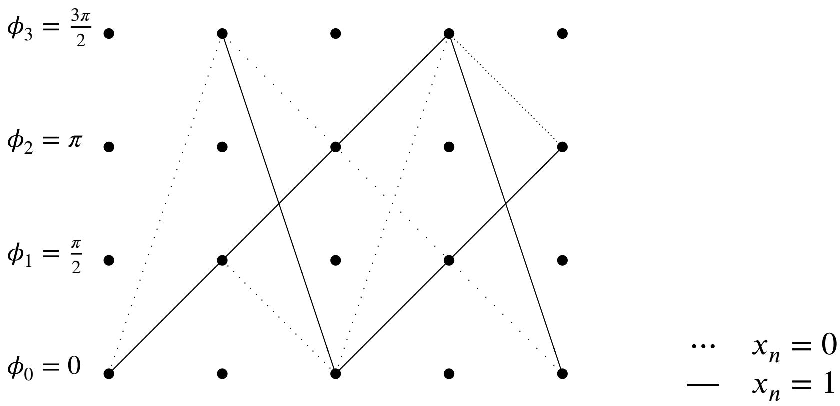


Figure 3.6: CPM $M = 2$, $h = 1/2$ (MSK-2) trellis diagram

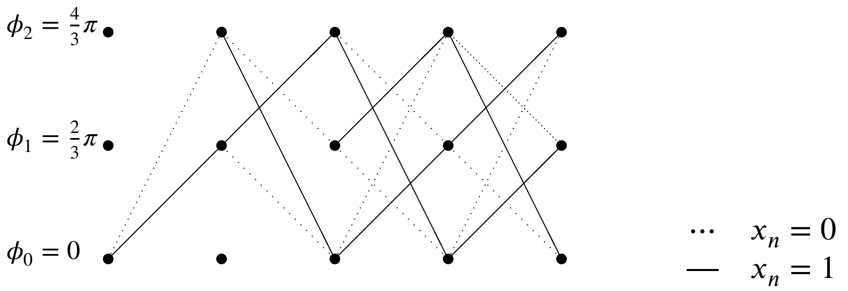


Figure 3.7: CPM $M = 2$, $h = 2/3$ trellis diagram

CHAPTER 4

PROJECTION STATISTICS FOR ADDITIVE NOISE SYSTEMS

4.1 Projection Statistics

Theorem 4.1 (page 31) (next) shows that the finite set $Y \triangleq \{\dot{y}_n | n = 1, 2, \ldots, N\}$ (a finite number of values) provides just as good an estimate as having the entire $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$ waveform (an uncountably infinite number of values) with respect to the following cases:

1. the conditional probability of $\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)$ given $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$
2. the *MAP estimate* of the sequence
3. the *ML estimate* of the sequence.

That is, even with a drastic reduction in the number of statistics from uncountably infinite to finite N, no quality is lost with respect to the estimators listed above. This amazing result is very useful in practical system implementation and also for proving other theoretical results (notably estimation and detection theorems).

But first, some definitions (next) that are used repeatedly in this chapter.

Definition 4.1. *Let* $\Psi \triangleq \{\psi_n | n = 1, 2, \ldots, N\}$ *be an* ORTHONORMAL BASIS *for a parameterized function* $\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)$ *with parameter* θ*. Let* $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$ *be* $\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)$ *plus a* RANDOM PROCESS $\mathsf{v}(t)$ *such that*

$$\mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \triangleq \mathsf{x}(t;\theta) + \mathsf{v}(t)$$

Let $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, *and* $\dot{v}_n$ *be* PROJECTIONS *onto the* BASIS VECTOR $\psi_n(t)$ *such that*

DEF

$$\begin{array}{rclclcl}
\dot{y}_n(\theta) & \triangleq & \mathbf{P}_n \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) & \triangleq & \langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle & \triangleq & \displaystyle\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\psi_n(t)\, \mathsf{d}t \\
\dot{x}_n(\theta) & \triangleq & \mathbf{P}_n \mathsf{x}(t) & \triangleq & \langle \mathsf{x}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle & \triangleq & \displaystyle\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\psi_n(t)\, \mathsf{d}t \\
\dot{v}_n & \triangleq & \mathbf{P}_n \mathsf{v}(t) & \triangleq & \langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle & \triangleq & \displaystyle\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(t)\psi_n(t)\, \mathsf{d}t
\end{array}$$

Let the set Y *be defined as* $Y \triangleq \{\dot{y}_n(\theta) | 1, 2, \ldots, N\}$ *Let* $\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{map}}$ *be the* MAP ESTIMATE *and* $\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ *be the* ML ESTIMATE *(Definition C.1 page 162) of* θ*.*

Lemma 4.1. *Let* Ψ, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{v}_n$, *and* Y *be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29).*

LEM

$$\left\{ \mathsf{E}\mathsf{v}(t) = 0 \quad (\text{ZERO-MEAN}) \right\} \implies \left\{ \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n = 0 \quad (\text{ZERO-MEAN}) \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n &= \mathsf{E}\langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \dot{v}_n && \text{(Definition 4.1 page 29)}\\
&= \langle \mathsf{E}\mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle\\
&= \langle 0 \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle && \text{by } \textit{zero-mean} \text{ hypothesis}\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma 4.2. *Let Ψ, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{v}_n$, and Y be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29).*

LEM
$$\left\{ \mathsf{v}(t) \sim \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right) \quad \text{(GAUSSIAN)} \right\} \implies \left\{ \dot{v}_n \sim \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right) \quad \text{(GAUSSIAN)} \right\}$$

✎PROOF: The distribution follows because it is a linear operation on a Gaussian process. ✏

Lemma 4.3. *Let Ψ, $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$, $\mathsf{x}(t)$, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, $\dot{v}_n$, and Y be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29).*

LEM
$$\left\{ \begin{array}{lrcll} \text{(A).} & \mathsf{E}[\mathsf{v}(t)] &=& 0 & \text{and}\\ \text{(B).} & \mathsf{cov}[\mathsf{v}(t),\mathsf{v}(u)] &=& \sigma^2\delta(t-u) & \end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{ \begin{array}{lrcll} \text{(1).} & \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n &=& 0 & \text{(ZERO-MEAN)}\\ \text{(2).} & \mathsf{cov}\left[\dot{v}_n, \dot{v}_m\right] &=& \sigma^2\bar{\delta}_{n-m} & \text{(UNCORRELATED)} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1.

$$\mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n = 0 \qquad \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property and Theorem 4.2 page 33}$$

2.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{cov}\left[\dot{v}_m, \dot{v}_n\right] &= \mathsf{cov}\left[\langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_m(t)\rangle, \langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\right] && \text{by def. of } \dot{v}_n && \text{(Definition 4.1 page 29)}\\
&= \mathsf{cov}\left[\left(\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(t)\psi_m(t)\,\mathrm{d}t\right), \left(\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(u)\psi_n(u)\,\mathrm{d}u\right)\right] && \text{by def. of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle && \text{(Definition 4.1 page 29)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(t)\psi_m(t)\,\mathrm{d}t\right)\left(\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(u)\psi_n(u)\,\mathrm{d}u\right)\right] && \text{by def. of } \mathsf{Cov}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(t)\mathsf{v}(u)\psi_m(t)\psi_n(u)\,\mathrm{d}t\,\mathrm{d}u\right]\\
&= \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{E}[\mathsf{v}(t)\mathsf{v}(u)]\psi_m(t)\psi_n(u)\,\mathrm{d}t\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \sigma^2\delta(t-u)\psi_m(t)\psi_n(u)\,\mathrm{d}t\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by } \textit{white} \text{ hyp.} && \text{(B)}\\
&= \sigma^2\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \psi_m(t)\psi_n(u)\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \sigma^2\langle \psi_m(t) \,|\, \psi_n(u)\rangle && \text{by def. of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle && \text{(Definition 4.1 page 29)}\\
&= \begin{cases} \sigma^2 & \text{for } n=m\\ 0 & \text{for } n\neq m. \end{cases} && \text{by } \textit{orthonormal} \text{ prop.} && \text{(Definition 4.1 page 29)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma 4.4. *Let Ψ, $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$, $\mathsf{x}(t)$, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, $\dot{v}_n$, and Y be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29).*

LEM
$$\left\{ \begin{array}{lrcll} \text{(A).} & \mathsf{cov}[\mathsf{v}(t),\mathsf{v}(u)] &=& \sigma^2\delta(t-u) & \text{and}\\ \text{(B).} & \mathsf{v}(t) &\sim& \mathsf{N}\left(0,\sigma^2\right) & \text{and}\\ \text{(C).} & \langle \psi_n \,|\, \psi_m\rangle &=& \bar{\delta}_{mn} & \end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{ \begin{array}{lrcll} \text{(1).} & \dot{v}_n &\sim& \mathsf{N}\left(0,\sigma^2\right) & \text{(GAUSSIAN)}\\ \text{(2).} & \mathsf{cov}\left[\dot{v}_n, \dot{v}_m\right] &=& \sigma^2\bar{\delta}_{nm} & \text{(UNCORRELATED)}\\ \text{(3).} & \mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{v}_n \wedge \dot{v}_m\right\} &=& \mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{v}_n\right\}\mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{v}_m\right\} & \text{(INDEPENDENT)} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Because the operations are *linear* on processes are *Gaussian* (hypothesis C).
2.
$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n &= 0 && \text{by AWN properties and Theorem 4.4 page 35} \\ \operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{v}_m, \dot{v}_n\right] &= \sigma^2 \bar{\delta}_{mn} && \text{by AWN properties and Lemma 4.3 page 30} \end{aligned}$$
3. Because the processes are *Gaussian*, *uncorrelated* implies *independent*.

✏

4.2 Sufficient Statistics

Theorem 4.1 (Sufficient Statistic Theorem). [1] *Let* Ψ, $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$, $\mathsf{x}(t)$, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, $\dot{v}_n$, *and* Y *be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29). Let* $\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{map}}$ *be the* MAP ESTIMATE *and* $\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ *be the* ML ESTIMATE *(Definition C.1 page 162) of* θ.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} \text{(A).} & \mathsf{v}(t) \text{ is ZERO-MEAN} & \text{and} \\ \text{(B).} & \mathsf{v}(t) \text{ is WHITE} & \text{and} \\ \text{(C).} & \mathsf{v}(t) \text{ is GAUSSIAN} & \end{array}\right\} \implies \underbrace{\left\{\begin{array}{llll} \text{(1).} & \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\} = \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|Y\} & & \text{and} \\ \text{(2).} & \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{map}} & = \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|Y\} & \text{and} \\ \text{(3).} & \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} & = \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{Y|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\} & \end{array}\right\}}_{\text{the } N \text{ element set } Y \text{ is a SUFFICIENT STATISTIC for estimating } \mathsf{x}(t;\theta)}$$

✎PROOF:

1. definition: Let $\mathsf{v}'(t) \triangleq \mathsf{v}(t) - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{v}_n \psi_n(t)$.
2. lemma: The relationship between Y and $\mathsf{v}'(t)$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
&\boxed{\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t) + \left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta) - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t)\right] && \text{by additive identity property of } (\mathbb{C}, +, \cdot, 0, 1) \\
&\triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t) + \left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta) - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{x}(t) + \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t)\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \psi_n(t) + \underbrace{\mathsf{x}(t) + \mathsf{v}(t)}_{\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)} - \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{x}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t)}_{\mathsf{x}(t)} - \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t)}_{\mathsf{v}(t) - \mathsf{v}'(t)} && \text{by definition of } \dot{y}_n \text{ and additive property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \text{ (Definition I.9 page 232)} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \psi_n(t) + \mathsf{x}(t) + \mathsf{v}(t) - \mathsf{x}(t) - \left[\mathsf{v}(t) - \mathsf{v}'(t)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

[1] Fisher (1922) page 316 ⟨"Criterion of Sufficiency"⟩

$$= \boxed{\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \psi_n(t) + \mathsf{v}'(t)}$$

3. lemma: $\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n \mathsf{v}(t)\right] = N_o \psi_n(t)$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n \mathsf{v}(t)\right] \\
&\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(u)\psi_n(u)\, \mathsf{d}u\right)\mathsf{v}(t)\right] && \text{by definition of } \dot{v}_n(t) && \text{(Definition 4.1 page 29)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(u)\mathsf{v}(t)\psi_n(u)\, \mathsf{d}u\right] && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \int \mathsf{d}u \text{ operator}\\
&= \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{E}[\mathsf{v}(u)\mathsf{v}(t)]\psi_n(u)\, \mathsf{d}u && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \mathsf{E} && \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}\\
&= \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} N_o\delta(u-t)\psi_n(u)\, \mathsf{d}u && \text{by } \textit{white} \text{ hypothesis}\\
&= N_o\psi_n(t) && \text{by property of } \textit{Dirac delta } \delta(t)
\end{aligned}$$

4. lemma: Y and $\mathsf{v}'(t)$ are *uncorrelated*: Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{y}_n \mathsf{v}'(t)\right]\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \left(\mathsf{v}(t) - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t)\right)\right] && \text{by definitions of } \dot{y}_n \text{ and } \mathsf{v}'(t)\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{x}(t) + \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \left(\mathsf{v}(t) - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t)\right)\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\langle \mathsf{x}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle + \langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\right) \left(\mathsf{v}(t) - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t)\right)\right] && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle \text{ (Definition I.9 page 232)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\dot{x}_n + \dot{v}_n\right)\left(\mathsf{v}(t) - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{v}_n\psi_n(t)\right)\right] && \text{by definitions of } \dot{x}_n \text{ and } \dot{v}_n \text{ (Definition 4.1 page 29)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{x}_n\mathsf{v}(t) - \dot{x}_n\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{v}_n\psi_n(t) + \dot{v}_n\mathsf{v}(t) - \dot{v}_n\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{v}_n\psi_n(t)\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{x}_n\mathsf{v}(t)\right] - \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{x}_n\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{v}_n\psi_n(t)\right] + \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n\mathsf{v}(t)\right] - \mathsf{E}\left[\sum_{m=1}^{N} \dot{v}_n\dot{v}_m\psi_m(t)\right] && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \mathsf{E} \text{ (Theorem ?? page ??)}\\
&= \dot{x}_n\cancelto{0}{\mathsf{E}\mathsf{v}(t)} - \dot{x}_n\sum_{n=1}^{N} \cancelto{0}{\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n\right]}\psi_n(t) + \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n\mathsf{v}(t)\right] - \sum_{m=1}^{N} \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n\dot{v}_m\right]\psi_m(t) && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \mathsf{E} \text{ (Theorem ?? page ??)}\\
&= 0 - 0 + \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n\mathsf{v}(t)\right] - \sum_{m=1}^{N} N_o\bar{\delta}_{mn}\psi_m(t) && \text{by } \textit{white} \text{ hypothesis}\\
&= N_o\psi_n(t) - N_o\psi_n(t) && \text{by (3) lemma}\\
&= 0\\
&\implies \textbf{uncorrelated}
\end{aligned}$$

5. lemma: Y and $\mathsf{v}'(t)$ are *independent*. Proof: By (4) lemma, $\dot{y}_n$ and $\mathsf{v}'(t)$ are *uncorrelated*. By hypothesis, they are *Gaussian*, and thus are also **independent**.

6. Proof that $\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\} = \mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|\dot{y}_1,\ \dot{y}_2, \ldots, \dot{y}_N\right\}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\} &= \mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{y}_n\psi_n(t)+\mathsf{v}'(t)\right\} \\
&= \mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|Y,\mathsf{v}'(t)\right\} && \text{because } Y \text{ and } \mathsf{v}'(t) \text{ can be extracted by } \langle\cdots|\psi_n(t)\rangle \\
&= \frac{\mathsf{P}\left\{Y,\mathsf{v}'(t)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right\} P\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}}{\mathsf{P}\{Y,\mathsf{v}'(t)\}} \\
&= \frac{\mathsf{P}\{Y|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}\,\mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{v}'(t)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}}{\mathsf{P}\{Y\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{v}'(t)\}} && \text{by } \textit{independence} \text{ of } Y \text{ and } \mathsf{v}'(t) \text{ ((5) lemma page 32)} \\
&= \frac{\mathsf{P}\{Y|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}\,\mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{v}'(t)\right\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}}{\mathsf{P}\{Y\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{v}'(t)\}} && \text{by } \textit{independence} \text{ of } \mathsf{x} \text{ and } \mathsf{v} \\
&= \frac{\mathsf{P}\{Y|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}\,\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}}{\mathsf{P}\{Y\}} \\
&= \frac{\mathsf{P}\{Y,\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}}{\mathsf{P}\{Y\}} \\
&= \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|Y\} && \text{by definition of } \textit{conditional probability} \text{ (Definition ?? page ??)}
\end{aligned}$$

7. Proof that Y is a *sufficient statistic* for the *MAP estimate*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{map}} &\triangleq \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\} && \text{by definition of } \textit{MAP estimate} \text{ (Definition C.1 page 162)} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|Y\} && \text{by item (6)}
\end{aligned}$$

8. Proof that Y is a *sufficient statistic* for the *ML estimate*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} &\triangleq \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\} && \text{by definition of } \textit{ML estimate} \text{ (Definition C.1 page 162)} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{y}_n\psi_n(t)+\mathsf{v}'(t)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right\} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\left\{Y,\mathsf{v}'(t)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right\} && \text{because } Y \text{ and } \mathsf{v}'(t) \text{ can be extracted by } \langle\cdots|\psi_n(t)\rangle \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{Y|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}\,\mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{v}'(t)\right\}\mathsf{x}(t;\theta) && \text{by } \textit{independence} \text{ of } Y \text{ and } \mathsf{v}'(t) \text{ ((5) lemma page 32)} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{Y|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}\,\mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{v}'(t)\right\} && \text{by } \textit{independence} \text{ of } \mathsf{x}(t) \text{ and } \mathsf{v}'(t) \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{Y|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\} && \text{by } \textit{independence} \text{ of } \mathsf{v}'(t) \text{ and } \theta
\end{aligned}$$

✎

4.3 Additive noise

Theorem 4.2 (Additive noise projection statistics). *Let* Ψ, $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$, $\mathsf{x}(t)$, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, $\dot{v}_n$, *and* Y *be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29).*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{llcll}
\text{(A).} & \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) & \triangleq & \mathsf{x}(t;\theta)+\mathsf{v}(t) & \textbf{(additive)} \quad \text{and} \\
\text{(B).} & \mathsf{E}[\mathsf{v}(t)] & = & 0 & \text{(ZERO-MEAN)} \quad \text{and} \\
\text{(C).} & \mathsf{x}(t) & \subseteq & \operatorname{span}\Psi & (\Psi \text{ SPANS } \mathsf{x}(t)) \quad \text{and} \\
\text{(D).} & \langle\psi_n\,|\,\psi_m\rangle & = & \bar{\delta}_{mn} & \text{(ORTHONORMAL)}
\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\ \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{y}_n(\theta)\right] = \dot{x}_n(\theta)\ \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{y}_n(\theta)\right] &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\right] && \text{by definition of } \dot{y}_n && \text{(Definition 4.1 page 29)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\langle \mathsf{x}(t;\theta) + \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ hypothesis} && \text{hypothesis (A)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\psi_n(t) \,|\, +\rangle \langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\right] && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left\langle \sum_{k=1}^{N} \dot{x}_k(\theta)\psi_k(t) \,\middle|\, \psi_n(t)\right\rangle + \dot{v}_n\right] && \text{by } \textit{basis} \text{ hypothesis} && \text{(C)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\sum_{k=1}^{N} \dot{x}_k(\theta)\langle \psi_k(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle + \dot{v}_n\right] && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\sum_{k=1}^{N} \dot{x}_k(\theta)\bar{\delta}_{k-n}(t) + \dot{v}_n\right] && \text{by } \textit{orthonormal} \text{ hypothesis} && \text{(D)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{x}_n(\theta) + \dot{v}_n\right] && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\dot{x}_n(\theta) + \cancelto{0}{\mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n} && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \mathsf{E} && \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}\\
&= \dot{x}_n(\theta) && \text{by (B) and Lemma 4.1 page 29}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

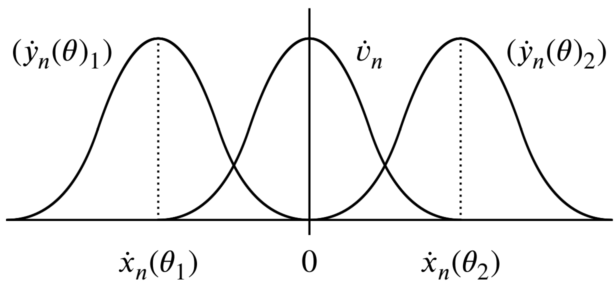


Figure 4.1: Additive *Gaussian* noise channel Statistics

Theorem 4.3 (Additive Gaussian noise projection statistics). *Let* Ψ, $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$, $\mathsf{x}(t)$, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, $\dot{v}_n$, *and* Y *be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29).*

THM

$$
\underbrace{\left\{\begin{array}{lrcll}
\text{(A).} & \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) & \triangleq & \mathsf{x}(t) + \mathsf{v}(t) & (\textbf{\textit{additive}}) \quad \textit{and}\\
\text{(B).} & \mathsf{v}(t) & \sim & \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right) & (\textbf{\textit{Gaussian}}) \quad \textit{and}\\
\text{(C).} & \mathsf{x}(t) & \subseteq & \operatorname{span}\Psi & (\Psi \text{ SPANS } \mathsf{x}(t)) \quad \textit{and}\\
\text{(D).} & \langle \psi_n \,|\, \psi_m\rangle & = & \bar{\delta}_{mn} & (\text{ORTHONORMAL})
\end{array}\right\}}_{\text{ADDITIVE GAUSSIAN } \textit{system}}
\implies \left\{ \dot{y}_n(\theta) \sim \mathsf{N}\left(\dot{x}_n(\theta), \sigma^2\right) \quad (\text{GAUSSIAN}) \right\}
$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (1): By hypothesis (B) and Lemma 4.1 page 29.
2. Proof for (2):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{y}_n(\theta)\right] &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \,|\theta\right] && \text{by definition of } \dot{y}_n && \text{(Definition 4.1 page 29)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{x}(t;\theta) + \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\right] && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ hypothesis} && \text{hypothesis (A)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{x}(t;\theta) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\right] + \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{v}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\right] && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left\langle \sum_{k=1}^{N} \dot{x}_k(\theta)\psi_k(t) \,\middle|\, \psi_n(t)\right\rangle + \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n && \text{by } \textit{basis} \text{ hypothesis} && \text{(C)}\\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{N} \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{x}_k(\theta)\right]\langle \psi_k(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle + \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{k=1}^{N} \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{x}_k(\theta)\right]\bar{\delta}_{k-n}(t) + \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n && \text{by } \textit{orthonormal} \text{ hypothesis} \qquad \text{(D)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\dot{x}_n(\theta) + \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta}\\
&= \dot{x}_n(\theta) + 0 && \text{by Lemma 4.1 page 29}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for (3): The distribution follows because the process is a linear operations on a Gaussian process.

✏

Theorem 4.4 (Additive white noise projection statistics). *Let Ψ, $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$, $\mathsf{x}(t)$, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, $\dot{v}_n$, and Y be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29).*

THM

$$\underbrace{\left.\begin{array}{lrcll}
\text{(A).} & \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) & \triangleq & \mathsf{x}(t)+\mathsf{v}(t) & \textit{and}\\
\text{(B).} & \operatorname{cov}\left[\mathsf{v}(t),\mathsf{v}(u)\right] & = & \sigma^2\delta(t-u) & \textit{and}\\
\text{(C).} & \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{v}(t)\right] & = & 0 & \textit{and}\\
\text{(E).} & \mathsf{x}(t) & \subseteq & \operatorname{span}\Psi & \textit{and}\\
\text{(E).} & \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle & = & \bar{\delta}_{mn} &
\end{array}\right\}}_{\text{ADDITIVE WHITE } \textit{system}}
\implies
\left\{\begin{array}{llcll}
\text{(1).} & \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n & = & 0 & \text{(ZERO-MEAN)}\\
\text{(2).} & \mathsf{E}(\dot{y}_n(\theta)) & = & \dot{x}_n(\theta) & \\
\text{(3).} & \operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{v}_n,\dot{v}_m\right] & = & \sigma^2\bar{\delta}_{nm} & \text{(UNCORRELATED)}\\
\text{(4).} & \operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{y}_n(\theta),\dot{y}_m|\theta\right] & = & \sigma^2\bar{\delta}_{nm} & \text{(UNCORRELATED)}
\end{array}\right.$$

✎PROOF:

1. Because the noise is *additive* (hypothesis A)...

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n &= 0 && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property and Theorem 4.2 page 33}\\
(\dot{y}_n(\theta)) &= \dot{x}_n(\theta) + \dot{v}_n && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property and Theorem 4.2 page 33}\\
\mathsf{E}(\dot{y}_n|\theta) &= \dot{x}_n(\theta) && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property and Theorem 4.2 page 33}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for (4):

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{y}_n(\theta),\dot{y}_m|\theta\right] &= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{y}_n\dot{y}_m|\theta\right] - [\mathsf{E}\dot{y}_n(\theta)][\mathsf{E}\dot{y}_m|\theta]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[(\dot{x}_n(\theta)+\dot{v}_n)(\dot{x}_m(\theta)+\dot{v}_m)\right] - \dot{x}_n(\theta)\dot{x}_m(\theta)\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{x}_n(\theta)\dot{x}_m(\theta) + \dot{x}_n(\theta)\dot{v}_m + \dot{v}_n\dot{x}_m(\theta) + \dot{v}_n\dot{v}_m\right] - \dot{x}_n(\theta)\dot{x}_m(\theta)\\
&= \dot{x}_n(\theta)\dot{x}_m(\theta) + \dot{x}_n(\theta)\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_m\right] + \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n\right]\dot{x}_m(\theta) + \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{v}_n\dot{v}_m\right] - \dot{x}_n(\theta)\dot{x}_m(\theta)\\
&= 0 + \dot{x}_n(\theta)\cdot 0 + 0\cdot\dot{x}_m(\theta) + \operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{v}_n,\dot{v}_m\right] + [\mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n][\mathsf{E}\dot{v}_m]\\
&= \sigma^2\bar{\delta}_{nm} + 0\cdot 0 && \text{by Lemma 4.3}\\
&= \begin{cases} \sigma^2 & \text{for } n = m\\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq m.\end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

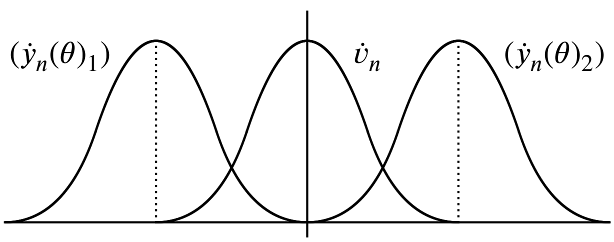


Figure 4.2: Additive white *Gaussian* noise channel statistics

Theorem 4.5 (AWGN projection statistics). *Let Ψ, $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$, $\mathsf{x}(t)$, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, $\dot{v}_n$, and Y be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29).*

THM

$$\underbrace{\left.\begin{array}{llcll} (A). & \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) & \triangleq & \mathsf{x}(t)+\mathsf{v}(t) & \text{and} \\ (B). & \mathsf{cov}\left[\mathsf{v}(t),\mathsf{v}(u)\right] & = & \sigma^2\delta(t-u) & \text{and} \\ (C). & \mathsf{v}(t) & \sim & \mathsf{N}\left(0,\sigma^2\right) & \text{and} \\ (D). & \mathsf{x}(t) & \subseteq & \operatorname{span}\Psi & \text{and} \\ (E). & \langle\psi_n\,|\,\psi_m\rangle & = & \bar{\delta}_{mn} & \end{array}\right\}}_{\text{ADDITIVE WHITE GAUSSIAN system}} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{lll} (1). & \dot{y}_n(\theta) \sim \mathsf{N}\left(\dot{x}_n(\theta),\sigma^2\right) & \text{(GAUSSIAN)} \\ (2). & \mathsf{cov}\left[\dot{y}_n,\dot{y}_m\right] = \sigma^2\bar{\delta}_{nm} & \text{(UNCORRELATED)} \\ (3). & \mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{y}_n \wedge \dot{y}_m\right\} = \mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{y}_n\right\}\mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{y}_m\right\} & \text{(INDEPENDENT)} \end{array}\right.$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (1) follow because the operations are *linear* on processes are *Gaussian* (hypothesis C).
2.

$$\begin{array}{rll} \mathsf{E}\dot{v}_n &= 0 & \text{by } AWN \text{ properties and Theorem 4.4 page 35} \\ \dot{y}_n &= \dot{x}_n + \dot{v}_n & \text{by } AWN \text{ properties and Theorem 4.4 page 35} \\ \mathsf{E}\dot{y}_n &= \dot{x}_n & \text{by } AWN \text{ properties and Theorem 4.4 page 35} \\ \mathsf{cov}\left[\dot{y}_n,\dot{y}_m\right] &= \sigma^2\bar{\delta}_{mn} & \text{by } AWN \text{ properties and Theorem 4.4 page 35} \end{array}$$

3. Because the processes are *Gaussian*, *uncorrelated* implies *independent*.

✏

4.4 ML estimates

The AWGN projection statistics provided by Theorem 4.5 (page 36) help generate the optimal ML-estimates for a number of communication systems. These ML-estimates can be expressed in either of two standard forms:

- **Spectral decompostion**: The optimal estimate is expressed in terms of *projections* of signals onto orthonormal basis functions.
- **Matched signal**: The optimal estimate is expressed in terms of the (noisy) received signal correlated with ("matched" with) the (noiseless) transmitted signal.

Theorem 4.6 (page 36) (next) expresses the general optimal *ML estimate* in both of these forms.

Parameter detection is a special case of parameter estimation. In parameter detection, the estimate is a member of an finite set. In parameter estimation, the estimate is a member of an infinite set (Section 4.4 page 36).

Theorem 4.6 (General ML estimation). *Let Ψ, $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$, $\mathsf{x}(t)$, $\mathsf{v}(t)$, $\dot{y}_n$, $\dot{x}_n$, $\dot{v}_n$, and Y be defined as in Definition 4.1 (page 29). Let $\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ be the* ML ESTIMATE *(Definition C.1 page 162) of θ.*

THM

$$\begin{array}{rcll} \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} &=& \arg\min\limits_{\hat{\theta}} \left[\sum\limits_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - \dot{x}_n(\hat{\theta})]^2\right] & \text{(spectral decomposition)} \\ &=& \arg\max\limits_{\hat{\theta}} \left[2\left\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\,|\,\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right\rangle - \|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\|^2\right] & \text{(matched signal)} \end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\theta}_{\text{ml}} &= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{y}_1, \dot{y}_2, \ldots, \dot{y}_n|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right\} && \text{by Theorem 4.1 (page 31)} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \prod_{n=1}^{N} \mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{y}_n|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right\} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \prod_{n=1}^{N} \mathsf{p}\left[\dot{\mathsf{y}}_n|\mathsf{x}(\mathsf{t};\theta)\right] \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \prod_{n=1}^{N} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} \exp\frac{[\dot{y}_n - \dot{x}_n(\hat{\theta})]^2}{-2\sigma^2} && \text{by Theorem 4.5 (page 36)} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}\right)^N \exp\frac{-1}{2\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - \dot{x}_n(\hat{\theta})]^2 \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \left[-\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - \dot{x}_n(\hat{\theta})]^2\right] \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \left[-\lim_{N\to\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - \dot{x}_n(\hat{\theta})]^2\right] && \text{by Theorem 4.1 (page 31)} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \left[-\|\mathsf{y}(t;\theta) - \mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\|^2\right] && \text{by \textit{Plancheral's formula} (Theorem ?? page ??)} \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \left[-\|\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\|^2 + 2\mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{e}}\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\rangle - \|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\|^2\right] \\
&= \arg\max_{\hat{\theta}} \left[2\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\rangle - \|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\|^2\right] && \text{because } \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \text{ \textit{independent} of } \hat{\theta}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem 4.7 (ML amplitude estimation). [2] *Let* **S** *be an additive white gaussian noise system.*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{llcll}
\text{(A).} & \mathsf{v}(t) \text{ is AWGN} & & & \text{and} \\
\text{(B).} & \mathsf{y}(t;a) & = & \mathsf{x}(t;a) + \mathsf{v}(t) & \text{and} \\
\text{(C).} & \mathsf{x}(t;a) & \triangleq & a\lambda(t). &
\end{array}\right\}
\implies
\left\{\begin{array}{lrcll}
\text{(1).} & \hat{a}_{\text{ml}} & = & \dfrac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2}\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{y}_n\dot{\lambda}_n & \\
\text{(2).} & \mathsf{E}\hat{a}_{\text{ml}} & = & a & (\text{UNBIASED}) \\
\text{(3).} & \operatorname{var}\hat{a}_{\text{ml}} & = & \dfrac{\sigma^2}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} & \\
\text{(4).} & \operatorname{var}\hat{a}_{\text{ml}} & = & \text{CR lower bound} & (\text{EFFICIENT})
\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. *ML estimate* in “matched signal” form:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{a}_{\text{ml}} &= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\rangle - \|\mathsf{x}(t;\phi)\|^2\right] && \text{by Theorem 4.6 (page 36)} \\
&= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, a\lambda(t)\rangle - \|a\lambda(t)\|^2\right] && \text{by hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

[2] Mandyam D. Srinath (1996) pages 158–159

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \arg_a \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial a} 2a \langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \lambda(t) \rangle - \frac{\partial}{\partial a} a^2 \|\lambda(t)\|^2 = 0 \right] \\
&= \arg_a \left[2 \langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \lambda(t) \rangle - 2a \|\lambda(t)\|^2 = 0 \right] \\
&= \arg_a \left[\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \lambda(t) \rangle = a \|\lambda(t)\|^2 \right] \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} \langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \,|\, \lambda(t) \rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

2. *ML estimate* in "spectral decomposition" form:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} &= \arg\min_a \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left[\dot{y}_n - \dot{x}_n(a) \right]^2 \right) && \text{by Theorem 4.6 (page 36)} \\
&= \arg_a \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial a} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left[\dot{y}_n - \dot{x}_n(a) \right]^2 = 0 \right) \\
&= \arg_a \left(2 \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left[\dot{y}_n - \dot{x}_n(a) \right] \frac{\partial}{\partial a} \dot{x}_n(a) = 0 \right) \\
&= \arg_a \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left[\dot{y}_n - \langle a\lambda(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle \right] \frac{\partial}{\partial a} \langle a\lambda(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle = 0 \right) \\
&= \arg_a \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left[\dot{y}_n - a \langle \lambda(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle \right] \frac{\partial}{\partial a} (a \langle \lambda(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle) = 0 \right) \\
&= \arg_a \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left[\dot{y}_n - a\dot{\lambda}_n \right] \langle \lambda(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \rangle = 0 \right) \\
&= \arg_a \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left[\dot{y}_n - a\dot{\lambda}_n \right] \dot{\lambda}_n = 0 \right) \\
&= \arg_a \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \dot{\lambda}_n = \sum_{n=1}^{N} a \dot{\lambda}_n^2 \right) \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{\lambda}_n^2} \right) \sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \dot{\lambda}_n \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \dot{\lambda}_n
\end{aligned}
$$

3. Prove that the estimate $\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ is **unbiased**:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} &= \mathsf{E} \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\lambda(t)\, \mathrm{d}t && \text{by previous result} \\
&= \mathsf{E} \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} [a\lambda(t) + \mathsf{v}(t)]\lambda(t)\, \mathrm{d}t && \text{by hypothesis} \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{E}[a\lambda(t) + \mathsf{v}(t)]\lambda(t)\, \mathrm{d}t && \text{by linearity of } \int \cdot\, \mathrm{d}t \text{ and } \mathsf{E} \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} a \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \lambda^2(t)\, \mathrm{d}t && \text{by } \mathsf{E} \text{ operation} \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} a \|\lambda(t)\|^2 && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\|^2 \\
&= a
\end{aligned}
$$

4. Compute the variance of $\hat{a}_{\text{ml}}$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\hat{a}^2_{\text{ml}} &= \mathsf{E}\left[\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2}\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\lambda(t)\,\mathsf{d}t\right]^2 \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\lambda(t)\,\mathsf{d}t\int_{v} \mathsf{y}(v)\lambda(v)\,\mathsf{d}v\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{v}[a\lambda(t)+\mathsf{v}(t)][a\lambda(v)+\mathsf{v}(v)]\lambda(t)\lambda(v)\,\mathsf{d}v\,\mathsf{d}t\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{v}[a^2\lambda(t)\lambda(v)+a\lambda(t)\mathsf{v}(v)+a\lambda(v)\mathsf{v}(t)+\mathsf{v}(t)\mathsf{v}(v)]\lambda(t)\lambda(v)\,\mathsf{d}v\,\mathsf{d}t\right] \\
&= \left[\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{v}[a^2\lambda(t)\lambda(v)+0+0+\sigma^2\delta(t-v)]\lambda(t)\lambda(v)\,\mathsf{d}v\,\mathsf{d}t\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{v}a^2\lambda^2(t)\lambda^2(v)\,\mathsf{d}v\,\mathsf{d}t+\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{v}\sigma^2\delta(t-v)\lambda(t)\lambda(v)\,\mathsf{d}v\,\mathsf{d}t \\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}a^2\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\lambda^2(t)\,\mathsf{d}t\int_{v}\lambda^2(v)\,\mathsf{d}v+\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\sigma^2\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\lambda^2(t)\,\mathsf{d}t \\
&= a^2\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\|\lambda(t)\|^2\,\|\lambda(v)\|^2+\frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^4}\sigma^2\,\|\lambda(t)\|^2 \\
&= a^2+\frac{\sigma^2}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{var}\hat{a}_{\text{ml}} &= \mathsf{E}\hat{a}^2_{\text{ml}}-(\mathsf{E}\hat{a}_{\text{ml}})^2 \\
&= \left(a^2+\frac{\sigma^2}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2}\right)-\left(a^2\right) \\
&= \frac{\sigma^2}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2}
\end{aligned}
$$

5. Compute the Cramér-Rao Bound:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right] &= \mathsf{p}\left[\dot{\mathsf{y}}_1,\dot{\mathsf{y}}_2,\ldots,\dot{\mathsf{y}}_N|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right] \\
&= \prod_{n=1}^{N}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}\exp\frac{(\dot{y}_n-a\dot{\lambda}_n)^2}{-2\sigma^2} \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}\right)^N\exp\frac{1}{-2\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}(\dot{y}_n-a\dot{\lambda}_n)^2
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial a}\ln\mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right] &= \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\ln\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}\right)^N\exp\frac{1}{-2\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}(\dot{y}_n-a\dot{\lambda}_n)^2 \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\ln\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}\right)^N+\frac{\partial}{\partial a}\ln\exp\frac{1}{-2\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}(\dot{y}_n-a\dot{\lambda}_n)^2 \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\left[\frac{1}{-2\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}(\dot{y}_n-a\dot{\lambda}_n)^2\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{-2\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}2(\dot{y}_n-a\dot{\lambda}_n)(-\dot{\lambda}_n) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{\lambda}_n(\dot{y}_n-a\dot{\lambda}_n)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial^2}{\partial a^2}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right] &= \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\frac{\partial}{\partial a}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right]\\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial a}\frac{1}{\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{\lambda}_n(\dot{y}_n - a\dot{\lambda}_n)\\
&= \frac{1}{\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{\lambda}_n(-\dot{\lambda}_n)\\
&= \frac{-1}{\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{\lambda}_n^2\\
&= \frac{-\|\lambda(t)\|^2}{\sigma^2}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{var}\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} - \mathsf{E}\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}}\right]^2\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} - a\right]^2\\
&\geq \frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial a^2}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right]\right)}\\
&= \frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{-\|\lambda(t)\|^2}{\sigma^2}\right)}\\
&= \frac{\sigma^2}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2} && \text{(Cramér-Rao lower bound of the variance)}
\end{aligned}$$

6. Proof that $\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ is an *efficient* estimate:

   An estimate is *efficient* if $\operatorname{var}\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ = CR lower bound. We have already proven this, so $\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ is an *efficient* estimate.

   Also, even without explicitly computing the variance of $\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}}$, the variance equals the *Cramér-Rao lower bound* (and hence $\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ is an *efficient* estimate) if and only if

$$\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} - a = \left(\frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left[\frac{\partial^2}{\partial a^2}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right]\right]}\right)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial a}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right]\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial a^2}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right]\right)}\right)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial a}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;a)\right]\right) &= \left(\frac{\sigma^2}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{\lambda}(\dot{y} - a\dot{\lambda})\right)\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{\lambda}\dot{y} - \frac{1}{\|\lambda(t)\|^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{\lambda}^2\\
&= \hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} - a
\end{aligned}$$

✎

Theorem 4.8 (ML phase estimation). [3]

THM
$$\left\{\begin{array}{llll}
\text{(A).} & \mathsf{v}(t) \text{ is AWGN} & & \text{and}\\
\text{(B).} & \mathsf{y}(t;\phi) = & \mathsf{x}(t;\phi) + \mathsf{v}(t) & \text{and}\\
\text{(C).} & \mathsf{x}(t;\phi) \triangleq & A\cos(2\pi f_c t + \phi) &
\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\hat{\phi}_{\mathsf{ml}} = -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\,|\,\sin(2\pi f_c t)\rangle}{\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\,|\,\cos(2\pi f_c t)\rangle}\right)\right\}$$

[3] Mandyam D. Srinath (1996) pages 159–160

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{\phi}_{\text{ml}} &= \arg\max_{\phi} \left[2\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, x(t;\phi)\rangle - \|x(t;\phi)\|^2\right] && \text{by Theorem 4.6 (page 36)}\\
&= \arg\max_{\phi} \left[2\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, x(t;\phi)\rangle\right] && \text{because } \|x(t;\phi)\| \text{ does not depend on } \phi\\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, x(t;\phi)\rangle = 0\right]\\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left[\left\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi} x(t;\phi)\right\rangle = 0\right] && \text{because } \langle\triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle \text{ is } \textit{linear}\\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left[\left\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi} A\cos(2\pi f_c t + \phi)\right\rangle = 0\right] && \text{by definition of } x(t;\phi)\\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left[\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, -A\sin(2\pi f_c t + \phi)\rangle = 0\right] && \text{because } \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\cos(x) = -\sin(x)\\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left[-A\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \cos(2\pi f_c t)\sin\phi + \sin(2\pi f_c t)\cos\phi\rangle = 0\right] && \text{by } \textit{double angle formulas}\\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left[\sin\phi\,\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \cos(2\pi f_c t)\rangle = -\cos\phi\,\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \sin(2\pi f_c t)\rangle\right]\\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left[\frac{\sin\phi}{\cos\phi} = -\frac{\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \sin(2\pi f_c t)\rangle}{\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \cos(2\pi f_c t)\rangle}\right]\\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left[\tan\phi = -\frac{\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \sin(2\pi f_c t)\rangle}{\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \cos(2\pi f_c t)\rangle}\right]\\
&= -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \sin(2\pi f_c t)\rangle}{\langle y(t;\phi) \,|\, \cos(2\pi f_c t)\rangle}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem 4.9 (ML estimation of a function of a parameter). [4] *Let* S *be an additive white gaussian noise system such that*

$$
\begin{aligned}
y(t;\theta) &= x(t;\theta) + v(t)\\
x(t;\theta) &= g(\theta)
\end{aligned}
$$

and g *is* ONE-TO-ONE AND ONTO (INVERTIBLE).

THM

Then the optimal ML-estimate of parameter θ *is* $\hat{\theta}_{\text{ml}} = g^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{y}_n\right)$.

If an ML ESTIMATE $\hat{\theta}_{\text{ml}}$ *is unbiased* ($\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}_{\text{ml}} = \theta$) *then* $\operatorname{var}\hat{\theta}_{\text{ml}} \geq \frac{\sigma^2}{N}\frac{1}{\left[\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}\right]^2}$.

If $g(\theta) = \theta$ *then* $\hat{\theta}_{\text{ml}}$ *is an* ***efficient*** *estimate such that* $\operatorname{var}\hat{\theta}_{\text{ml}} = \frac{\sigma^2}{N}$.

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{\theta}_{\text{ml}} &= \arg\min_{\theta}\left[\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - g(\theta)]^2\right] && \text{by Theorem 4.6 page 36}\\
&= \arg_{\theta}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - g(\theta)]^2 = 0\right] && \text{because form is } \textit{quadratic}\\
&= \arg_{\theta}\left[2\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - g(\theta)]\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}g(\theta) = 0\right]\\
&= \arg_{\theta}\left[2\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - g(\theta)] = 0\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

[4] Mandyam D. Srinath (1996) pages 142–143

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \arg_\theta \left[\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n = N\mathrm{g}(\theta) \right] \\
&= \arg_\theta \left[\mathrm{g}(\theta) = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \right] \\
&= \arg_\theta \left[\theta = \mathrm{g}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \right) \right] \\
&= \mathrm{g}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N} \dot{y}_n \right)
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\hat{\theta}_{\mathrm{ml}}$ is unbiased ($\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}_{\mathrm{ml}} = \theta$), we can use the *Cramér-Rao bound* to find a lower bound on the variance:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{var}\hat{\theta}_{\mathrm{ml}} &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\hat{\theta}_{\mathrm{ml}} - \mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}_{\mathrm{ml}}\right]^2 \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\hat{\theta}_{\mathrm{ml}} - \theta\right]^2 \\
&\geq \frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2} \ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right] \right)} && \text{by \textit{Cramér-Rao Inequality}} \\
&= \frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2} \ln \mathsf{p}\left[\dot{\mathsf{y}}_1, \dot{\mathsf{y}}_2, \ldots, \dot{\mathsf{y}}_N|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right] \right)} && \text{by \textit{Sufficient Statistic Theorem} (Theorem 4.1 page 31)} \\
&= \frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2} \ln\left[\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} \right)^N \exp\left(\frac{-1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{y}_n - \mathrm{g}(\theta)]^2 \right) \right] \right)} && \text{by \textit{AWGN} hypothesis and Theorem 4.5 page 36} \\
&= \frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2} \ln\left[\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} \right)^N \right] + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2} \ln\left[\exp \frac{-1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{y}_n - \mathrm{g}(\theta)]^2 \right] \right)} \\
&= \frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2} \left(\frac{-1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{y}_n - \mathrm{g}(\theta)]^2 \right) \right)} \\
&= \frac{2\sigma^2}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{y}_n - \mathrm{g}(\theta)]^2 \right)} \\
&= \frac{2\sigma^2}{\mathsf{E}\left(-2\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial \mathrm{g}(\theta)}{\partial\theta} \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{y}_n - \mathrm{g}(\theta)] \right)} && \text{by \textit{Chain Rule}} \\
&= \frac{-\sigma^2}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial \mathrm{g}^2(\theta)}{\partial\theta^2} \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{y}_n - \mathrm{g}(\theta)] + \frac{\partial \mathrm{g}(\theta)}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{y}_n - \mathrm{g}(\theta)] \right)} && \text{by \textit{Product Rule}} \\
&= \frac{-\sigma^2}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial \mathrm{g}^2(\theta)}{\partial\theta^2} \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{y}_n - \mathrm{g}(\theta)] - N\frac{\partial \mathrm{g}(\theta)}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial \mathrm{g}(\theta)}{\partial\theta} \right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{-\sigma^2}{\frac{\partial g^2(\theta)}{\partial\theta^2}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\mathsf{E}[\dot{y}_n - g(\theta)] - N\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}} \\
&= \frac{-\sigma^2}{-N\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}} && \text{because derivative of constant} = 0 \\
&= \frac{\sigma^2}{N}\frac{1}{\left[\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}\right]^2}
\end{aligned}
$$

The inequality becomes equality (an *efficient* estimate) if and only if

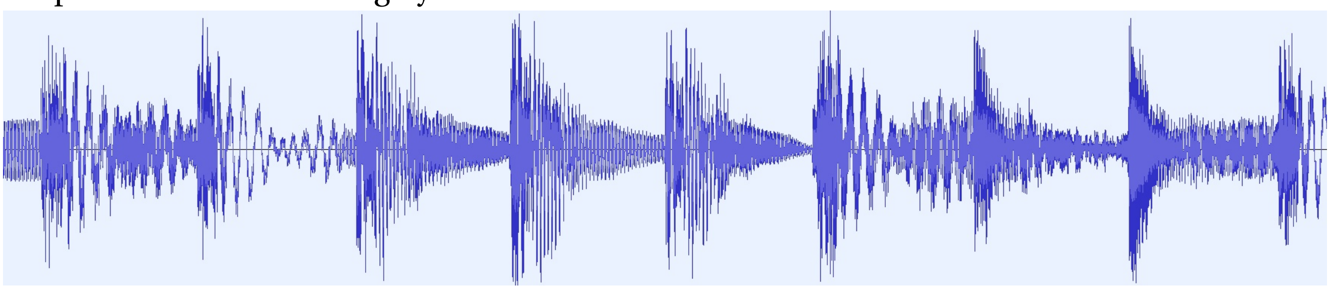
$$
\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} - \theta = \left(\frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right]\right)}\right)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right]\right).
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\frac{-1}{\mathsf{E}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right]\right)}\right)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\ln \mathsf{p}\left[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\right]\right)
&= \left(\frac{\sigma^2}{N}\frac{1}{\left[\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}\right]^2}\right)\left(\frac{-1}{2\sigma^2}(2)\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - g(\theta)]\right) \\
&= -\frac{1}{N}\frac{1}{\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{y}_n - g(\theta)]\right) \\
&= -\frac{1}{\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}}\left(\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\dot{y}_n - g(\theta)\right) \\
&= -\frac{1}{\frac{\partial g(\theta)}{\partial\theta}}\left(\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} - g(\theta)\right) \\
&= -(\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} - \theta)
\end{aligned}
$$

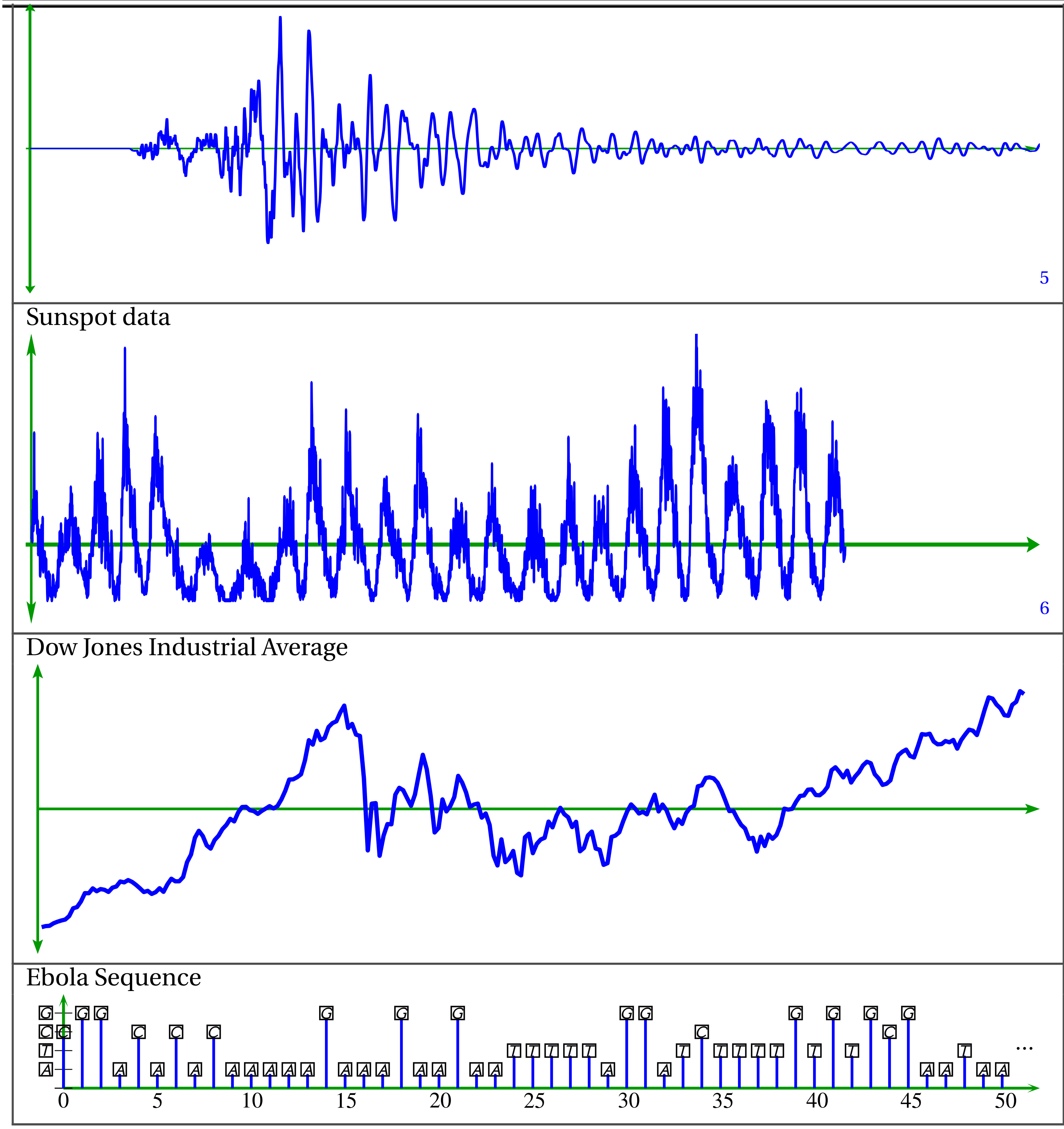
✏

4.5 Example data

"Pop Goes the World" song by Men Without Hats



Earthquake data



4.6 Colored noise

This chapter presented several theorems whose results depended on the noise being white. However if the noise is **colored**, then these results are invalid. But there is still hope for colored noise. Processing colored signals can be accomplished using two techniques:

1. Karhunen-Loève basis functions (Section D.1 page 167)

[5] https://www.iris.edu/wilber3/find_stations/10953070

[6] https://d32ogoqmya1dw8.cloudfront.net/files/introgeo/teachingwdata/examples/GreenwichSSNvstime.txt

2. whitening filter [7]

Karhunen-Loève. If the noise is *white*, the set $\left\{\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\,|\,\psi_n(t)\rangle \,|n=1,2,\ldots,N\right\}$ is a *sufficient statistic* regardless of which set $\left\{\psi_n(t)\right\}$ of orthonormal basis functions are used. If the noise is *colored*, and if $\{\psi_n(t)\}$ satisfy the Karhunen-Loève criterion

$$\int_{t_2} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\psi_n(u)\,\mathsf{d}u = \lambda_n\psi_n(t)$$

then the set $\left\{\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\,|\,\psi_n(t)\rangle\right\}$ is still a *sufficient statistic*.

Whitening filter. The whitening filter makes the received signal $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$ statistically white (uncorrelated in time). In this case, any orthonormal basis set can be used to generate sufficient statistics.

Wavelets. Wavelets have the property that they tend to whiten data. For more information, see Walter and Shen (2001) pages 329–350 ⟨“Chapter 14 Orthogonal Systems and Stochastic Processes”⟩, Mallat (1999), Johnstone and Silverman (1997), Wornell and Oppenheim (1992), and Vidakovic (1999) pages 10–14 ⟨“Example 1.2.5 Wavelets whiten data”⟩ (first four references cited by B. Vidakovic).

[7] *Continuous data whitening*: Section ?? page ??
Discrete data whitening: Section ?? page ??

CHAPTER 5

OPTIMAL SYMBOL DETECTION

5.1 ML Estimation

Theorem 5.1. *In an AWGN channel with received signal* $\mathsf{r}(t) = s(t;\phi) + n(t)$ *Let*

- $\mathsf{r}(t) = s(t;\phi) + n(t)$ *be the received signal in an AWGN channel*
- $n(t)$ *a Gaussian white noise process*
- $\mathsf{s}(t;\phi)$ *the transmitted signal such that*

$$s(t;\phi) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n + \phi).$$

Then the optimal ML estimate of ϕ *is either of the two equivalent expressions*

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\phi}_{\mathsf{ml}} &= -\operatorname{atan}\left[\frac{\displaystyle\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}{\displaystyle\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}\right] \\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\left[\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n + \phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right).
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\phi}_{\mathsf{ml}} &= \arg_{\phi}\left(2\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}s(t;\phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} s^2(t;\phi)\,\mathrm{d}t\right) && \text{by Theorem 4.6 page 36} \\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left(2\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}s(t;\phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\|s(t;\phi)\|^2\,\mathrm{d}t\right) \\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left(2\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}s(t;\phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right) \\
&= \arg_{\phi}\left(\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n + \phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \arg_\phi\left(-\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\left[\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n+\phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right)\\
&= \arg_\phi\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\left[\sin(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\cos(\phi)+\sin(\phi)\cos(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right)\\
&= \arg_\phi\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(\phi)\cos(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t = -\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\cos(\phi)\,\mathrm{d}t\right)\\
&= \arg_\phi\left(\sin(\phi)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t = -\cos(\phi)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t\right)\\
&= \arg_\phi\left(\frac{\sin(\phi)}{\cos(\phi)} = -\frac{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}\right)\\
&= \arg_\phi\left(\tan(\phi) = -\frac{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}\right)\\
&= \arg_\phi\left(\phi = -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}\right)\right)\\
&= -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{r}(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t+\theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

5.2 Generalized coherent modulation

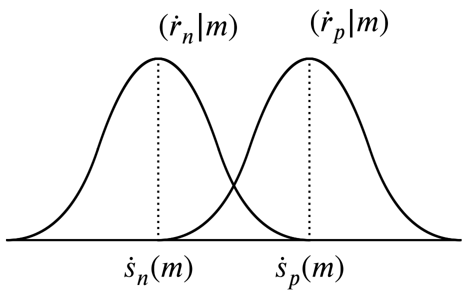


Figure 5.1: Distributions of orthonormal components

Theorem 5.2. *Let*

- $(V, \langle\cdot\,|\,\cdot\rangle, S)$ *be a modulation space*
- $\Psi \triangleq \{\psi_n(t) : n = 1, 2, \ldots, N\}$ *be a set of orthonormal functions that span* S
- $\dot{r}_n \triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t)\,|\,\psi_n(t)\rangle$
- $R \triangleq \{\dot{r}_n : n = 1, 2, \ldots, N\}$
- $\dot{s}_n(m) \triangleq \langle s(t;m)\,|\,\psi_n(t)\rangle$

and let V *be partitioned into* ***decision regions***

$$\{D_m : m = 1, 2, \ldots, |S|\}$$

such that

$$\mathsf{r}(t) \in D_{\hat{m}} \iff \hat{m} = \arg\max_m \mathsf{P}\{s(t;m)|\mathsf{r}(t)\}.$$

*Then the **probability of detection error** is*

THM
$$\mathsf{P}\{error\} = 1 - \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}\right)^N \sum_m \mathsf{P}\{m\ sent\} \int_{\boldsymbol{r}\in D_m} \exp\frac{-1}{2\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^N [\dot{r}_n - \dot{s}_n(m)]^2\, d\boldsymbol{r}.$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{P}\{\text{error}\} &= 1 - \mathsf{P}\{\text{no error}\}\\
&= 1 - \sum_m \mathsf{P}\left\{(m\ \text{sent}) \wedge (\hat{m} = m\ \text{detected})\right\}\\
&= 1 - \sum_m \mathsf{P}\left\{(\hat{m} = m\ \text{detected})|(m\ \text{sent})\right\}\mathsf{P}\{m\ \text{sent}\}\\
&= 1 - \sum_m \mathsf{P}\{m\ \text{sent}\}\,\mathsf{P}\{\boldsymbol{r}|(m\ \text{sent})\}\\
&= 1 - \sum_m \mathsf{P}\{m\ \text{sent}\}\int_{\boldsymbol{r}\in D_m} \mathsf{p}\,[\boldsymbol{r}|(\mathsf{m\ sent})]\,d\boldsymbol{r}\\
&= 1 - \sum_m \mathsf{P}\{m\ \text{sent}\}\int_{\boldsymbol{r}\in D_m} \prod_n \mathsf{p}\left[\dot{\mathsf{r}}_\mathsf{n}|\mathsf{m}\right]\ d\boldsymbol{r}\\
&= 1 - \sum_m \mathsf{P}\{m\ \text{sent}\}\int_{\boldsymbol{r}\in D_m} \prod_{n=1}^N \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}\exp\frac{-[\dot{r}_n - \mathsf{E}\dot{r}_n]^2}{2\sigma^2}\,d\boldsymbol{r}\\
&= 1 - \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}\right)^N \sum_m \mathsf{P}\{m\ \text{sent}\}\int_{\boldsymbol{r}\in D_m} \exp\frac{-1}{2\sigma^2}\sum_{n=1}^N[\dot{r}_n - \dot{s}_n(m)]^2\,d\boldsymbol{r}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

5.3 Frequency Shift Keying (FSK)

Theorem 5.3. *In an FSK modulation space, the optimal ML estimator of m is*

THM
$$\hat{m} = \arg\max_m \dot{r}_m.$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{m} &= \arg\max_m \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{r}(t)|s(t;m)\}\\
&= \arg\min_m \sum_{n=1}^N [\dot{r}_n - \dot{s}_n(m)]^2 && \text{by Theorem 4.6 (page 36)}\\
&= \arg\min_m \sum_{n=1}^N [\dot{r}_n^2 - 2\dot{r}_n\dot{s}_n(m) + \dot{s}_n^2(m)]\\
&= \arg\min_m \sum_{n=1}^N [-2\dot{r}_n\dot{s}_n(m) + \dot{s}_n^2(m)] && \dot{r}_n^2 \text{ is independent of } m\\
&= \arg\min_m \sum_{n=1}^N [-2\dot{r}_n a\bar{\delta}_{mn} + a^2\bar{\delta}_{mn}]\\
&= \arg\min_m [-2a\dot{r}_m + a^2]
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \arg\min_m [-\dot{r}_m] && a \text{ and } 2 \text{ independent of } m \\
&= \arg\max_m [\dot{r}_m]
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem 5.4. *If an FSK modulation space let*

$$
\begin{array}{rcl|lcl|l}
z_2 & \triangleq & \dot{r}_1(1) - \dot{r}_2(1) & z_2 > 0 & \Longrightarrow & \dot{r}_1 > \dot{r}_2 & m = 1 \\
z_3 & \triangleq & \dot{r}_1(1) - \dot{r}_3(1) & z_3 > 0 & \Longrightarrow & \dot{r}_1 > \dot{r}_3 & m = 1 \\
 & \vdots & & & & & \\
z_M & \triangleq & \dot{r}_1(1) - \dot{r}_M(1) & z_M > 0 & \Longrightarrow & \dot{r}_1 > \dot{r}_M & m = 1
\end{array}
$$

Then the ***probability of detection error*** *is*

THM $\mathsf{P}\{error\} = 1 - \dfrac{M-1}{M} \displaystyle\int_0^\infty \int_0^\infty \cdots \int_0^\infty \mathsf{p}(z_2, z_3, \ldots, z_M)\, dz_2 dz_3 \cdots dz_M$ *where*

$$
\mathsf{p}(z_2, z_3, \ldots, z_M) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{\frac{M-1}{2}} \sqrt{\det R}} \exp -\frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} z_2 - \dot{s} \\ z_3 - \dot{s} \\ \vdots \\ z_M - \dot{s} \end{bmatrix}^T R^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} z_2 - \dot{s} \\ z_3 - \dot{s} \\ \vdots \\ z_M - \dot{s} \end{bmatrix}
$$

and

$$
R = \begin{bmatrix}
\operatorname{cov}[z_2, z_2] & \operatorname{cov}[z_2, z_3] & \cdots & \operatorname{cov}[z_2, z_M] \\
\operatorname{cov}[z_3, z_2] & \operatorname{cov}[z_3, z_3] & \cdots & \operatorname{cov}[z_3, z_M] \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
\operatorname{cov}[z_M, z_2] & \operatorname{cov}[z_M, z_3] & \cdots & \operatorname{cov}[z_M, z_M]
\end{bmatrix}
= N_o \begin{bmatrix}
2 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\
1 & 2 & \cdots & 1 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
1 & 1 & \cdots & 2
\end{bmatrix}
$$

The inverse matrix R^{-1} is equivalent to (????)

$$
R^{-1} \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{1}{M N_o} \begin{bmatrix}
M-1 & -1 & \cdots & -1 \\
-1 & M-1 & \cdots & -1 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
-1 & -1 & \cdots & M-1
\end{bmatrix}
$$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E} z_k &= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{r}_{11} - \dot{r}_{1k}\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\dot{r}_{11} - \mathsf{E}\dot{r}_{1k} \\
&= \dot{s} - 0 \\
&= \dot{s}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{cov}\left[z_m, z_n\right] &= \mathsf{E}\left[z_m z_n\right] - [\mathsf{E} z_m][\mathsf{E} z_n] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[(\dot{r}_{11} - \dot{r}_{1m})(\dot{r}_{11} - \dot{r}_{1n})\right] - \dot{s}^2 \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{r}_{11}^2 - \dot{r}_{11}\dot{r}_{1n} - \dot{r}_{1m}\dot{r}_{11}\dot{r}_{1m}\dot{r}_{1n}\right] - \dot{s}^2 \\
&= [\operatorname{var} \dot{r}_{11} + (\mathsf{E}\dot{r}_{11})^2] - \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{r}_{11}\right]\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{r}_{1n}\right] - \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{r}_{1m}\right]\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{r}_{11}\right] + [\operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{r}_{1m}, \dot{r}_{1n}\right] + (\mathsf{E}\dot{r}_{1m})(\mathsf{E}\dot{r}_{1n})] - \dot{s}^2 \\
&= [\operatorname{var} \dot{r}_{11} + \dot{s}^2] - a \cdot 0 - 0 \cdot a + [\operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{r}_{1m}, \dot{r}_{1n}\right] + 0 \cdot 0] - \dot{s}^2 \\
&= \operatorname{var} \dot{r}_{11} + \operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{r}_{1m}, \dot{r}_{1n}\right] \\
&= N_o + \operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{r}_{1m}, \dot{r}_{1n}\right] \\
&= \begin{cases} 2N_o & \text{for } m = n \\ N_o & \text{for } m \neq n. \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
P\{\text{error}\} &= 1 - P\{\text{no error}\} \\
&= 1 - \sum_{m=1}^{M} P\{\text{m transmitted}) \wedge (\forall k \neq m, \dot{r}_m > \dot{r}_k\} \\
&= 1 - (M-1)P\{1 \text{ transmitted}) \wedge (\dot{r}_{11} > \dot{r}_{12}) \wedge (\dot{r}_{11} > \dot{r}_{13}) \wedge \cdots \wedge (\dot{r}_{11} > \dot{r}_{1M})\} \\
&= 1 - (M-1)P\{(\dot{r}_{11} - \dot{r}_{12} > 0) \wedge (\dot{r}_{11} - \dot{r}_{13} > 0) \wedge \cdots \wedge (\dot{r}_{11} - \dot{r}_{1M} > 0) | 1 \text{ transmitted})\} P\{1 \text{ transmitted})\} \\
&= 1 - \frac{M-1}{M} P\{(z_2 > 0) \wedge (z_3 > 0) \wedge \cdots \wedge (z_M > 0) | 1 \text{ transmitted})\} \\
&= 1 - \frac{M-1}{M} \int_0^\infty \int_0^\infty \cdots \int_0^\infty \mathsf{p}(z_2, z_3, \ldots, z_M)\, dz_2 dz_3 \cdots dz_M.
\end{aligned}$$

✏

5.4 Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (QAM)

5.4.1 Receiver statistics

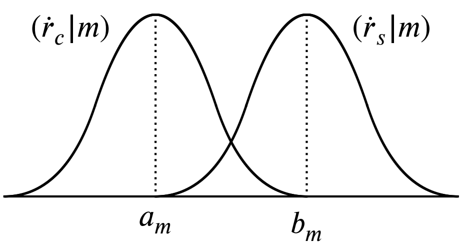


Figure 5.2: Distributions of QAM components

Theorem 5.5. *Let* $(V, \langle\cdot\,|\,\cdot\rangle$ *be a QAM modulation space such that*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{r}(t) &= \mathsf{s}(t;m) + \mathsf{n}(t) \\
\dot{r}_c &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t) \,|\, \psi_c(t) \rangle \\
\dot{r}_s &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t) \,|\, \psi_s(t) \rangle .
\end{aligned}$$

Then $(\dot{r}_c|m)$ *and* $(\dot{r}_s|m)$ *are* ***independent*** *and have* ***marginal distributions***

$$\begin{aligned}
(\dot{r}_c|m) &\sim \mathsf{N}\left(a_m, \sigma^2\right) = \mathsf{N}\left(r_m \cos\theta_m, \sigma^2\right) \\
(\dot{r}_s|m) &\sim \mathsf{N}\left(b_m, \sigma^2\right) = \mathsf{N}\left(r_m \sin\theta_m, \sigma^2\right).
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF: See Theorem 4.5 (page 36) page 36. ✏

5.4.2 Detection

Theorem 5.6. *Let* $(V, \langle\cdot\,|\,\cdot\rangle, S)$ *be a QAM modulation space with*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{r}(t) &= \mathsf{s}(t;m) + \mathsf{n}(t) \\
\dot{r}_c &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t)\,|\,\psi_c(t)\rangle \\
\dot{r}_s &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t)\,|\,\psi_s(t)\rangle\,.
\end{aligned}$$

Then $\{\dot{r}_c, \dot{r}_s\}$ *are sufficient statistics for optimal ML detection and the optimal ML estimate of* m *is*

$$\hat{u}_{\mathsf{ml}}[m] = \arg\min_m \left[(\dot{r}_c - a_m)^2 + (\dot{r}_s - b_m)^2\right].$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{u}_{\mathsf{ml}}[m] &= \arg\max_m \mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{r}(t)|s(t;m)\right\} && \text{by Definition C.1 (page 162)} \\
&= \arg\min_m \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{r}_n - \dot{s}_n(m)]^2 && \text{by Theorem 4.6 (page 36)} \\
&= \arg\min_m \left[(\dot{r}_c - a_m)^2 + (\dot{r}_s - b_m)^2\right]
\end{aligned}$$

✏

5.4.3 Probability of error

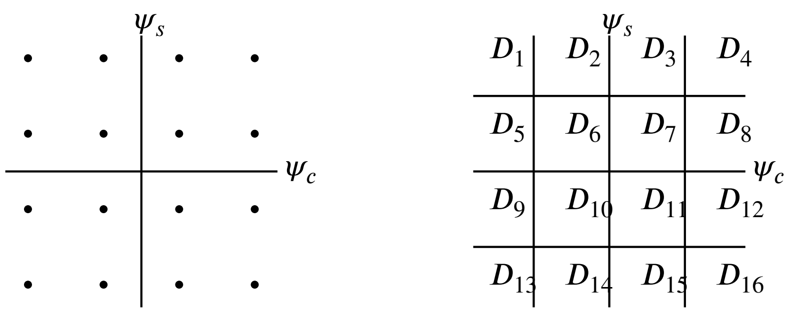


Figure 5.3: QAM-16 cosstellation and decision regions

Theorem 5.7. *In a QAM-16 constellation as shown in Figure 5.3 (page 52), the probability of error is*

$$\mathsf{P}\left\{error\right\} = \frac{9}{4} Q^2 \left(\frac{\dot{s}_{21} - \dot{s}_{11}}{2N_o}\right).$$

✎PROOF: Let

$$d \triangleq \dot{s}_{21} - \dot{s}_{11}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{P}\{\text{error}\} &= \sum_{m=1}^{M} \mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t;m)\text{ transmitted }] \wedge [(\dot{r}_1,\dot{r}_2) \notin D_m]\right\} \\
&= \sum_{m=1}^{M} \mathsf{P}\left\{[(\dot{r}_1,\dot{r}_2) \notin D_m] | [s(t;m)\text{ transmitted }]\right\} \mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t;m)\text{ transmitted }]\right\} \\
&= \frac{1}{M}\sum_{m=1}^{M} \mathsf{P}\left\{[(\dot{r}_1,\dot{r}_2) \notin D_m] | [s(t;m)\text{ transmitted }]\right\} \\
&= \frac{1}{M}\left[4\mathsf{P}\left\{(\dot{r}_1,\dot{r}_2) \notin D_1 | s_1(t)\right\} + 8\mathsf{P}\left\{(\dot{r}_1,\dot{r}_2) \notin D_2 | s_2(t)\right\} + 4\mathsf{P}\left\{(\dot{r}_1,\dot{r}_2) \notin D_6 | s_6(t)\right\}\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{M}\left[4\int\int_{(x,y)\notin D_1} \mathsf{p}_{xy|1}(x,y)\,\mathsf{d}x\,\mathsf{d}y + 8\int\int_{(x,y)\notin D_2} \mathsf{p}_{xy|2}(x,y)\,\mathsf{d}x\,\mathsf{d}y + \right. \\
&\left. 4\int\int_{(x,y)\notin D_6} \mathsf{p}_{xy|6}(x,y)\,\mathsf{d}x\,\mathsf{d}y\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{M}\left[4\int\int_{(x,y)\notin D_1} \mathsf{p}_{x|1}(x)\mathsf{p}_{y|1}(y)\,\mathsf{d}x\,\mathsf{d}y + 8\int\int_{(x,y)\notin D_2} \mathsf{p}_{x|2}(x)\mathsf{p}_{y|2}(y)\,\mathsf{d}x\,\mathsf{d}y + \right. \\
&\left. 4\int\int_{(x,y)\notin D_6} \mathsf{p}_{x|6}(x)\mathsf{p}_{y|6}(y)\,\mathsf{d}x\,\mathsf{d}y\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{M}\left[4Q\left(\frac{d}{2N_o}\right)Q\left(\frac{d}{2N_o}\right) + 8Q\left(\frac{d}{2N_o}\right)2Q\left(\frac{d}{2N_o}\right) + 4\cdot 2Q\left(\frac{d}{2N_o}\right)2Q\left(\frac{d}{2N_o}\right)\right] \\
&= \frac{9}{4}Q^2\left(\frac{d}{2N_o}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

⇒

5.5 Phase Shift Keying (PSK)

5.5.1 Receiver statistics

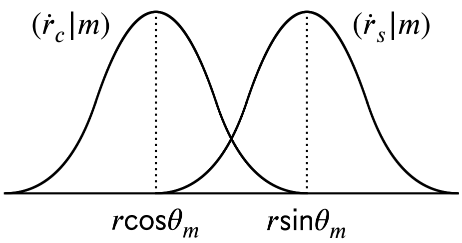


Figure 5.4: Distributions of PSK components

Theorem 5.8. *Let*

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{r}_c &\triangleq \langle \mathrm{r}(t) \mid \psi_c(t)\rangle \\
\dot{r}_s &\triangleq \langle \mathrm{r}(t) \mid \psi_s(t)\rangle \\
\theta_m &\triangleq \operatorname{atan}\left[\frac{\dot{r}_s(m)}{\dot{r}_c(m)}\right].
\end{aligned}$$

The statistics $(\dot{r}_c|m)$ *and* $(\dot{r}_s|m)$ *are* ***independent*** *with marginal distributions*

$$\begin{aligned}
(\dot{r}_c|m) &\sim \mathrm{N}\left(r\cos\theta_m, \sigma^2\right) \\
(\dot{r}_s|m) &\sim \mathrm{N}\left(r\sin\theta_m, \sigma^2\right) \\
\mathrm{p}_{\theta_m}(\theta|m) &= \int_0^\infty x\mathrm{p}_{\dot{r}_c}(x|m)\mathrm{p}_{\dot{r}_s}(x\tan\theta|m)dx.
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

Indepence and marginal distributions of $\dot{r}_1(m)$ and $\dot{r}_2(m)$ follow directly from Theorem 4.5 (page 36) (page 36).

Let $X \triangleq \dot{r}_1(m)$, $Y \triangleq \dot{r}_2(m)$ and $\Theta \triangleq \theta_m$. Then[1]

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{p}_\theta(\theta)d\theta &\triangleq \mathrm{P}\{\theta < \Theta \le \theta + d\theta\} \\
&= \mathrm{P}\left\{\theta < \operatorname{atan}\frac{Y}{X} \le \theta + d\theta\right\} \\
&= \mathrm{P}\left\{\tan(\theta) < \frac{Y}{X} \le \tan(\theta + d\theta)\right\} \\
&= \mathrm{P}\left\{\tan(\theta) < \frac{Y}{X} \le \tan\theta + (1+\tan^2\theta)\,\mathrm{d}\theta\right\} \\
&= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{P}\left\{\left[\tan\theta < \frac{Y}{X} \le \tan\theta + (1+\tan^2\theta)\,\mathrm{d}\theta\right] \wedge \left[(x < X \le x + \mathrm{d}x)\right]\right\} \\
&= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{P}\left\{\tan\theta < \frac{Y}{x} \le \tan\theta + (1+\tan^2\theta)\,\mathrm{d}\theta \;\middle|\; x < X \le x + dx\right\} \mathrm{P}\{x < X \le x + \mathrm{d}x\} \\
&= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{P}\left\{x\tan\theta < Y \le x\tan\theta + x(1+\tan^2\theta)\,\mathrm{d}\theta) \;\middle|\; X = x\right\} \mathrm{p}_\mathrm{x}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \int_0^\infty [\mathrm{p}_\mathrm{Y}(x\tan\theta)x(1+\tan^2\theta)]\mathrm{p}_\mathrm{x}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}\theta \\
&= (1+\tan^2\theta)\int_0^\infty x\mathrm{p}_\mathrm{Y}(x\tan\theta)\mathrm{p}_\mathrm{x}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}\theta \\
\implies & \\
\mathrm{p}_\theta(\theta)d\theta &= (1+\tan^2\theta)\int_0^\infty x\mathrm{p}_\mathrm{Y}(x\tan\theta)\mathrm{p}_\mathrm{x}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[1] A similar example is in Papoulis (1991), page 138

5.5.2 Detection

Theorem 5.9. *Let* $(V, \langle \cdot \mid \cdot \rangle, S)$ *be a PSK modulation space with*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{r}(t) &= \mathsf{s}(t;m) + \mathsf{n}(t) \\ \dot{r}_c &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t) \mid \psi_c(t) \rangle \\ \dot{r}_s &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t) \mid \psi_s(t) \rangle . \end{aligned}$$

Then $\{\dot{r}_c, \dot{r}_s\}$ *are sufficient statistics for optimal ML detection and the optimal ML estimate of* m *is*

$$\hat{u}_{\mathsf{ml}}[m] = \arg\min_m \left[(\dot{r}_1 - r\cos\theta_m)^2 + (\dot{r}_2 - r\sin\theta_m)^2 \right].$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u}_{\mathsf{ml}}[m] &= \arg\max_m \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{r}(t) | s(t;m)\} && \text{by Definition C.1 (page 162)} \\ &= \arg\min_m \sum_{n=1}^{N} [\dot{r}_n - \dot{s}_n(m)]^2 && \text{by Theorem 4.6 (page 36)} \\ &= \arg\min_m \left[(\dot{r}_1 - r\cos\theta_m)^2 + (\dot{r}_2 - r\sin\theta_m)^2 \right]. \end{aligned}$$

✎

5.5.3 Probability of error

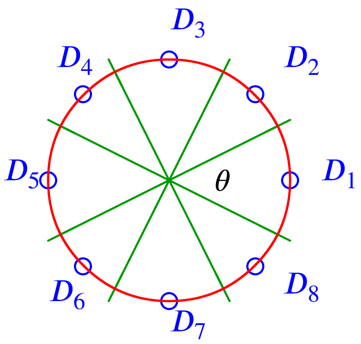


Figure 5.5: PSK-8 Decision regions

Theorem 5.10. *The probability of error using PSK modulation is*

$$\mathsf{P}\{error\} = M \left[1 - \int_{\frac{2\pi}{M}\left(m-\frac{3}{2}\right)}^{\frac{2\pi}{M}\left(m-\frac{1}{2}\right)} \mathsf{p}_{\theta_1}(\theta)\, d\theta \right].$$

✎PROOF: See Figure 5.5 (page 55).

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{P}\{\text{error}\} &= \sum_{m=1}^{M} \mathsf{P}\left\{\text{error}|s(t;m) \text{ was transmitted}\right\} \\
&= M\,\mathsf{P}\left\{\text{error}|s_1(t) \text{ was transmitted}\right\} \\
&= M\left[1 - \int_{\frac{2\pi}{M}\left(m-\frac{3}{2}\right)}^{\frac{2\pi}{M}\left(m-\frac{1}{2}\right)} \mathsf{p}_{\theta_1}(\theta)\, d\theta\right].
\end{aligned}$$

⇰

5.6 Pulse Amplitude Modulation (PAM)

5.6.1 Receiver statistics

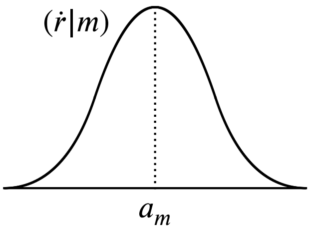


Figure 5.6: Distribution of PAM component

Theorem 5.11. *Let* $(V, \langle\cdot\,|\,\cdot\rangle$ *be a PAM modulation space such that*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{r}(t) &= \mathsf{s}(t;m) + \mathsf{n}(t) \\
\dot{r}_c &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t)\,|\,\psi_c(t)\rangle \\
\dot{r}_s &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t)\,|\,\psi_s(t)\rangle\,.
\end{aligned}$$

Then $(\dot{r}|m)$ *has* ***distribution***

$$\dot{r}(m) \sim \mathsf{N}\left(a_m, \sigma^2\right).$$

✎PROOF: This follows directly from Theorem 4.5 (page 36) (page 36). ⇰

5.6.2 Detection

Theorem 5.12. *Let* $(V, \langle\cdot\,|\,\cdot\rangle, S)$ *be a PAM modulation space with*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{r}(t) &= \mathsf{s}(t;m) + \mathsf{n}(t) \\
\dot{r} &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{r}(t)\,|\,\psi(t)\rangle\,.
\end{aligned}$$

Then $\dot{r}$ *is a sufficient statistic for the optimal ML detection of* m *and the optimal ML estimate of* m *is*

$$\hat{u}_{\mathsf{ml}}[m] = \arg\min_m |\dot{r} - a_m|.$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{u}_{\mathsf{ml}}[m] &= \arg\max_m \mathsf{P}\left\{\mathsf{r}(t)|a_m\right\} && \text{by Definition C.1 (page 162)}\\
&= \arg\min_m \sum_{n=1}^{N}[\dot{r}_n - \dot{s}_n(m)]^2 && \text{by Theorem 4.6 (page 36)}\\
&= \arg\min_m [\dot{r} - \dot{s}(m)]^2\\
&= \arg\min_m |\dot{r} - \dot{s}(m)|
\end{aligned}$$

✏

5.6.3 Probability of error

Theorem 5.13. *The probability of detection error in a PAM modulation space is*

$$\mathsf{P}\{error\} = 2\frac{M-1}{M}\mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{a_2-a_1}{2\sqrt{N_o}}\right].$$

✎PROOF: Let $d \triangleq a_2 - a_1$ and $\sigma \triangleq \sqrt{\operatorname{var}\dot{r}} = \sqrt{N_o}$. Also, let the decision regions D_m be as illustrated in Figure 5.7 (page 57). Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{P}\{error\} &= \sum_{m=1}^{M}\mathsf{P}\left\{s(t;m)\text{ sent } \wedge r \notin D_m\right\}\\
&= \sum_{m=1}^{M}\mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{r} \notin D_m | \mathsf{s}(t;m)\text{ sent }\right\}\mathsf{P}\left\{s(t;m)\text{ sent }\right\}\\
&= \sum_{m=1}^{M}\mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{r}_m \notin D_m\right\}\frac{1}{M}\\
&= \frac{1}{M}\left(\mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{d}{2\sigma}\right] + 2\mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{d}{2\sigma}\right] + \ldots 2\mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{d}{2\sigma}\right] + \mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{d}{2\sigma}\right]\right)\\
&= 2\frac{M-1}{M}\mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{d}{2\sigma}\right]\\
&= 2\frac{M-1}{M}\mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{\dot{s}_2-\dot{s}_1}{2\sqrt{N_o}}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

✏

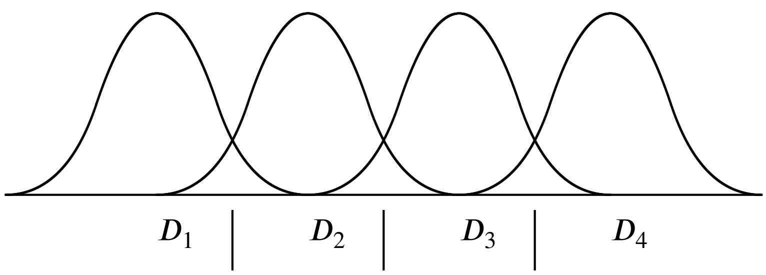


Figure 5.7: 4-ary PAM in AWGN channel

CHAPTER 6

BANDLIMITED CHANNEL (ISI)

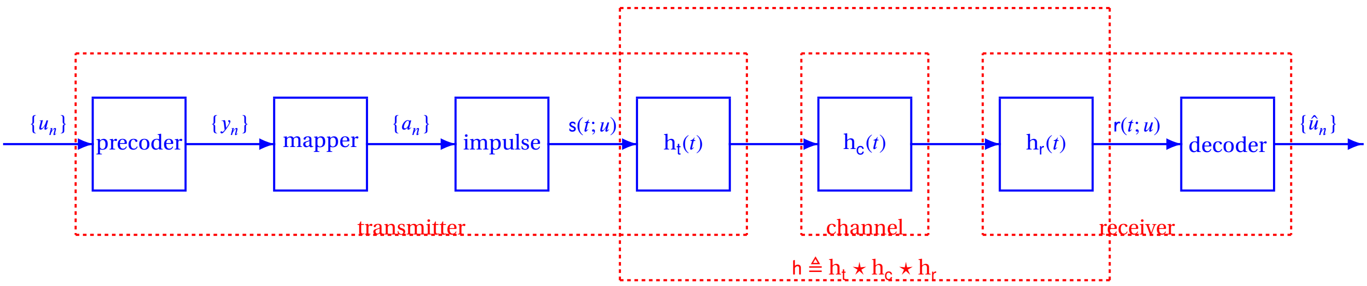


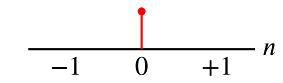
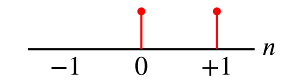
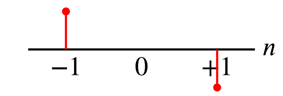
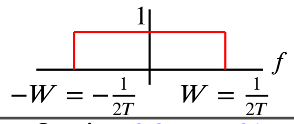
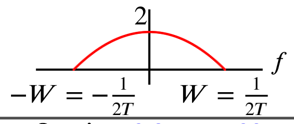
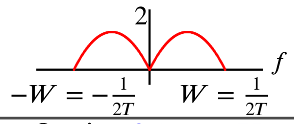
Figure 6.1: ISI system model

System disturbances. There are two fundamental disturbances in any communication system which increase the probability of communication error:

1. noise
2. intersymbol interference (ISI)

Noise is produced by a number of sources; one of them being *thermal noise* and therefore can never be eliminated in any system which operates above −273° C (absolute zero). ISI is produced as a result of band-limited communication channels. Unlike noise, it is possible to completely eliminate ISI by the proper selection of the symbol waveform used to carry information through the channel.

This chapter describes the cause of ISI in a communication system and discusses techniques of designing signaling waveforms with no ISI. Three solutions are presented and are summarized in the following table:

zero ISI solution	duobinary solution	modified duobinary solution
$\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} 1 & : & n=0 \\ 0 & : & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} 1 & : & n=0,1 \\ 0 & : & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	$\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} 1 & : & n=-1 \\ -1 & : & n=+1 \\ 0 & : & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$
		
$\Updownarrow$	$\Updownarrow$	$\Updownarrow$
$\frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) = 1$	$\frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) = 2e^{-i\pi fT}\cos(\pi fT)$	$\frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) = i2\sin(2\pi fT)$
		
Section 6.2 page 61	Section 6.3 page 68	Section 6.4 page 75

6.1 Description of ISI

The channel model is illustrated in Figure 6.1 (page 59). The signal received at the decoder is

$$\mathsf{r}(t;u) = \sum_n a_n \mathsf{h}(t-nT).$$

We arbitrarily scale $\mathsf{h}(t)$ such that

$$\mathsf{h}(0) = 1.$$

If this signal is sampled at intervals T, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{r}(nT) &= \mathsf{r}(t)|_{t=nT} \\
&= \left.\sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(t-mT)\right|_{t=nT} \\
&= \sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(nT-mT) \\
&= a_n\mathsf{h}(0) + \sum_{m\neq n} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT-mT) \\
&= \underbrace{a_n}_{\text{desired}} + \underbrace{\sum_{m\neq n} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT-mT)}_{\text{ISI (not wanted)}}
\end{aligned}$$

At the sampling intervals, we only want a_n, not the other terms. These other terms are referred to as *Intersymbol Interference* (ISI).

Definition 6.1. ***Intersymbol interference*** *(ISI) is a communication system characteristic such that a received signal sample $\mathsf{r}(nT)$ is a function of one or more information values $a_m, m \neq n$. If $\mathsf{r}(nT)$ is a function of a_n alone, then we say the system has **zero ISI**.*

If $\mathsf{h}(t)$ is properly designed, the communication system will have zero ISI.

6.2 Zero-ISI solution

6.2.1 Constraints

Previously we stated that for zero ISI,

$$\underbrace{a_n}_{\text{desired}} + \underbrace{\sum_{m\neq n} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT)}_{\text{ISI (not wanted)}}$$

This equation is satisfied if and only if

$$\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for} \quad n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

Also, the channel imposes a band-width constraint W. These considerations can be combined into two fundamental constraints on the signaling pulse $\mathsf{h}(t)$:

$$\begin{array}{llcl} ① & \textbf{sampling constraint}: & \mathsf{h}(nT) & = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for} \quad n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad n \neq 0 \end{cases} \\ ② & \textbf{bandwidth constraint}: & [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}](f) & = 0 \text{ for } |f| \geq W. \end{array}$$

These two constraints are in conflict with each other. The sampling constraint is quite easy to satisfy by designing h with support (region on t where $\mathsf{h}(t) \neq 0$) only within $[0, T)$. However, giving h small support makes $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}$ have large bandwidth, violating the bandwidth constraint. However, Theorem 6.1 (next) gives a criterion which allows both constraints to be satisfied simultaneously.

Theorem 6.1 (Partition of unity criterion). [1] *Let $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ be the Fourier Transform of a function $\mathsf{h}(t)$ and $T \in \mathbb{R}$ a constant. Then*

THM
$$\left[\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} 1 & : \quad n = 0 \\ 0 & : \quad n \neq 0 \end{cases}\right] \iff \boxed{\frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) = 1.}$$

✎PROOF: This theorem is easily proven using the *Inverse Poisson's Summation Formula* (*IPSF*) (Theorem H.3 page 214) which states

$$\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) = T\sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT}$$

1. Prove "only if" case ($\Longrightarrow$):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) &= \sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT} && \text{by IPSF} \\ &= \mathsf{h}(0) + \sum_{n\neq 0} \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT} \\ &= 1 && \text{by left hypothesis} \end{aligned}$$

[1] Proakis (2001), page 557

2. Prove "if" case ($\Longleftarrow$):

$$\begin{aligned}
1 &= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT} && \text{by IPSF}\\
&= \mathsf{h}(0) + \sum_{n\neq 0}\mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT}\\
&= \mathsf{h}(0) + \sum_{n\neq 0}\mathsf{h}(nT)\cos(2\pi f nT) - i\sum_{n\neq 0}\mathsf{h}(nT)\sin(2\pi f nT)\\
\implies \mathsf{h}(nT) &= \begin{cases} 1 & : \quad n=0\\ 0 & : \quad n\neq 0\end{cases} && \text{because "1" is real for all } f
\end{aligned}$$

✑

6.2.2 Signaling rate limits

Definition 6.2. [2] *The* ***characteristic function*** $\chi_A : X \to \{0,1\}$ *of set* A *is defined as*

DEF
$$\chi_A(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \textit{for} \quad x \in A \subseteq X\\ 0 & \textit{for} \quad x \notin A \subseteq X\end{cases}$$

Next are two complimentary theorems; both of which are closely related to the partition of unity criterion:

1. Nyquist signaling theorem (Theorem 6.2 (page 62)) A signal may be transmitted with zero-ISI if the signaling rate is less than or equal to $2W$.
2. Shannon sampling theorem (Theorem 6.3 (page 63)) Perfect reconstruction of a sampled signal is possible if the sampling rate is greater than or equal to $2W$.

Theorem 6.2 (Nyquist signaling theorem)**.** [3] *Let* $s(t)$ *be a signal of the form*

$$s(t) = \sum_n a_n \mathsf{h}(t-nT_1)$$

and with bandwidth

$$[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}s](f) = 0 \textit{ for } |f| \geq W.$$

Then there exists $\mathsf{h}(t)$ *such that if*

$$\frac{1}{T_1} \leq 2W$$

[2] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998), page 126
[3] Proakis (2001), page 13

then

$$s(t) = \sum_n s(nT_1)\mathsf{h}(t - nT_1).$$

Furthermore, if

$$\frac{1}{T_1} = 2W$$

then

$$s(t) = \sum_n s(nT_1) \frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{T_1}(t - nT_1)\right]}{\frac{\pi}{T_1}(t - nT_1)}.$$

✎PROOF: The upper signaling rate bound (equality) is proven by the partition of unity criterion. Given a signaling rate $1/T$, the pulse shape with the smallest bandwidth that forms a partition of unity in the frequency domain is the sync function in the time domain, which is a rectangular pulse in frequency domain given by

$$\frac{1}{2W}\chi_{[-W,+W]}(f).$$

✏

Theorem 6.3 (Shannon sampling theorem). [4] *Let $r(t)$ be a signal with bandwidth*

$$[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}r](f) = 0 \text{ for } |f| \geq W$$

and sampled at time intervals T_2.

Then there exists $\mathsf{h}(t)$ such that if

$$\frac{1}{T_2} \geq 2W$$

then

$$s(t) = \sum_n s(nT_2)\mathsf{h}(t - nT_2).$$

Furthermore, if

$$\frac{1}{T_2} = 2W$$

then

$$s(t) = \sum_n s(nT_2) \frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{T_2}(t - nT_2)\right]}{\frac{\pi}{T_2}(t - nT_2)}.$$

6.2.3 Zero-ISI system impulse responses

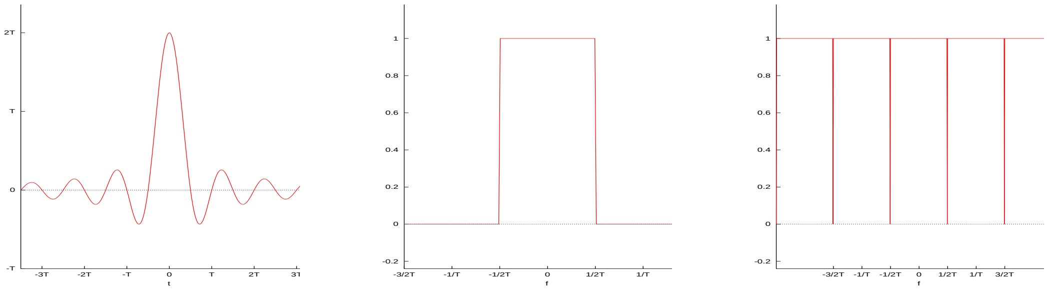
Using Partition of Unity Theorem 6.1, we can design ISI waveforms in the frequency domain and thus easily satisfy both the constraints given in Section 6.2.

[4] Proakis (2001), page 13

Nyquist Rate zero-ISI waveform

The maximum signaling rate is $1/T = 2W$ (Nyquist Signaling Theorem). If we signal at this maximum rate, there is only one waveform $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}$ which satisfies the partition of unity condition: $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f) = \chi_{[-1/2T,1/2T)}(f)$. In the time domain this is the sinc function

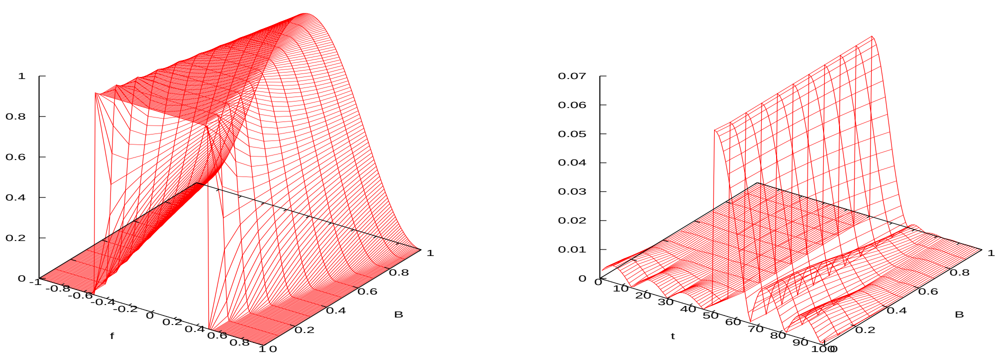
$$\mathsf{h}(t) = \frac{1}{T}\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{T}t\right)}{\frac{\pi}{T}t}$$



$\mathsf{h}(t) = \frac{1}{T}\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{T}t\right)}{\frac{\pi}{T}t}$ $\quad\quad$ $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f) = \chi_{[-1/2T,1/2T)}(f)$ $\quad\quad$ $\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f - \frac{n}{T}\right)$

Figure 6.2: Nyquist rate zero-ISI signaling waveform

Raised cosine zero-ISI waveforms



$\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ $\quad\quad$ $\mathsf{h}(t)$

Figure 6.3: Raised cosine for various roll-off factors β

The **Raised Cosine** is the Fourier Transform of one of the most widely used signaling waveforms.[5]

[5]Note: The raised cosine is similar to the *Meyer wavelet*. ref: (Vidakovic, 1999, page 65)

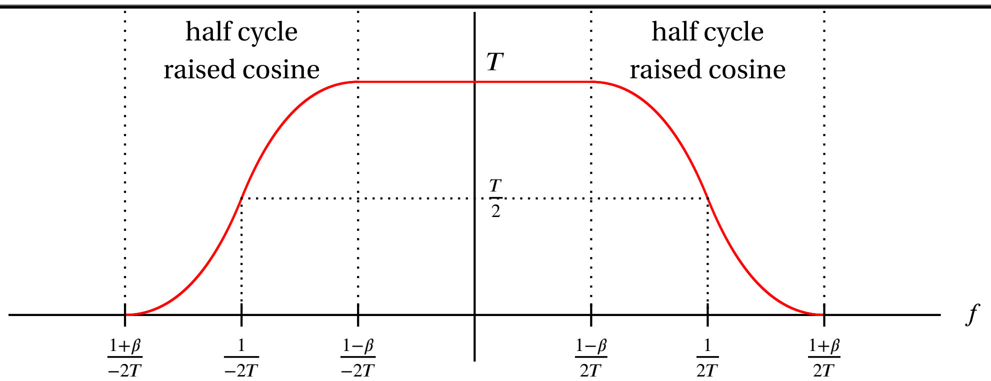


Figure 6.4: Raised cosine

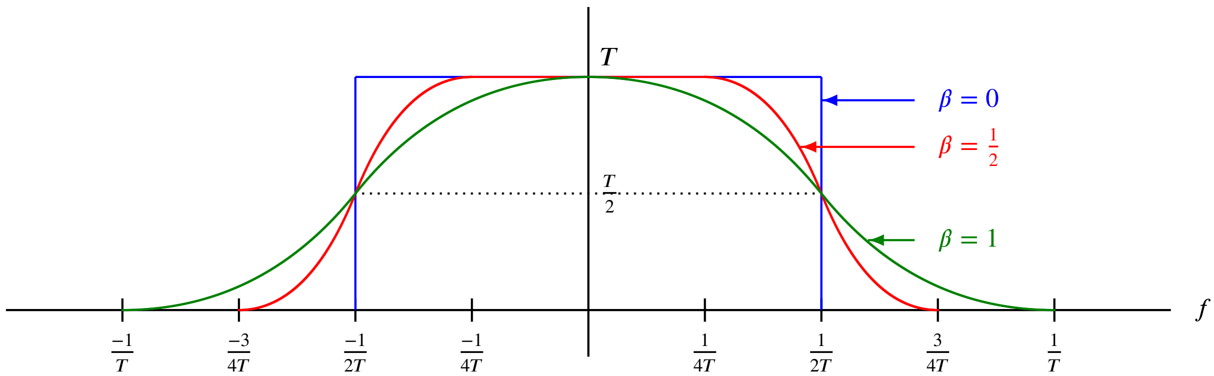


Figure 6.5: Raised cosine for various β values

In the frequency domain it has the form[6]

$$\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f) = \begin{cases} T & : \quad 0 \le |f| \le \frac{1-\beta}{2T} \\ \frac{T}{2}\left[1 + \cos\left(\frac{\pi T}{\beta}\left[|f| - \frac{1-\beta}{2T}\right]\right)\right] & : \quad \frac{1-\beta}{2T} \le |f| \le \frac{1+\beta}{2T} \\ 0 & : \quad |f| > \frac{1+\beta}{2T} \end{cases}$$

The value $\beta \in [0, 1]$ is the *roll-off factor*. The raised cosine for various roll-off factors β is illustrated in Figure 6.3.

Shifted versions of $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ sum to unity because the cosine regions sum to unity:

$$\frac{1}{2}[1 + \cos(\theta)] + \frac{1}{2}[1 + \cos(\theta + \pi)] \quad = \quad \frac{1}{2}[1 + \cos(\theta)] + \frac{1}{2}[1 - \cos(\theta)] = 1$$

The inverse Fourier transform of the raised cosine filter is illustrated in Figure 6.3. These waveforms are the signaling waveforms h. Notice how they becoming smoother in frequency but wider in time with increasing β;

B-Spline zero-ISI waveforms

B-Splines are formed by repeatedly convolving the χ function with itself.

[6] Proakis (2001), page 560

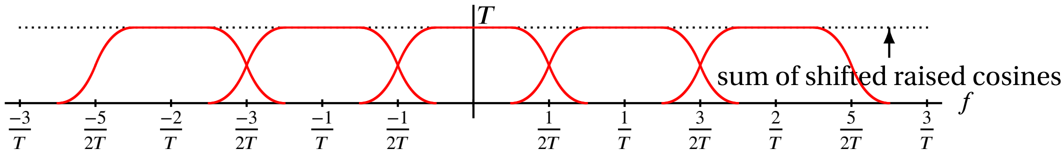


Figure 6.6: Sum of shifted raised cosines

Definition 6.3. *A* ***B-spline*** $\beta_m(f)$ *of order* m *is the characteristic function* $\theta = \chi(f)_{[-1/2T,1/2T)}$ *convolved with itself* m *times. That is, if* $*$ *is the convolution operation, then*

$$
\begin{aligned}
\beta_0 &\triangleq \theta \\
\beta_1 &\triangleq \theta * \theta && = \beta_0 * \theta \\
\beta_2 &\triangleq \theta * \theta * \theta && = \beta_1 * \theta \\
\beta_3 &\triangleq \theta * \theta * \theta * \theta && = \beta_2 * \theta \\
&\vdots
\end{aligned}
$$

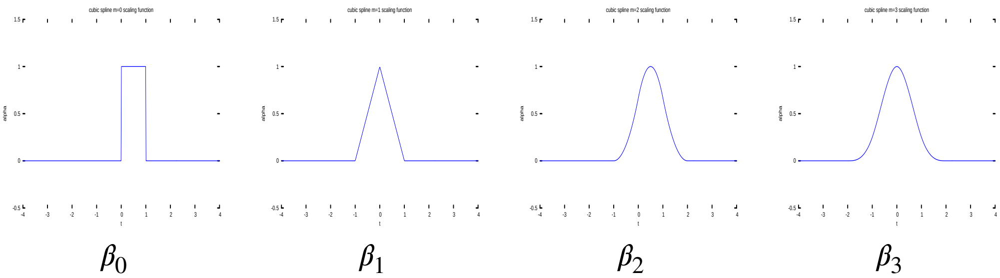


Figure 6.7: B-Splines of order 0,1,2,3

All B-Splines form a partition of unity.[7] and their inverse Fourier Transforms may therefore be used as signaling waveforms $\mathsf{h}(t)$.

Theorem 6.4. *All B-Splines* β_m *of order* $m \in \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ *form a partition of unity.*

✎PROOF:

1. A B-Spline $\tilde{\beta}_m$ of order m is the χ function convolved with itself m times.
2. This implies that the inverse Fourier Transform β_m is

$$\beta_m(t) = \left[\frac{2}{T}\frac{\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{T}t\right)}{\frac{2\pi}{T}t}\right]^{m+1}$$

3. This equation satisfies the Partition of Unity criterion (Theorem 6.1).

$$\beta_m(nT) = \left[\frac{2}{T}\frac{\sin(2\pi n)}{2\pi n}\right]^{m+1} = \begin{cases} (2/T)^m & : \quad n = 0 \\ 0 & : \quad n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

4. Therefore, β_m forms a partition of unity for all $m = 0, 1, 2, \dots$.

[7] Goswami and Chan (1999), page 46

Because β_m form a partition of unity, we can use their inverse Fourier transforms as signaling waveforms h_m. That is, if $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}_m = \beta_m$ then

$$\mathsf{h}_m \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{h}}_m \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\beta_m = \left[\frac{2}{T}\frac{\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{T}t\right)}{\frac{2\pi}{T}t}\right]^{m+1}$$

are valid signaling waveforms.

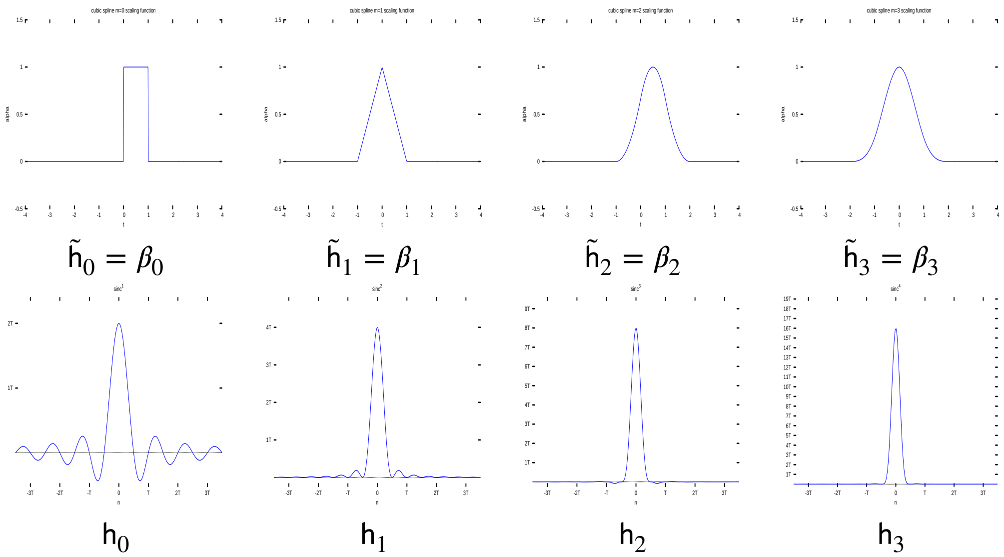


Figure 6.8: B-Splines signaling waveforms in frequency and time domains

Wavelet scaling function zero-ISI waveforms

Wavelets consists of two families of functions: the *scaling functions* $\phi_{m,n}(t)$ and the *wavelet functions* $\psi_{m,n}(t)$. Each member of the family may be scaled by 2^m and translated by n. There are many scaling and wavelet functions available. Most scaling functions ϕ satisfy the partition of unity criterion[8]. The inverse Fourier Transform of scaling functions may therefore be used as signaling waveforms.

One advantage of using wavelet zero-ISI waveforms is that a *fast wavelet transform* (FWT) is available requiring only order $\log n$ operations, even faster than the fast fourier transform's $n \log n$ operations. The availability of the FWT in addition to the wavelet's natural signal analysis capability, may allow the system to make further use of the incoming waveforms for channel estimation, channel equalization, and symbol detection.

[8] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), page 8 ⟨???⟩

6.3 Duobinary ISI solution

6.3.1 Constraints

The received waveform $r(t)$ is of the form

$$r(t) = \sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(t - mT).$$

At sampling instants $t = nT$, $r(t)$ has the form

$$\begin{aligned}
r(nT) &= r(t)|_{t=nT} \\
&= \sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT) \\
&= a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT)\big|_{m=n} + a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT)\big|_{m=n-1} + \sum_{m\neq n,n-1} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT) \\
&= a_n \mathsf{h}(nT - nT) + a_{n-1}\mathsf{h}(nT - (n-1)T) + \sum_{m\neq n,n-1} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT) \\
&= a_n \mathsf{h}(0) + a_{n-1}\mathsf{h}(T) + \sum_{m\neq n,n-1} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT)
\end{aligned}$$

We place the following constraints on the signaling waveform $\mathsf{h}(t)$:

① **sampling constraint:** $\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = 0, 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

② **bandwidth constraint:** $[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}](f) = 0 \text{ for } |f| \geq W.$

These two constraints are in conflict with each other. However, they are both satisfied if the criterion in Theorem 6.5 (page 68) is met.

6.3.2 Criterion

Theorem 6.5. *Let $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ be the Fourier Transform of a function $\mathsf{h}(t)$ and $T \in \mathbb{R}$ a constant. Then*

THM

$$\left[\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} 1 & : \; n = 0, 1 \\ 0 & : \; \textit{otherwise} \end{cases}\right] \iff \left[\frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) = 2e^{-i\pi f T}\cos(\pi f T).\right]$$

✎PROOF: This theorem is easily proven using the *Inverse Poisson's Summation Formula*(IPSF) (Theorem H.3 page 214) which states

$$\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) = T\sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT}$$

1. Prove "only if" case ($\Longrightarrow$):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) &= T \sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT) e^{-i2\pi f n T} && \text{by IPSF}\\
&= T\left[1 + e^{-i2\pi f T}\right] && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= 2T e^{-i\pi f T}\left(\frac{1}{2}e^{i\pi f T} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-i\pi f T}\right)\\
&= 2T e^{-i\pi f T}\cos(\pi f T) && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas} Corollary F.2 page 183}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Prove "if" case ($\Longleftarrow$):

$$\begin{aligned}
2e^{-i\pi f T}\cos(\pi f T) &= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \frac{1}{T} T \sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT) e^{-i2\pi f n T} && \text{by IPSF}\\
&= 2e^{-i\pi f T}\sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)\frac{1}{2}e^{i\pi f T} e^{-i2\pi f n T}\\
&= 2e^{-i\pi f T}\sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)\frac{1}{2}e^{-i\pi f T(2n-1)}\\
&= 2e^{-i\pi f T}\left[\mathsf{h}(0)\frac{1}{2}e^{i\pi f T} + \mathsf{h}(T)\frac{1}{2}e^{-i\pi f T} + \sum_{n\neq 0,1}\mathsf{h}(nT)\frac{1}{2}e^{-i\pi f T(2n-1)}\right]\\
&\Longrightarrow\\
\mathsf{h}(nT) &= \begin{cases} 1 & : \quad n = 0, 1\\ 0 & : \quad \text{otherwise}\end{cases} && \text{because } \cos(\pi f T) \text{ has no i}
\end{aligned}$$

✎

6.3.3 Signaling waveform

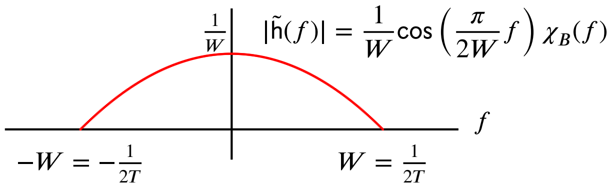


Figure 6.9: Duobinary waveform $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ at Nyquist rate

The next theorem specifies a signaling waveform which satisfies the criterion at the Nyquist rate

$$W = \frac{1}{2T}.$$

Unlike the zero-ISI Nyquist rate signaling waveform (Figure 6.2 (page 64)), the duobinary Nyquist rate signaling waveform (Figure 6.9 (page 69)) can be easily approximated in real systems.

Theorem 6.6. *The waveform* $\mathsf{h}(t)$ *with Fourier transform* $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ *(see Figure 6.9 (page 69)) satisfies the criterion stated in Theorem 6.5 (page 68), where*

$$\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f) = \begin{cases} 2Te^{-i\pi Tf}\cos(\pi Tf) & : \frac{-1}{2T} \le f < \frac{1}{2T} \\ 0 & : otherwise \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathsf{h}(t) &= \frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{T}t\right]}{\frac{\pi}{T}t} + \frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)\right]}{\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)} \\ &\triangleq \operatorname{sinc}\frac{\pi}{T}t + \operatorname{sinc}\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF: Let $B = [-1/2T, +1/2T)$ such that

$$\chi_B(f) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & : f \in [-1/2T, +1/2T) \\ 0 & : \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then First, observe that $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ satisfies the criterion of Theorem 6.5 (page 68):

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) &= \sum_n 2Te^{-i\pi T\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right)}\cos\left[\pi T(f+\frac{n}{T})\right]\chi_B\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) \\ &= 2T\sum_n e^{-i\pi Tf}e^{-i\pi n}\left[\cos(\pi Tf)\cos(\pi n) - \sin(\pi Tf)\sin(\pi n)\right]\chi_B\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) \\ &= 2Te^{-i\pi Tf}\sum_n(-1)^n\left[\cos(\pi Tf)(-1)^n - \sin(\pi Tf)\cdot 0\right]\chi_B\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) \\ &= 2Te^{-i\pi Tf}\sum_n \cos(\pi Tf)\chi_B\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) \\ &= 2Te^{-i\pi Tf}\cos(\pi Tf)\sum_n \chi_B\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) \\ &= 2Te^{-i\pi Tf}\cos(\pi Tf)\end{aligned}$$

The signaling waveform $\mathsf{h}(t)$ can be found by taking the inverse Fourier Transform of $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathsf{h}(t) &= [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{h}}](t) \\ &= \int_f \mathsf{h}(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \\ &= \int_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} 2Te^{-i\pi Tf}\cos(\pi Tf)e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \\ &= 2T\int_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} e^{-i\pi Tf}\frac{1}{2}\left[e^{i\pi Tf}+e^{-i\pi Tf}\right]e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \\ &= T\int_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}}\left[1+e^{-i2\pi Tf}\right]e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \\ &= T\int_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} e^{i2\pi ft}+e^{i2\pi(t-T)f}\,\mathrm{d}f\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= T\frac{e^{i2\pi ft}}{i2\pi t}\bigg|_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} + T\frac{e^{i2\pi f(t-T)}}{i2\pi(t-T)}\bigg|_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} \\
&= \frac{e^{i\frac{\pi}{T}t}-e^{-i\frac{\pi}{T}t}}{i2\frac{\pi}{T}t} + \frac{e^{i\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)}-e^{-i\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)}}{i2\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)} \\
&= \frac{\sin[\frac{\pi}{T}t]}{\frac{\pi}{T}t} + \frac{\sin[\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)]}{\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

6.3.4 Detection

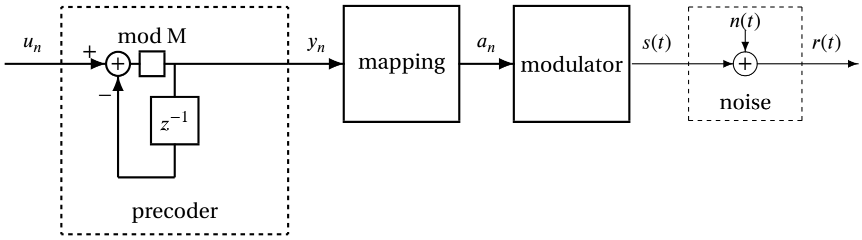


Figure 6.10: Duobinary Detection Model

Detection of a received signal using duobinary modulation presents a special problem because each received symbol at time period n is a function of both the time n and $n-1$ transmitted symbols (has single symbol ISI). In this case and if channel noise is zero, detection can still be performed without error using the algorithm described below and illustrated in Figure 6.10 (page 71).

Lemma 6.1.

LEM | $(a+b) \mod = (a \mod + b \mod) \mod$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{array}{rcl c rcl}
a &=& Mq_1 + r_1 & \iff & a \mod &=& r_1 \\
b &=& Mq_2 + r_2 & \iff & b \mod &=& r_2 \\
a+b &=& Mq_3 + r_3 & \iff & (a+b) \mod &=& r_3 \\
r_1+r_2 &=& Mq_4 + r_4 & \iff & (r_1+r_2) \mod &=& r_4
\end{array}
$$

✏

Theorem 6.7. *Let* $u_n \in \{0, 1, \dots, M-1\}$ *be the data transmitted using* DUOBINARY *symbol signaling. Let*

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{r}(t) &\triangleq \mathsf{s}(t;u) + \mathsf{n}(t) \\
r_n &\triangleq r(t)|_{t=nT} = r(nT) \\
y_n &\triangleq (u_n - y_{n-1}) \mod \\
a_n &\triangleq 2y_n - M + 1 \\
n_n &\triangleq n(t)|_{t=nT} = n(nT) \\
S_n &\triangleq \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} (-1)^{n-k} u_k.
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

THM $r_n | u_n, S_{n-1} = 2\Big[[u_n \mod + (-S_{n-1}) \mod] \mod + S_{n-1} \mod - (M-1)\Big] + n_n$

If $\mathsf{n}(t)$ *is a white Gaussian random process, then*

THM $r_n \sim \mathsf{N}\left(2\Big[[u_n \mod + (-S_{n-1}) \mod] \mod + S_{n-1} \mod - (M-1)\Big], \sigma^2\right)$

✎PROOF:

The sequence $\{y_n\}$ is the precoded sequence:

$$\begin{aligned}
y_n &= (u_n - y_{n-1}) \mod \\
&= [u_n - (u_{n-1} - y_{n-2})] \mod \\
&= (u_n - u_{n-1} + u_{n-2} - y_{n-3}) \mod \\
&= (u_n - u_{n-1} + u_{n-2} - u_{n-3} + y_{n-4}) \mod \\
&= \left(\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} (-1)^{n-k} u_k\right) \mod \\
&= S_n \mod
\end{aligned}$$

A mapping is performed on each y_n to produce a_n:

$$a_n = 2y_n - M + 1.$$

The modulator uses the duobinary signaling waveform $\mathsf{h}(t)$ and a_n to produce the transmitted signal $s(t)$ at signaling rate $1/T$:

$$s(t) = \sum_n a_n \mathsf{h}(t - nT).$$

Before going further, here is a useful relation:

$$\begin{aligned}
S_n &\triangleq \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} (-1)^{n-k} u_k \\
&= u_n + \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} (-1)^{n-k} u_k \\
&= u_n - \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} (-1)(-1)^{n-k} u_k \\
&= u_n - \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} (-1)^{-1}(-1)^{n-k} u_k \\
&= u_n - \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} (-1)^{n-1-k} u_k \\
&\triangleq u_n - S_{n-1}
\end{aligned}$$

The received signal samples r_n are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{r}_n &= \mathsf{r}(t)|_{t=nT} \\
&= [\mathsf{s}(t) + n(t)]_{t=nT} \\
&= \left[\sum_m a_n \mathsf{h}(t - mT) + n(t)\right]_{t=nT} \\
&= \sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT) + n(nT) \\
&= a_n \mathsf{h}(0) + a_{n-1}\mathsf{h}(T) + n_n \\
&= a_n + a_{n-1} + n_n \\
&= \left(2y_n - M + 1\right) + \left(2y_{n-1} - M + 1\right) + n_n \\
&= 2\left(y_n + y_{n-1} - M + 1\right) + n_n \\
&= 2\left[\left(\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} (-1)^{n-k} u_k\right) \mod + \left(\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} (-1)^{n-1-k} u_k\right) \mod - M + 1\right] + n_n \\
&= 2\left[S_n \mod + S_{n-1} \mod - M + 1\right] + n_n \\
&= 2\left[(u_n - S_{n-1}) \mod + S_{n-1} \mod - (M-1)\right] + n_n \\
&= 2\left[[u_n \mod + (-S_{n-1}) \mod] \mod + S_{n-1} \mod - (M-1)\right] + n_n
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, $(r_n|u_n, S_{n-1})$ have Gaussian distribution with means

$$\mathsf{E}\left[r_n|u_n, S_n\right] = 2\left[\left(u_n + S_{n-1}\right) \mod + \left(M - S_{n-1}\right) \mod - (M-1)\right].$$

✎

That is the good news. The bad news is that in general we don't know S_n. However, the additional good news is that it doesn't matter what S_{n-1} is because the values $\mathsf{E}\left[r_n|u_n\right]$ are always distinct from the values $\mathsf{E}\left[r_m|v_m\right]$ if $u_n \neq v_n$. That is

$$\begin{aligned}
&(u_n \neq v_n) \implies \\
&\mathsf{E}\left[r_n|u_n, S_{n-1}\right] \neq \mathsf{E}\left[r_n|v_n, S_{n-1}\right] \qquad \forall S_{n-1}
\end{aligned}$$

For ML optimization, we are interested in the distributions $\mathsf{p}(r_n|u_n)$. However, what we conveniently have is $\mathsf{p}(r_n|u_n, S_{n-1})$. If we assume that all values of $S_{n-1} \in \{0, 1, \ldots, M-1\}$ are equally likely, we can convert from the latter to the former by the relation:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{p}(r_n|u_n) &= \frac{\mathsf{p}(r_n, u_n)}{\mathsf{p}(u_n)} \\
&= \frac{\mathsf{p}(u_n|r_n)\mathsf{p}(r_n)}{\mathsf{p}(u_n)} \\
&= \frac{\mathsf{p}(u_n|r_n)\mathsf{p}(r_n)}{\mathsf{p}(u_n)} \\
&= \frac{\sum_{s=0}^{M-1} \mathsf{p}(u_n, S_{n-1} = s|r_n)\mathsf{p}(r_n)}{\mathsf{p}(u_n)} \\
&= \frac{\sum_{s=0}^{M-1} \mathsf{p}(r_n|u_n, S_{n-1} = s)\mathsf{p}(r_n)\mathsf{p}(u_n, S_{n-1})}{\mathsf{p}(u_n)\mathsf{p}(r_n)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{\sum_{s=0}^{M-1} \mathsf{p}(r_n|u_n, S_{n-1} = s)\mathsf{p}(u_n)\mathsf{p}(S_{n-1})}{\mathsf{p}(u_n)} \\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{M-1} \mathsf{p}(r_n|u_n, S_{n-1} = m)\mathsf{p}(S_{n-1}) \\
&= \frac{1}{M} \sum_{m=0}^{M-1} \mathsf{p}(r_n|u_n, S_{n-1} = m)
\end{aligned}
$$

Detection in the case $M = 2$

For the case $M = 2$, we have the following mean values:

u_n	$S_{n-1} \mod [2]$	$\mathsf{E}\left[r_n|u_n, S_{n-1}\right]$
0	0	−2
0	1	2
1	0	0
1	1	0

This gives distributions (see Figure 6.11 (page 74))

$$
\begin{aligned}
(r_n|u_n = 0) &\sim \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{N}\left(-2, \sigma^2\right) + \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{N}\left(2, \sigma^2\right) \\
(r_n|u_n = 1) &\sim \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right).
\end{aligned}
$$

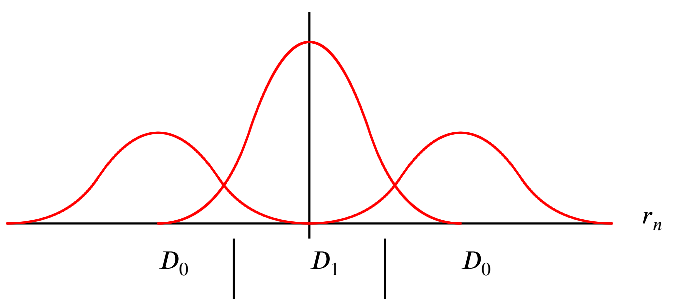


Figure 6.11: Duobinary receiver distributions for $M = 2$

Detection in the case $M = 4$

For the case $M = 4$, we have the following mean values:

u_n	$S_{n-1} \mod [4]$	$\mathsf{E}\left[r_n \vert u_n, S_{n-1}\right]$
0	0	−6
0	1	2
0	2	2
0	3	2
1	0	−4
1	1	−4
1	2	4
1	3	4
2	0	−2
2	1	−2
2	2	−2
2	3	6
3	0	0
3	1	0
3	2	0
3	3	0

This gives distributions (see Figure 6.12 (page 75))

$$\begin{aligned}
(r_n|u_n = 0) &\sim \frac{1}{4}\mathsf{N}\left(-6, \sigma^2\right) + \frac{3}{4}\mathsf{N}\left(2, \sigma^2\right) \\
(r_n|u_n = 1) &\sim \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{N}\left(-4, \sigma^2\right) + \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{N}\left(4, \sigma^2\right) \\
(r_n|u_n = 2) &\sim \frac{1}{4}\mathsf{N}\left(6, \sigma^2\right) + \frac{3}{4}\mathsf{N}\left(-2, \sigma^2\right) \\
(r_n|u_n = 3) &\sim \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right).
\end{aligned}$$

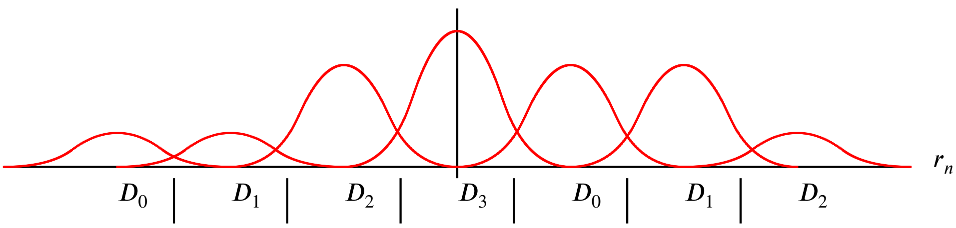


Figure 6.12: Duobinary receiver distributions for $M = 4$

6.4 Modified Duobinary ISI solution

6.4.1 Constraints

The received waveform $r(t)$ is of the form

$$r(t) = \sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(t - mT).$$

At sampling instants $t = nT$, $r(t)$ has the form

$$\begin{aligned}
r(nT) &= r(t)|_{t=nT} \\
&= \sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT) \\
&= a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT)\big|_{m=n} + a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT)\big|_{m=n-1} + \sum_{m\neq n-1,n+1} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT) \\
&= a_{n-1}\mathsf{h}(nT - (n-1)T) + a_{n+1}\mathsf{h}(nT - (n+1)T) + \sum_{m\neq n-1,n,n+1} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT) \\
&= a_{n+1}\mathsf{h}(-T) + a_{n-1}\mathsf{h}(T) + \sum_{m\neq n-1,n+1} a_m \mathsf{h}(nT - mT)
\end{aligned}$$

We place the following constraints on the signaling waveform $\mathsf{h}(t)$:

We place the following constraints on the signaling waveform $\mathsf{h}(t)$:

1. **sampling constraint:** $\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} +1 & \text{for } n = -1 \\ -1 & \text{for } n = +1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$
2. **bandwidth constraint:** $[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}](f) = 0$ for $|f| \geq W$.

These two constraints are in conflict with each other. However, they are both satisfied if the criterion in Theorem 6.8 (page 76) is met.

6.4.2 Criterion

Theorem 6.8. *Let $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ be the Fourier Transform of a function $\mathsf{h}(t)$ and $T \in \mathbb{R}$ a constant.*

THM

$$\left[\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} +1 & : \; n = -1 \\ -1 & : \; n = +1 \\ 0 & : \; \textit{otherwise} \end{cases}\right] \iff \left[\frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) = i2\sin(2\pi f T).\right]$$

✎PROOF: This theorem is easily proven using the *Inverse Poisson's Summation Formula* (IPSF) which states

$$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) = T\sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT}$$

1. "Only if" case ($\Longrightarrow$):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) &= T\sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT} && \text{by IPSF} \\
&= T\left[\mathsf{h}(-1T)e^{-i2\pi f(-1)T} + \mathsf{h}(1T)e^{-i2\pi f 1T} + \sum_{n\neq n-1,n+1} \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi f nT}\right] \\
&= T\left[(1)e^{-i2\pi f(-1)T}(-1)e^{-i2\pi f 1T}\right] && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= T\left[e^{i2\pi f T} - e^{-i2\pi f T}\right] \\
&= i2T\sin(2\pi f T) && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas} Corollary F.2}
\end{aligned}$$

2. "If" case ($\Longleftarrow$):

$$\begin{aligned}
i2T\sin(2\pi fT) &= \sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f+\frac{n}{T}\right) && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= T\sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)e^{-i2\pi fnT} && \text{by IPSF}\\
&= i2T\sum_n \mathsf{h}(nT)\frac{1}{2i}e^{-i2\pi fnT}\\
&= i2T\left[\frac{\mathsf{h}(-T)e^{i2\pi fT}+\mathsf{h}(T)e^{-i2\pi fT}}{2i}+\sum_{n\neq -1,1}\mathsf{h}(nT)\frac{1}{2i}e^{-i2\pi fnT}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

$\Longrightarrow$

$$\mathsf{h}(nT) = \begin{cases} 1 & : n = -1\\ -1 & : n = 1\\ 0 & : \text{otherwise}\end{cases} \qquad \text{because } \sin(2\pi fT) \text{ has no imagina}$$

✏

6.4.3 Signaling waveform

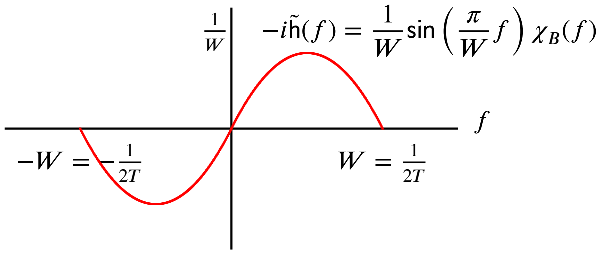


Figure 6.13: Modified duobinary waveform $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ at Nyquist rate

The next theorem specifies a signaling waveform which satisfies the criterion at the Nyquist rate

$$W = \frac{1}{2T}.$$

Like the duobinary Nyquist rate signaling waveform (Figure 6.9 (page 69)), the modified duobinary Nyquist rate signaling waveform (Figure 6.13 (page 77)) can be easily approximated in real systems. Unlike the duobinary Nyquist rate signaling waveform, the modified duobinary Nyquist rate signaling waveform has no DC component making it a better candidate for channels that attenuate DC (for example, capacitively coupled channels).

Theorem 6.9. *The waveform* $\mathsf{h}(t)$ *with Fourier transform* $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ *(see Figure 6.13 (page 77)) satisfies the criterion stated in Theorem 6.8 (page 76), where*

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f) &= \begin{cases} i2T\sin(2\pi fT) & : \frac{-1}{2T} \le f < \frac{1}{2T}\\ 0 & : \textit{otherwise.}\end{cases}\\
\mathsf{h}(t) &= \frac{\sin[\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)]}{\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)} - \frac{\sin[\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)]}{\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)}\\
&= \operatorname{sinc}\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T) - \operatorname{sinc}\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF: Let $B = [-1/2T, +1/2T)$ such that

$$\chi_B(f) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & : f \in [-1/2T, +1/2T) \\ 0 & : \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then First, observe that $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$ satisfies the criterion of Theorem 6.8 (page 76):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) &= \sum_n i2T\sin[2\pi(f + \frac{n}{T})T]\chi_B\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) \\
&= i2T\sum_n \sin(2\pi fT + 2\pi n)\chi_B\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) \\
&= i2T\sum_n [\sin(2\pi fT)\cos(2\pi n) + \cos(2\pi fT)\sin(2\pi n)]\,\chi_B\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) \\
&= i2T\sum_n [\sin(2\pi fT)\cdot 1 + \cos(2\pi fT)\cdot 0]\,\chi_B\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) \\
&= i2T\sum_n \sin(2\pi fT)\chi_B\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) \\
&= i2T\sin(2\pi fT)\sum_n \chi_B\left(f + \frac{n}{T}\right) \\
&= i2T\sin(2\pi fT)
\end{aligned}$$

The signaling waveform $\mathsf{h}(t)$ can be found by taking the inverse Fourier Transform of $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{h}(t) &= [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{h}}](t) \\
&= \int_f \mathsf{h}(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \\
&= \int_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} i2T\sin(2\pi Tf)e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \\
&= i2T\int_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} \frac{1}{2i}\left[e^{i2\pi Tf} - e^{-i2\pi Tf}\right]e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \\
&= T\int_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} \left[e^{i2\pi Tf} - e^{-i2\pi Tf}\right]e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \\
&= T\int_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} \left[e^{i2\pi f(t+T)} - e^{i2\pi f(t-T)}\right]\,\mathrm{d}f \\
&= T\left.\frac{e^{i2\pi f(t+T)}}{i2\pi(t+T)}\right|_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} - T\left.\frac{e^{i2\pi f(t-T)}}{i2\pi(t-T)}\right|_{\frac{-1}{2T}}^{\frac{1}{2T}} \\
&= \frac{e^{i\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)} - e^{-i\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)}}{2i\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)} - \frac{e^{i\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)} - e^{-i\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)}}{2i\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)} \\
&= \frac{2i\sin[\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)]}{2i\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)} - \frac{2i\sin[\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)]}{2i\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)} \\
&= \frac{\sin[\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)]}{\frac{\pi}{T}(t+T)} - \frac{\sin[\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)]}{\frac{\pi}{T}(t-T)}
\end{aligned}$$

⇨

CHAPTER 7

DISTORTED FREQUENCY RESPONSE CHANNEL

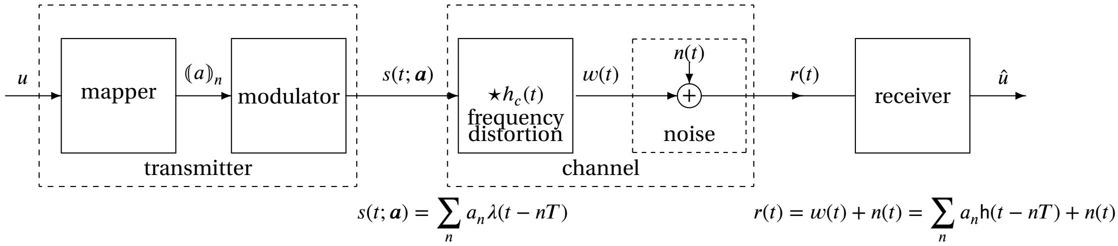


Figure 7.1: Equalization system model

7.1 Channel Model

In this chapter, the channel model includes both deterministic and random distortion.

① linear deterministic distortion (convolution with $h_c(t)$)
② linear stochastic distortion (additive white Gaussian noise).

Let

u	be the information sequence
$(\!(a)\!)_n$	be a mapped sequence under a one to one function $a_n = f(u_n)$
$\lambda(t)$	be the *modulation waveform*
$s(t; \boldsymbol{a})$	be the *transmitted waveform*
$h_c(t)$	be the *channel impulse response*
$n(t)$	be the *channel noise* with distribution $n(t) \sim \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right)$.

The following definitions apply throughout this chapter:

DEF

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{s}(t; (\!(a)\!)_n) &\triangleq \textstyle\sum_n a_n \lambda(t - nT) \\
\mathsf{h}(t) &\triangleq \lambda(t) \star \mathsf{h}_c(t) = \int_\tau \mathsf{h}(\tau)\lambda(t - \tau)\, \mathsf{d}\tau \\
w(t) &\triangleq \int_\tau h_c(\tau) s(t - \tau)\, d\tau \\
r(t) &\triangleq w(t) + n(t).
\end{aligned}$$

Under these definitions the received signal can be expressed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
r(t) &= w(t) + n(t) \\
&= \int_\tau h_c(\tau)s(t-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau + n(t) \\
&= \int_\tau h_c(\tau)\sum_n a_n\lambda(t-\tau-nT)\,\mathrm{d}\tau + n(t) \\
&= \sum_n a_n \int_\tau \mathsf{h}_c(\tau)\lambda(t-\tau-nT)\,\mathrm{d}\tau + n(t) \\
&= \sum_n a_n \mathsf{h}(t-nT) + n(t)
\end{aligned}$$

7.2 Sufficient statistic sequence

7.2.1 Receiver statistics

Define the innerproduct quantities as

DEF

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{r}_n &\triangleq \langle r(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \\
\dot{n}_n &\triangleq \langle n(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \\
\dot{h}_n(m) &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{h}(t-mT) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

The quantity $\dot{r}_n$ is a random variable with form

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{r}_n &\triangleq \langle r(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \\
&= \langle w(t) + n(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \\
&= \langle w(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle + \langle n(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(t-mT) \,|\, \psi_n(t) \right\rangle + \langle n(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \\
&= \sum_m a_m \langle \mathsf{h}(t-mT) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle + \langle n(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle \\
&= \sum_m a_m \dot{h}_n(m) + \dot{n}_n.
\end{aligned}$$

By Theorem 4.5 (page 36), the quantity $\dot{r}_n$ given $\boldsymbol{a}$ has Gaussian distribution

$$(\dot{r}_n|\boldsymbol{a}) \sim \mathsf{N}\left(\sum_m a_m \dot{h}_n(m), \sigma^2\right)$$

and $\dot{r}_n|\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\dot{r}_m|\boldsymbol{a}$ are independent for $n \neq m$.

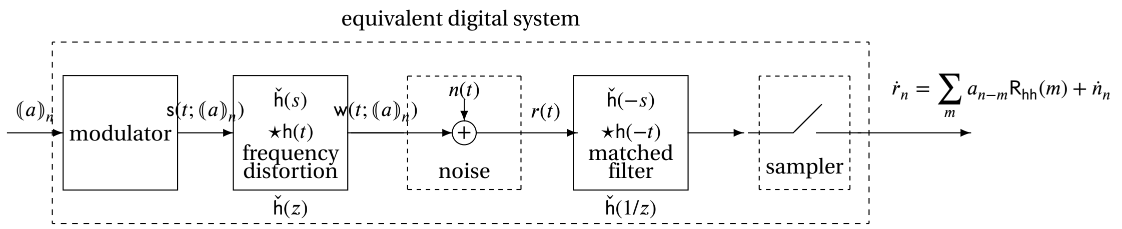


Figure 7.2: Sufficient statistic sequence $(\dot{r}_n)$ for ML estimation

7.2.2 ML estimate and sufficient statistic

Definition 7.1.

DEF

$$\begin{array}{rclcll}
R_{hh}(m) & \triangleq & \langle h(t+mT) \,|\, h(t)\rangle & \triangleq & \int_t h(t+mT)h^*(t)\,dt & \textit{(autocorrelation)}\\
\dot{r}_n & \triangleq & \langle r(t) \,|\, h(t-nT)\rangle & \triangleq & \int_t r(t)h^*(t-nT)\,dt & \textit{(receive statistic)}\\
\dot{n}_n & \triangleq & \langle n(t) \,|\, h(t-nT)\rangle & \triangleq & \int_t n(t)h^*(t-nT)\,dt & \textit{(noise statistic)}
\end{array}$$

Under these definitions, the receive statistic can be represented as follows (see Figure 7.2 page 81):

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{r}_n &\triangleq \langle r(t) \,|\, h(t-nT)\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \sum_m a_n h(t-mT) + n(t) \,\middle|\, h(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \sum_m a_n h(t-mT) \,\middle|\, h(t-nT)\right\rangle + \langle n(t) \,|\, h(t-nT)\rangle\\
&= \sum_m a_m \langle h(t-mT) \,|\, h(t-nT)\rangle + \langle n(t) \,|\, h(t-nT)\rangle\\
&= \sum_m a_m R_{hh}(n-m) + \dot{n}_n\\
&= \sum_k a_{n-k} R_{hh}(k) + \dot{n}_n \qquad k = n-m \iff m = n-k\\
&= \sum_m a_{n-m} R_{hh}(m) + \dot{n}_n \qquad \text{by change of free variable}
\end{aligned}$$

Theorem 7.1. *Under Definitions 7.1,*

1. *The sequence $(\dot{r}_n)$ is a* ***sufficient statistic*** *for determining the maximum likelihood (ML) estimate of* $\boldsymbol{a}$.
2. *The ML estimate of* $\boldsymbol{a}$ *is*

THM

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}_{ml} = \arg\max_{\boldsymbol{a}} \left(2\sum_n a_n \dot{r}_n - \sum_n \sum_m a_n a_{m+n} R_{hh}(m)\right).$$

✎PROOF:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}_{ml} \triangleq \arg\max_{\boldsymbol{a}} P\left\{r(t) | s(t;(\!(a)\!)_n)\right\}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\int_t r(t)\mathsf{w}(t;(\hat{a})_n) - \int_t \mathsf{w}^2(t;(\hat{a})_n)\,\mathrm{d}t\right] && \text{by Theorem 4.6 (page 36) page 36}\\
&= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\int_t r(t)\sum_n a_n \mathsf{h}(t-nT)\,\mathrm{d}t - \int_t \sum_n a_n \mathsf{h}(t-nT)\sum_m a_m \mathsf{h}(t-mT)\,\mathrm{d}t\right]\\
&= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\,\mathrm{d}t - \sum_n\sum_m a_n a_m \int_t \mathsf{h}(t-nT)\mathsf{h}(t-mT)\,\mathrm{d}t\right]\\
&= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\,\mathrm{d}t - \sum_n\sum_m a_n a_m \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m-n)\right]\\
&= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\,\mathrm{d}t - \sum_n\sum_k a_n a_k \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(k-n)\right]\\
&= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\,\mathrm{d}t - \sum_n\sum_m a_n a_{m+n} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\right]\\
&= \arg\max_{a} \left[2\sum_n a_n \dot{r}_n - \sum_n\sum_m a_n a_{m+n} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

⇨

If the autocorrelation is zero for $|n| > L$, then Theorem 7.1 (page 81) reduces to the simpler form stated in Corollary 7.1 (next).

Corollary 7.1. *If*

$$\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(n) = 0 \text{ for } |n| > L$$

then

COR
$$\boxed{\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} = \arg\max_{a}\left(2\sum_n a_n \dot{r}_n - \sum_n a_n\left[a_n \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(0) + 2\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\right]\right)}$$

✎PROOF: First note that

$$\sum_n \sum_{m=-L}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)$$

is maximized when a_{m+n} is symmetric about n (??????). Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}} &= \arg\max_{a}\left(2\sum_n a_n \dot{r}_n - \sum_n\sum_m a_n a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\right)\\
&= \arg\max_{a}\left(2\sum_n a_n \dot{r}_n - \sum_n a_n \sum_{m=-L}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\right)\\
&= \arg\max_{a}\left(2\sum_n a_n \dot{r}_n - \sum_n a_n\left[a_n \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(0) + \sum_{m=-L}^{1} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m) + \sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\right]\right)\\
&= \arg\max_{a}\left(2\sum_n a_n \dot{r}_n - \sum_n a_n\left[a_n \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(0) + 2\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\right]\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

⇨

7.2.3 Statistics of sufficient statistic sequence $(\dot{r}_n)$

The elements of the ML sufficient sequence $(\dot{r}_n|\boldsymbol{a})$ have Gaussian distribution, however the sequence is **colored**. That is $\dot{r}_n$ is correlated with $\dot{r}_m$ (and therefore also not independent). To whiten the sequence $(\dot{r}_n)$, a whitening filter may be used. Whitening filters can be implemented in analog (Section **??** page **??**) or digitally (Section **??** page **??**).

Theorem 7.2.

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\dot{n}_n &= 0\\
\operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{n}_n, \dot{n}_m\right] &= N_o \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(n-m)\\
\mathsf{E}\dot{r}_n|\boldsymbol{a} &= \sum_m a_{n-m}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\\
\dot{r}_n|\boldsymbol{a} &\sim \mathsf{N}\left(\sum_m a_{n-m}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m),\, N_o\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(0)\right)\\
\operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{r}_n|\boldsymbol{a}, \dot{r}_m|\boldsymbol{a}\right] &= N_o\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(n-m)
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\dot{n}_n &= \mathsf{E}\left\langle n(t)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{E}n(t)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle 0\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{n}_n, \dot{n}_m\right] &= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{n}_n\dot{n}_m\right] - \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{n}_n\right]\mathsf{E}\left[\dot{n}_m\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{n}_n\dot{n}_m\right] - 0\cdot 0\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left\langle n(t)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\left\langle n(t)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-mT)\right\rangle\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left\langle n(t)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\left\langle n(u)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(u-mT)\right\rangle\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left\langle n(t)\left\langle n(u)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(u-mT)\right\rangle\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left\langle\left\langle n(t)n(u)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(u-mT)\right\rangle\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\right]\\
&= \left\langle\left\langle \mathsf{E}\left[n(t)n(u)\right]\,|\,\mathsf{h}(u-mT)\right\rangle\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle\left\langle N_o\delta(t-u)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(u-mT)\right\rangle\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= N_o\left\langle \mathsf{h}(t-mT)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= N_o\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(n-m)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\dot{r}_n &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left\langle r(t)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left\langle \sum_k a_k\mathsf{h}(t-kT) + n(t)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \sum_k a_k\mathsf{h}(t-kT) + \mathsf{E}n(t)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \sum_k a_k\mathsf{h}(t-kT) + 0\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \sum_k a_k\left\langle \mathsf{h}(t-kT)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(t-nT)\right\rangle\\
&= \sum_k a_k\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(n-k)\\
&= \sum_m a_{n-m}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m) \qquad m = n-k \iff k = n-m
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{r}_n, \dot{r}_m\right] &= \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\dot{r}_n - \mathsf{E}\dot{r}_n\right)\left(\dot{r}_m - \mathsf{E}\dot{r}_m\right)\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\dot{n}_n \dot{n}_m\right] \\
&= \operatorname{cov}\left[\dot{n}_n, \dot{n}_m\right] \\
&= N_o \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(n-m)
\end{aligned}$$

✎

7.2.4 Spectrum of sufficient statistic sequence $(\dot{r}_n)$

The Fourier Transform cannot be used to evaluate the spectrum of the sequences $(\dot{r}_n)$, $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)$, and $(\dot{n}_n)$ directly because the sequences are not functions of a continuous variable. Instead we compute the spectral content of their sampled continuous equivalents as defined next:

DEF

$$\begin{aligned}
R_s(t) &\triangleq \langle \mathsf{h}(u+t) \,|\, \mathsf{h}(u) \rangle \textstyle\sum_n \delta(t-nT) \\
\dot{r}_s(t) &\triangleq \langle r(u) \,|\, \mathsf{h}(u-t) \rangle \textstyle\sum_n \delta(t-nT) \\
\dot{n}_s(t) &\triangleq \langle n(u) \,|\, \mathsf{h}(u-t) \rangle \textstyle\sum_n \delta(t-nT) \\
a_s(t) &\triangleq a(t) \textstyle\sum_n \delta(t-nT).
\end{aligned}$$

Note that under these definitions

PRP

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m) &= R_s(t)|_{t=mT} \\
\dot{r}_n &= \dot{r}_s(t)|_{t=nT} \\
\dot{n}_n &= \dot{n}_s(t)|_{t=nT} \\
a_n &= a_s(t)|_{t=nT}.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
S_s(f) &\triangleq [\tilde{\mathbf{F}} R_s](f) \\
&= \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}} \langle \mathsf{h}(u+t) \,|\, \mathsf{h}(u) \rangle \sum_n \delta(t-nT)\right](f) \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\, \langle \mathsf{h}(u+t) \,|\, \mathsf{h}(u) \rangle\right]\left(f - \frac{n}{T}\right) && \text{by Theorem ?? (page ??) page ??} \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_t \langle \mathsf{h}(u+t) \,|\, \mathsf{h}(u) \rangle\, e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)t}\, \mathsf{d}t \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_t\int_u \mathsf{h}(u+t) h^*(u) e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)t}\, \mathsf{d}t \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_t\int_u \mathsf{h}(u+t) h^*(u) e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)t}\, \mathsf{d}t && v = u+t \iff t = v-u \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_v\int_u \mathsf{h}(v)\mathsf{h}^*(u) e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)(v-u)}\, \mathsf{d}u\, \mathsf{d}v \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_u \mathsf{h}^*(u) e^{i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)u}\, \mathsf{d}u \int_v \mathsf{h}(v) e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)v}\, \mathsf{d}v \\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \left(\int_u \mathsf{h}(u) e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)u}\, \mathsf{d}u\right)^* \int_v \mathsf{h}(v) e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)v}\, \mathsf{d}v
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)\tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)\\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)\right|^2
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\dot{n}_s\right](f) &= \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\langle n(u)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(u-t)\rangle \sum_n \delta(t-nT)\right](f)\\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\langle n(u)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(u-t)\rangle]\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)\\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_t \langle n(u)\,|\,\mathsf{h}(u-t)\rangle\, e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)t}\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_t\int_u n(u)\mathsf{h}^*(u-t)e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)t}\,\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_v\int_u n(u)\mathsf{h}^*(v)e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)(u-v)}\,\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}v \qquad v=u-t \iff t=u-v\\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_u n(u)e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)u}\,\mathrm{d}u \int_v \mathsf{h}^*(v)e^{i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)v}\,\mathrm{d}v\\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \int_u n(u)e^{-i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)u}\,\mathrm{d}u \left[\int_v \mathsf{h}(v)e^{i2\pi\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)v}\,\mathrm{d}v\right]^*\\
&= \frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{n}}\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)\tilde{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\dot{r}\right](f) &= \tilde{\mathsf{a}}_s(f)S_s(f)+\tilde{\mathsf{n}}_s(f)\\
&= \tilde{\mathsf{a}}_s(f)S_s(f)+\tilde{\mathsf{n}}_s(f)\\
&= \tilde{\mathsf{a}}_s(f)\frac{1}{T}\sum_n\left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)\right|^2+\frac{1}{T}\sum_n \tilde{\mathsf{n}}\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)\tilde{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(f-\frac{n}{T}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that the Fourier Transform $\tilde{\mathsf{n}}(f)$ only exists if it has finite energy (such as with most bandlimited noise). Thus, if $n(t)$ is a true white noise process, $\tilde{\mathsf{n}}(f)$ does not exist.

7.3 Implementations

7.3.1 Trellis

The ML estimate can be computed by the use of a trellis. The distance metrics $\mu(n;\boldsymbol{a},L)$ for the trellis can be computed recursively.

Theorem 7.3. *Let a metric $\mu(n;\boldsymbol{a},L)$ be defined such that*

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(n) &= 0 \text{ for } |n|>L.\\
\mu(n;\boldsymbol{a},L) &\triangleq 2\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} a_k\dot{r}_k-\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} a_k\left[a_k\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(0)+2\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+k}\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(m)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

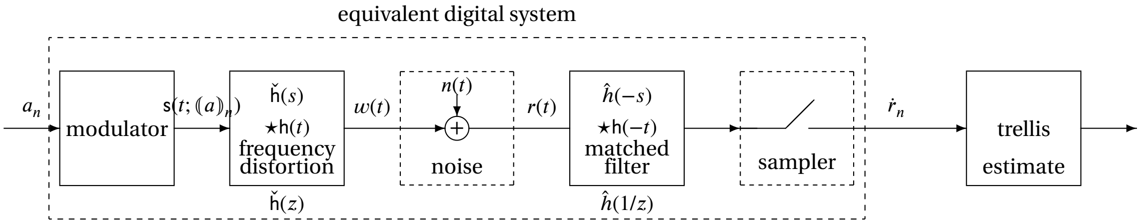


Figure 7.3: Trellis implementation

Then

THM

$$\mu(n;\boldsymbol{a},L) = \mu(n-1;\boldsymbol{a},L) + 2a_n\dot{r}_n - a_n^2\mathsf{R}_{hh}(0) - 2a_n\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{hh}(m)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mu(n;\boldsymbol{a},L) - \mu(n-1;\boldsymbol{a},L)\\
&= \left(2\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} a_k\dot{r}_k - \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} a_k\left[a_k\mathsf{R}_{hh}(0) + 2\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+k}\mathsf{R}_{hh}(m)\right]\right) -\\
&\quad\left(2\sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} a_k\dot{r}_k - \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} a_k\left[a_k\mathsf{R}_{hh}(0) + 2\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+k}\mathsf{R}_{hh}(m)\right]\right)\\
&= 2a_n\dot{r}_n - a_n\left[a_n\mathsf{R}_{hh}(0) + 2\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{hh}(m)\right]\\
&= 2a_n\dot{r}_n - a_n^2\mathsf{R}_{hh}(0) - 2a_n\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{hh}(m)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example 7.1. Let $L = 2$ in a binary ($M = 2$) communications channel. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mu(n;\boldsymbol{a},L) &= \mu(n-1;\boldsymbol{a},L) + 2a_n\dot{r}_n - a_n^2\mathsf{R}_{hh}(0) - 2a_n\sum_{m=1}^{L} a_{m+n}\mathsf{R}_{hh}(m)\\
&= \mu(n-1;\boldsymbol{a},2) + 2a_n\dot{r}_n - a_n^2\mathsf{R}_{hh}(0) - 2a_na_{n+1}\mathsf{R}_{hh}(1) - 2a_na_{n+2}\mathsf{R}_{hh}(2)
\end{aligned}$$

The metric $\mu(n;\boldsymbol{a},1)$ is controlled by three binary variables (a_{n-1}, a_n, a_{n+1}) and therefore the can be represented with an $2^{3-1} = 4$ state trellis. At each time interval n, each of the 8 path metrics in the set

$$\left\{\mu(n;(a_n,a_{n+1},a_{n+2}),2) \,:\, a_i \in \{-1,+1\}\right\}$$

are computed and the "shortest path" through the trellis is selected.

7.3.2 Minimum mean square estimate

Theorem 7.1 (page 81) guarantees that the sequence $(\dot{r}_n)$ is a sufficient statistic for computing the ML estimate of information sequence (a_n). Using $(\dot{r}_n)$, Section 7.3.1 shows that the ML estimate

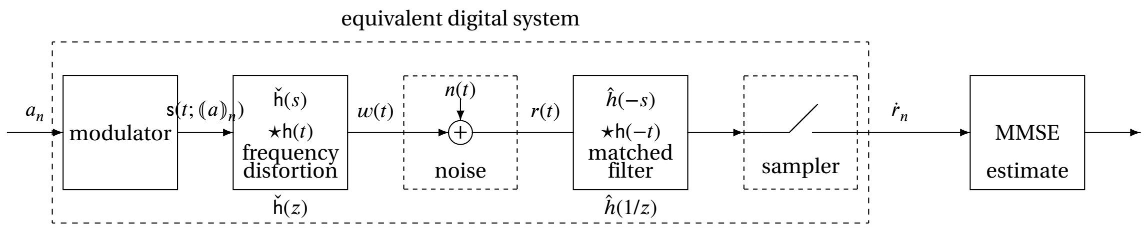


Figure 7.4: Minimum Mean Square Estimate Implementation

can be computed using a trellis. However, the trellis calculations can be very computationally demanding. A simpler approach is to use minimum mean square estimation (MMSE). MMSE can be computationally less demanding, but yields an estimate that is not equal to the ML estimate (MMSE is suboptimal). Minimum mean square estimation is presented in Section **??** (page **??**). Let

M: estimate order (M is odd)
N: parameter order (N is odd).

Then an estimate $\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}$ of the transmitted symbols can be calculated as follows.

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} \hat{a}_{n-\frac{M-1}{2}} \\ \vdots \\ \hat{a}_{n-1} \\ \hat{a}_n \\ \hat{a}_{n+1} \\ \vdots \\ \hat{a}_{n+\frac{M-1}{2}} \end{bmatrix} = U^H \boldsymbol{p} \qquad \boldsymbol{p} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} p_{n-\frac{N-1}{2}} \\ \vdots \\ p_{n-1} \\ p_n \\ p_{n+1} \\ \vdots \\ p_{n+\frac{N-1}{2}} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$U^H \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} \dot{r}_{n-\left(\frac{M-1}{2}\right)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} & \dot{r}_{n-\left(\frac{M-1}{2}\right)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}-1\right)} & \cdots & \dot{r}_{n-\left(\frac{M-1}{2}\right)-\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \dot{r}_{n-(1)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} & \dot{r}_{n-(1)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}-1\right)} & \cdots & \dot{r}_{n-(1)-\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} \\ \dot{r}_{n+(0)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} & \dot{r}_{n+(0)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}-1\right)} & \cdots & \dot{r}_{n+(0)-\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} \\ \dot{r}_{n+(1)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} & \dot{r}_{n+(1)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}-1\right)} & \cdots & \dot{r}_{n+(1)-\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \dot{r}_{n+\left(\frac{M-1}{2}\right)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} & \dot{r}_{n+\left(\frac{M-1}{2}\right)+\left(\frac{N-1}{2}-1\right)} & \cdots & \dot{r}_{n+\left(\frac{M-1}{2}\right)-\left(\frac{N-1}{2}\right)} \end{bmatrix}$$

Let

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\boldsymbol{a}}(\boldsymbol{p}) &\triangleq U^H \boldsymbol{p} \\ \boldsymbol{e}(\boldsymbol{p}) &\triangleq \hat{\boldsymbol{a}} - \boldsymbol{a} \\ \mathsf{C}(\boldsymbol{p}) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\,\|\boldsymbol{e}\|^2 \triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\boldsymbol{e}^T\boldsymbol{e}\right] \\ \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{mms}} &\triangleq \arg\min_{\boldsymbol{p}} \mathsf{C}(\boldsymbol{p}) \\ R &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[U U^H\right] \\ W &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[U \boldsymbol{y}\right]. \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{C}(\boldsymbol{p}) &= \boldsymbol{p}^H R\boldsymbol{p} - (W^H\boldsymbol{p})^* - W^H\boldsymbol{p} + \mathsf{E}\left[\boldsymbol{a}^H\boldsymbol{a}\right] \\
\nabla_{\boldsymbol{p}}\mathsf{C}(\boldsymbol{p}) &= 2\mathbf{R}_\mathsf{e}\,[R]\boldsymbol{p} - 2\Re W \\
\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{mms}} &= (\Re R)^{-1}(\Re W) \\
\mathsf{C}(\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{mms}}) &= (\Re W^H)(\Re R)^{-1}R(\Re R)^{-1}(\Re W) - 2(\Re W^H)(\Re R)^{-1}(\Re W) + \mathsf{E}\left[\boldsymbol{a}^H\boldsymbol{a}\right] \\
\mathsf{C}(\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{mms}})|_{R\text{ real}} &= \mathsf{E}\left[\boldsymbol{a}^H\boldsymbol{a}\right] - (\Re W^H)R^{-1}(\Re W).
\end{aligned}$$

7.3.3 Minimum peak distortion estimate

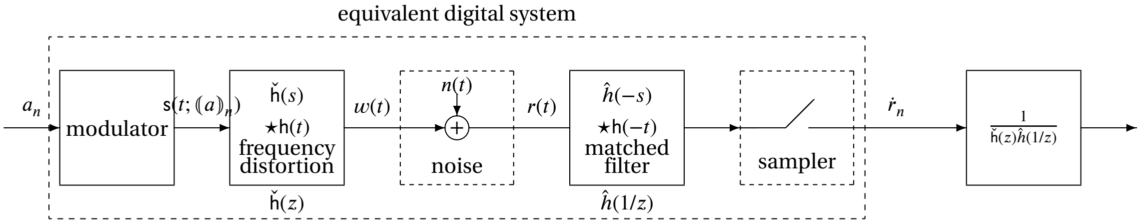


Figure 7.5: Peak distortion estimation

Peak distortion is achieved when there is **no** ISI. This means that the impulse response of the channel and post-channel processing must be only an impulse. Ideally this can be achieved by filtering $\dot{r}_n$ with the inverse of the equivalent system digital filters. See Figure 7.5 (page 88).

CHAPTER 8

PHASE ESTIMATION

8.1 Phase Estimation

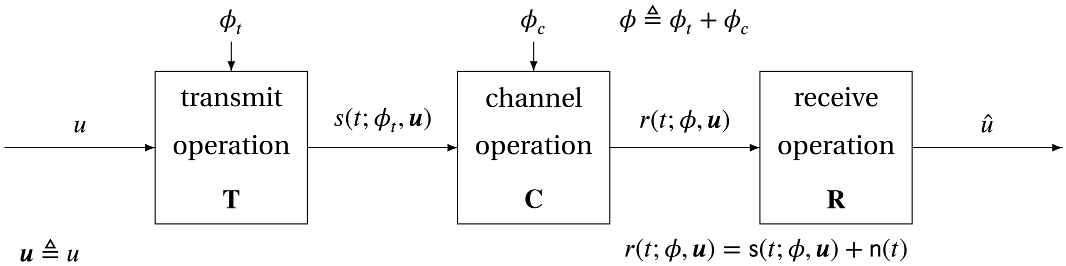


Figure 8.1: Phase estimation system model

In a narrowband communication system, the modulation sinusoid used by the transmitter generally has a different phase than the demodulation sinusoid used by the receiver. In many systems the receiver must estimate the phase of the received carrier.

Estimation types. The phase estimate may be *explicit* or *implicit*:

① explicit: compute an actual value for the phase estimate.
② implicit: generate a sinusoid with the same estimated phase as the carrier.

Algorithm classifications Synchronization algorithms can be classified in two ways. In the first, algorithms are classified according to whether the transmitted information is assumed to be known (*decision directed*) or unknown (*non-decision directed*) to the receiver. [1]

[1] *Decision/non-decision directed* is the classification used by Proakis (2001).

1. decision directed: transmitted information symbols are assumed to be known to the receiver.
2. non-decision directed: compute the expected value of a likelihood function with respect to probability distribution of the information symbols.

In the second, algorithms are classified according to whether or not they use feedback. [2]

① error tracking: with feedback – resembles the PLL operation
② feedforward: no feedback – uses bandpass filter

Hardware implementation. Implicit phase computation can be accomplished by using a *phase-lock loop* (*PLL*). Explicit phase computation algorithms often require the computation of the atan $: \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ function.

8.1.1 ML estimate

Theorem 8.1. *In an AWGN channel with received signal* $r(t) = s(t;\phi) + n(t)$ *Let*

- $r(t) = s(t;\phi) + n(t)$ *be the received signal in an AWGN channel*
- $n(t)$ *a Gaussian white noise process*
- $s(t;\phi)$ *the transmitted signal such that*

$$s(t;\phi) = \sum_n a_n \lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n + \phi).$$

Then the optimal ML estimate of ϕ *is either of the two equivalent expressions*

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\phi}_{\mathsf{ml}} &= -\operatorname{atan}\left[\frac{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n)\,\mathrm{d}t}\right] \\
&= \arg_\phi\left(\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\left[\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n + \phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right).
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\phi}_{\mathsf{ml}} &= \arg_\phi\left(2\int_t r(t)\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}s(t;\phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\int_t s^2(t;\phi)\,\mathrm{d}t\right) && \text{by Theorem 4.6 page 36} \\
&= \arg_\phi\left(2\int_t r(t)\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}s(t;\phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\|s(t;\phi)\|^2\,\mathrm{d}t\right) \\
&= \arg_\phi\left(2\int_t r(t)\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}s(t;\phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right) \\
&= \arg_\phi\left(\int_t r(t)\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\sum_n a_n\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n + \phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right) \\
&= \arg_\phi\left(-\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\left[\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n + \phi)\right]\,\mathrm{d}t = 0\right)
\end{aligned}$$

[2] *error tracking/feedforward* is the classification preferred by Meyr et al. (1998).

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \arg_\phi \left(\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT) \left[\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n)\cos(\phi) + \sin(\phi)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n)\right] \,\mathrm{d}t = 0 \right) \\
&= \arg_\phi \left(\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(\phi)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t = -\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n)\cos(\phi) \,\mathrm{d}t \right) \\
&= \arg_\phi \left(\sin(\phi) \sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t = -\cos(\phi) \sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t \right) \\
&= \arg_\phi \left(\frac{\sin(\phi)}{\cos(\phi)} = -\frac{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t} \right) \\
&= \arg_\phi \left(\tan(\phi) = -\frac{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t} \right) \\
&= \arg_\phi \left(\phi = -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t} \right) \right) \\
&= -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t} \right)
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

8.1.2 Decision directed estimate

In this architecture (see Figure 8.2) the phase estimate $\hat{\phi}_{\mathrm{ml}}$ is explicitly computed in accordance with the equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{\phi}_{\mathrm{ml}} &= -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n) \,\mathrm{d}t} \right) && \text{by Theorem 8.1 page 90} \\
&= -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)[\sin(2\pi f_c t)\cos\theta_n + \cos(2\pi f_c t)\sin\theta_n] \,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)[\cos(2\pi f_c t)\cos\theta_n - \sin(2\pi f_c t)\sin\theta_n] \,\mathrm{d}t} \right) \\
&= -\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\sum_n a_n\cos\theta_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \,\mathrm{d}t + \sum_n a_n\sin\theta_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \,\mathrm{d}t}{\sum_n a_n\cos\theta_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\cos(2\pi f_c t) \,\mathrm{d}t - \sum_n a_n\sin\theta_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t) \,\mathrm{d}t} \right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Decision directed implicit estimation implementation

In this architecture (see Figure 8.3 page 92) the phase estimate $\hat{\phi}_{\mathrm{ml}}$ is not explicitly computed. Rather, a sinusoid that has the estimated phase $\hat{\phi}_{\mathrm{ml}}$ is generated using a *voltage controlled oscillator* (VCO). The entire structure which includes the VCO is called a **phase-lock loop** (*PLL*). The PLL operates in accordance with the equation

$$
\sum_n a_n \int_t r(t)\lambda(t-nT)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \theta_n + \hat{\phi}_{\mathrm{ml}}) \,\mathrm{d}t = 0.
$$

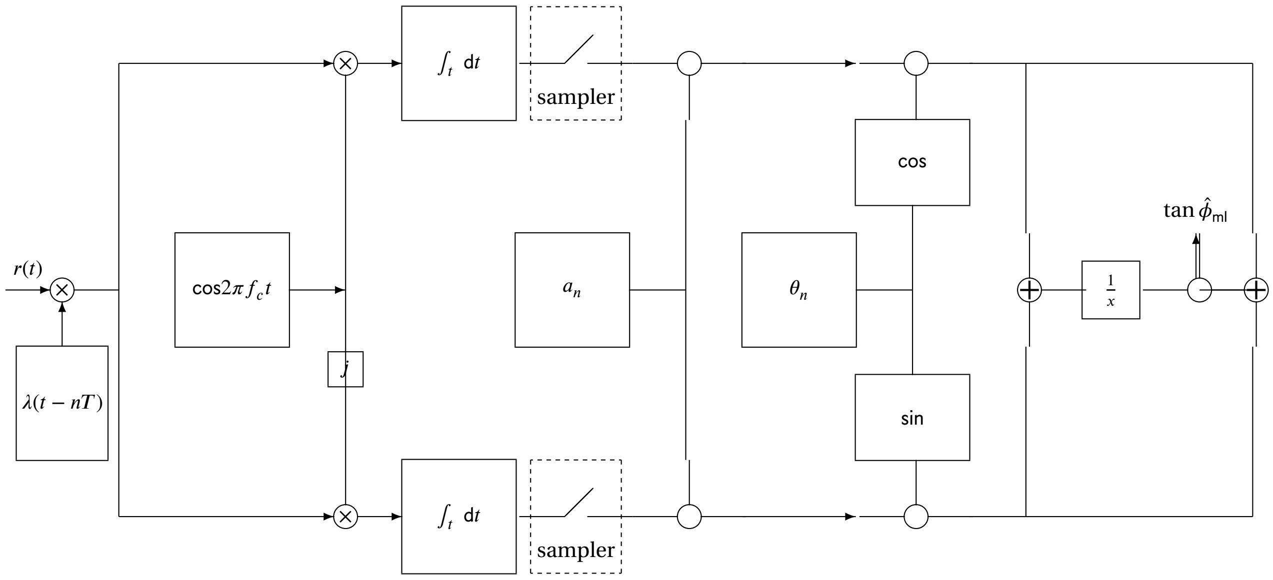


Figure 8.2: Explicit phase estimation implementation

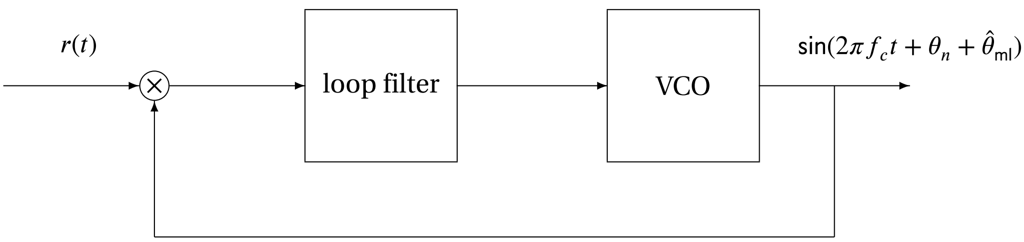


Figure 8.3: Implicit phase estimation implementation

8.1.3 Non-decision directed phase estimation

Definition 8.1.

$$\mathsf{E}_m \hat{\phi}_{\mathsf{ml}} = \arg\max_{\phi} \mathsf{E}_m \int_t r(t) s_m(t;\phi)\, \mathrm{d}t.$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{K-1} \int_{nT}^{(n+1)T} r(t)\cos(2\pi f_c t + \hat{\phi}_{\mathsf{ml}})\, \mathrm{d}t \int_{nT}^{(n+1)T} r(t)\sin(2\pi f_c t + \hat{\phi}_{\mathsf{ml}})\, \mathrm{d}t = 0$$

8.2 Phase Lock Loop

Reference: Kao (2005)

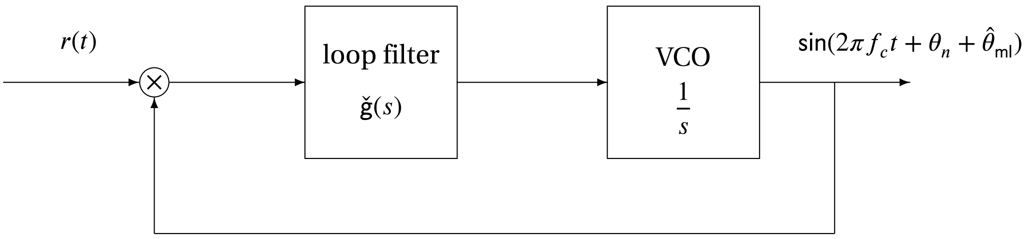


Figure 8.4: Implicit phase estimation implementation

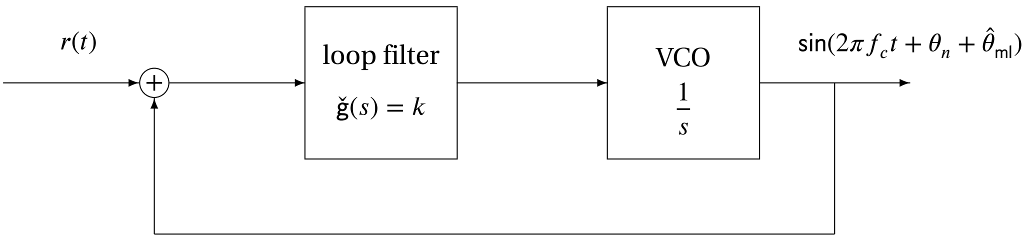


Figure 8.5: Implicit phase estimation implementation

8.2.1 First order response

Loop response

Eventhough the filter response is zero order ($\breve{g}(s) = k$), the total loop response ($\breve{h}(s)$) is first order. A causal first order filter has an exponential impulse response.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\breve{h}(s) &= \frac{\breve{g}(s)\frac{1}{s}}{1+\breve{g}(s)\frac{1}{s}} = \frac{\breve{g}(s)}{s+\breve{g}(s)} = \frac{k}{s+k} = \frac{1}{1+\frac{s}{k}} \\
\breve{h}(s)\big|_{s=i\omega} &= \tilde{h}(\omega) = \frac{1}{1+i\frac{\omega}{k}} \\
|\tilde{h}(\omega)|^2 &= \left|\frac{1}{1+i\frac{\omega}{k}}\right|^2 = \left(\frac{1}{1+i\frac{\omega}{k}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{1+i\frac{\omega}{k}}\right)^* = \frac{1}{1+\left(\frac{\omega}{k}\right)^2} \\
\left[\mathbf{L}ae^{-bt}\mu(t)\right](s) &= \int_t ae^{-bt}\mu(t)e^{-st}\,\mathrm{d}t \\
&= \int_0^\infty ae^{-(s+b)t}e^{-st}\,\mathrm{d}t \\
&= \frac{a}{-(s+b)}e^{-bt}\Big|_0^\infty \\
&= \frac{a}{s+b} \\
h(t) &= ke^{-kt}\mu(t)
\end{aligned}
$$

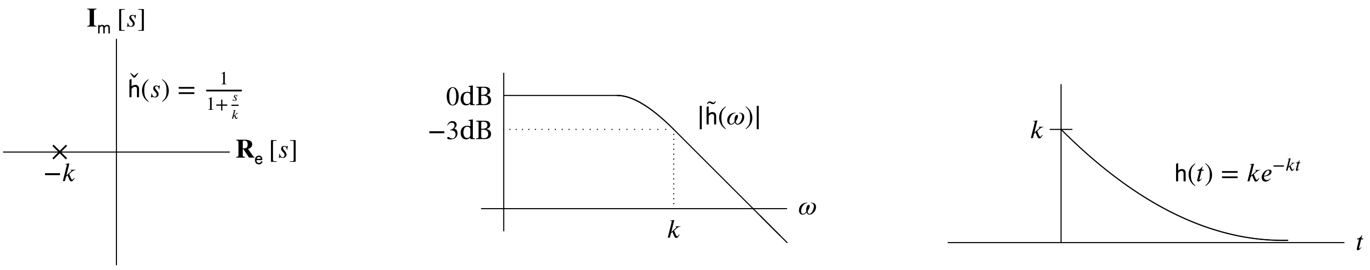


Figure 8.6: First Order Loop response

Phase step response

In Phase Shift Keying (PSK) modulation, the phase of the signal changes abruptly. Thus we are interested in the response of the PLL to a "phase step".

$$
\begin{aligned}
\theta_{\text{in}} &= \theta_0 + \Delta\theta\mu(t) \\
\theta_{\text{vco}} &= h(t) \star \theta_{\text{in}} \\
&= h(t) \star [\theta_0 + \Delta\theta\mu(\tau)] \\
&= h(t) \star \theta_0 + h(t) \star \Delta\theta\mu(\tau) \\
&= \int_\tau h(t-\tau)\theta_0 \,d\tau + \int_\tau h(t-\tau)\Delta\theta\mu(\tau)\,d\tau \\
&= \theta_0 \int_\tau h(t-\tau)\,d\tau + \Delta\theta \int_0^\infty h(t-\tau)\,d\tau \\
&= \theta_0 \int_\tau ke^{-k(t-\tau)}\mu(t-\tau)\,d\tau + \Delta\theta \int_0^\infty ke^{-k(t-\tau)}\mu(t-\tau)\,d\tau \\
&= \theta_0 ke^{-kt} \int_\tau e^{k\tau}\mu(t-\tau)\,d\tau + \Delta\theta ke^{-kt} \int_0^\infty e^{k\tau}\mu(t-\tau)\,d\tau \\
&= \theta_0 ke^{-kt} \int_{-\infty}^t e^{k\tau}\,d\tau + \Delta\theta ke^{-kt}\mu(t) \int_0^t e^{k\tau}\,d\tau \\
&= \theta_0 ke^{-kt} \left.\frac{1}{k}e^{k\tau}\right|_{-\infty}^t + \Delta\theta ke^{-kt}\mu(t) \left.\frac{1}{k}e^{k\tau}\right|_0^t \\
&= \theta_0 ke^{-kt}\frac{1}{k}(e^{kt}-0) + \Delta\theta ke^{-kt}\frac{1}{k}(e^{kt}-1)\mu(t) \\
&= \theta_0 + \Delta\theta(1-e^{-kt})\mu(t)
\end{aligned}
$$

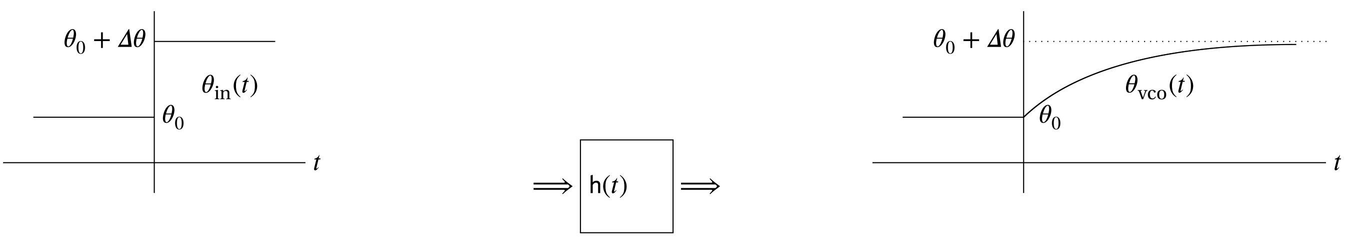


Figure 8.7: First Order Loop phase step response

Frequency step response

In Frequency Shift Keying (FSK) modulation, the frequency of the signal changes abruptly. Thus we are interested in the response of the PLL to a "frequency step". The change in frequency will be modelled as part of the phase.

$$\theta_{\text{in}} = \theta_0 + \Delta\omega t \mu(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\theta_{\text{vco}} &= \mathsf{h}(t) \star \theta_{\text{in}} \\
&= \mathsf{h}(t) \star [\theta_0 + \Delta\omega t \mu(t)] \\
&= \mathsf{h}(t) \star \theta_0 + \mathsf{h}(t) \star \Delta\omega t \mu(t) \\
&= \int_\tau \mathsf{h}(t-\tau)\theta_0 \,\mathrm{d}\tau + \int_\tau \mathsf{h}(t-\tau)\Delta\omega\tau\mu(\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= \theta_0 \int_\tau \mathsf{h}(t-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau + \Delta\omega \int_0^\infty \mathsf{h}(t-\tau)\tau\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= \theta_0 \int_\tau k e^{-k(t-\tau)}\mu(t-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau + \Delta\omega \int_0^\infty k e^{-k(t-\tau)}\mu(t-\tau)\tau\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= \theta_0 k e^{-kt} \int_\tau e^{k\tau}\mu(t-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau + \Delta\omega k e^{-kt} \int_0^\infty e^{k\tau}\mu(t-\tau)\tau\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= \theta_0 k e^{-kt} \int_{-\infty}^t e^{k\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau + \Delta\omega k e^{-kt}\mu(t) \int_0^t \tau e^{k\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= \theta_0 k e^{-kt} \left.\frac{1}{k}e^{k\tau}\right|_{-\infty}^t + \Delta\omega k e^{-kt}\mu(t)\left[\left.\tau\frac{1}{k}e^{k\tau}\right|_0^t - \int_0^t \frac{1}{k}e^{k\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau\right] \\
&= \theta_0 k e^{-kt}\frac{1}{k}(e^{kt}-0) + \Delta\omega k e^{-kt}\mu(t)\left[\frac{1}{k}(te^{kt}-0) - \left.\frac{1}{k^2}e^{k\tau}\right|_0^t\right] \\
&= \theta_0 + \Delta\omega e^{-kt}\mu(t)\left[te^{kt} - \frac{1}{k}(e^{kt}-1)\right] \\
&= \theta_0 + \Delta\omega t\mu(t) - \frac{\Delta\omega}{k}(1-e^{-kt})\mu(t)
\end{aligned}$$

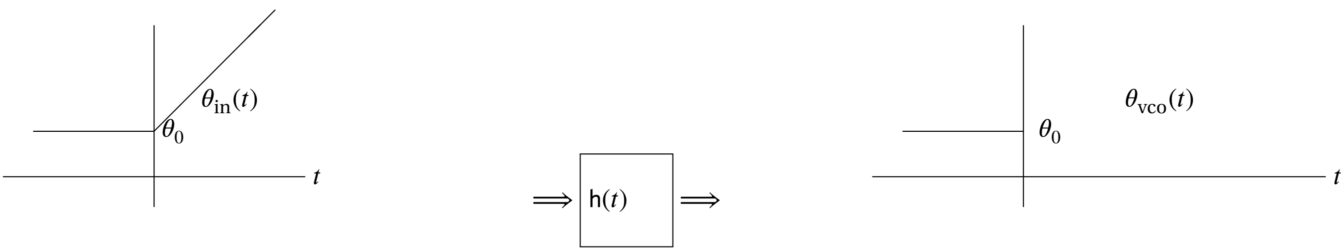


Figure 8.8: First Order Loop phase frequency response

CHAPTER 9

MULTIPATH FADING CHANNEL

9.1 Channel model

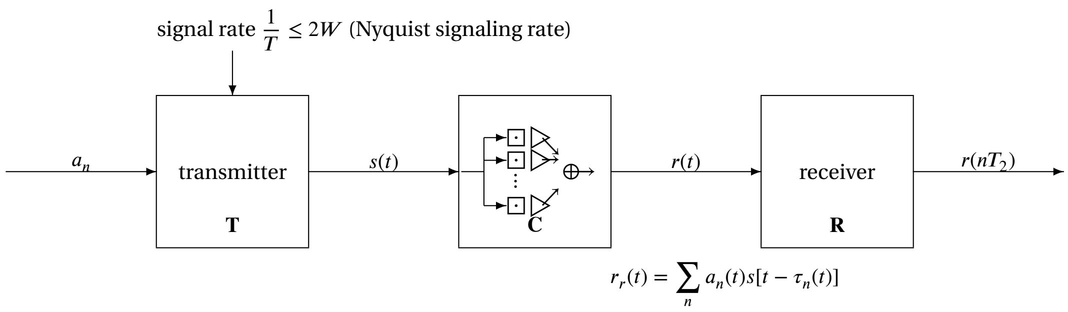


Figure 9.1: Multipath system model

Sources of interference. In the multipath-fading channel, there are two sources of interference: *multipath* and *fading*. These are briefly described next and illustrated in Figure 9.2 (page 98).

- **multipath**: Multipath is a process caused by multiple signal paths in a channel. Each path n is characterized by a scaling coefficient α_n and a delay τ_n.
  These weighted delays create a filter with some frequency response at time t.
  The stochastic bandwidth of this filter is the *coherence bandwidth* $(\Delta f)_c$.
  We would like the bandwidth W of the transmitted signal $s(t)$ to fit comfortably within the coherence bandwidth such that $W \ll (\Delta f)_c$. In this case we say that the channel is *frequency non-selective.*
- **fading**: Fading is a process caused by the values of the scaling coefficients and delays changing with time t. When the path n scaling coefficient α_n tends to zero, the signal traversing that path is attenuated and we say that it "fades". A measure of how fast paths change is the *coherence time* $(\Delta t)_c$. We would like the paths to remain stable for at least as long as a symbol period T such that $T \ll (\Delta t)_c$. In this case we say that the channel is *slowly fading.*

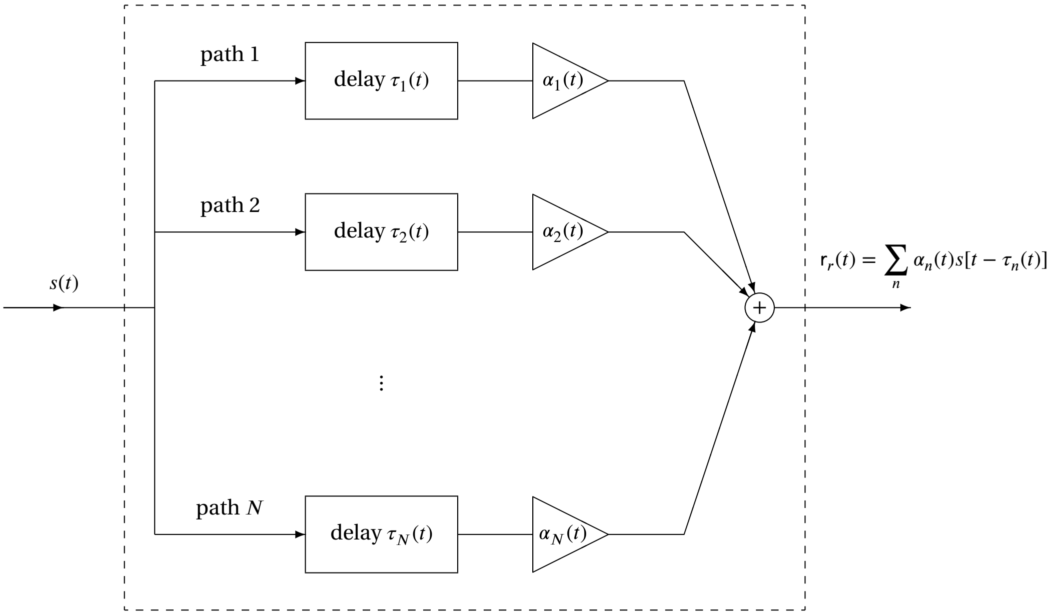


Figure 9.2: Multipath system model

Channel operator space. Many communication systems can be modeled as illustrated in Figure 9.2 (page 98). The system may be *discrete* (finite N) or *continuous* (infinite N); The system response may characterized by its *real-time response* or by its *instantaneous response*. These four possibilities are given in the following table:

$\mathsf{r}(t)$	discrete	continuous
real-time	$\mathsf{r}_r(t) = \sum_n \alpha_n(t)s[t - \tau_n(t)]$	$\mathsf{r}_{rc}(t) = \int_y \alpha(t;y)s[t - \tau(t;y)]\,\mathrm{d}y$
instantaneous	$\mathsf{r}(\tau;t) = \sum_n \alpha_n(t)s[\tau - \tau_n(t)]$	$\mathsf{r}_c(\tau;t) = \int_y \alpha(t;y)s[\tau - \tau(t;y)]\,\mathrm{d}y$

In the instantaneous response, the values of the system parameters $\alpha_n(t)$ and $\tau_n(t)$ are "frozen" at time instant t, the system response is then given as a function of τ. In this chapter, analysis will be performed using the discrete instantaneous response.

Definition 9.1. *Let channel operator* $\mathbf{C} : \{s : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}\} \to \{r : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}\}$ *be such that*

$$[\mathbf{C}s](\tau;t) = \sum_n \alpha_n(t)s[\tau - \tau_n(t)]$$

and under the constraints

1. $\alpha_n(t)$ *is zero mean*
2. $\alpha_n(t)$ *and* $\alpha_m(t)$ *are uncorrelated for* $n \neq m$.
3. $\tau_n(t)$ *and* $\tau_m(t)$ *are uncorrelated for* $n \neq m$.
4. $\alpha(t)$ *and* $\tau(t)$ *are uncorrelated.*
5. *the impulse response of* $\mathbf{C}$ *is WSS with respect to real-time* t.
6. $\tau(t)$ *are continuous with respect to real-time* t.

Let $\mathsf{h} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$ *be the impulse response of* $\mathbf{C}$ *such that*

$$\mathsf{h}(\tau;t) = [\mathbf{C}\delta](\tau;t) = \sum_n \alpha_n(t)\delta[\tau - \tau_n(t)].$$

The following terms apply to the listed quantities:

t:	*real-time*
τ:	*response-time*
α_n:	*reflection coefficient*
τ_n:	*path delay*

Justification in real-world environments for the constraints of Definition 9.1 (page 98) is as follows:

1. This is just for mathematical convenience. We make the DC value equal to "0".
2. The amount of energy reflected from two different surfaces (α_n and α_m) are uncorrelated.
3. The length of two signal paths (τ_n and τ_m) are uncorrelated.
4. The amount of energy reflected from a surface ($\alpha(t)$) and the length of the signal path ($\tau(t)$) are uncorrelated.
5. The statistical properties of the channel do not change with time.
6. The continuity constraint is especially important in the real-time case when $s(t)$ is a very short pulse, or even an impulse $\delta(t)$. For example, in the impulse case, $\delta[t - \tau(t)]$ is only non-zero when $t = \tau(t)$. But if $\tau(t)$ is not continuous, it may never equal t and the impulse is completely lost even when $\alpha(t) \neq 0$. Having the continuity constraint helps fix the problem.

9.2 Receiver statistics

Proposition 9.1.

$$\mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{r}(\tau;t)\right] = 0$$

✎PROOF:

$$\mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{r}(\tau;t)\right] = \mathsf{E}\left[\sum_n \alpha_n(t)s[\tau - \tau_n(t)]\right] = \sum_n \mathsf{E}\left[\alpha_n(t)\right] s[\tau - \tau_n(t)] = \sum_n 0 \cdot \mathsf{E}\left[s[\tau - \tau_n(t)]\right] = 0.$$

✏

Proposition 9.2. *Operation* **C** *is uncorrelated with respect to* τ *(***C** *is white with respect to* τ*).*

✎PROOF: By Definition 9.1 (page 98), $\tau_n(t)$ and $\tau_m(t)$ are uncorrelated for $m \neq n$. Different values of τ correspond to different path delays $\tau_n(t), \tau_m(t)$. Thus **C** is uncorrelated with respect to τ. ✏

Suppose $\mathsf{R}'_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau_1, \tau_2; t_1, t_2) \triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{h}(\tau_1;t_1)\mathsf{h}(\tau_2;t_2)\right]$ is the autocorrelation function of the impulse response $\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)$. We already have two key characteristics of $\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)$:

1. $\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)$ is uncorrelated with respect to τ (by Proposition 9.2 page 99).
   So we only care about the case $\tau = \tau_1 = \tau_2$.
2. $\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)$ is WSS with respect to t (by Definition 9.1 (page 98)).
   So we only care about the case $\Delta t = t_1 - t_2$.

Because of these two characteristics, the autocorrelation function can be simplified to

$$\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau;\Delta t) = \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau;t_1 - t_2) = \mathsf{R}'_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau_1, \tau_2; t_1, t_2).$$

Definition 9.2. *Let* $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$ *be the* ***autocorrelation*** *function of impulse response* $\mathsf{h} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$ *such that*

$$\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau; \Delta t) \triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{h}(\tau; t + \Delta t)\mathsf{h}^*(\tau; t)\right].$$

9.3 Multipath measurement functions

The Fourier transform can operate over $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau; \Delta t)$ with respect to τ, Δt, or both to generate three new functions $\mathrm{R}^{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(f)$, $\mathrm{R}^{L}_{\mathrm{hh}}(f)$, and $\mathrm{R}^{\bowtie}_{\mathrm{hh}}(f)$. This provides a total of four equivalent functions for measuring multipath. These four functions are formally defined in Definition 9.3 (page 100) and illustrated in Figure 9.3 (page 100).

Definition 9.3. *Let* $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{hh}} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$, $\mathrm{R}^{R}_{\mathrm{hh}} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$, $\mathrm{R}^{L}_{\mathrm{hh}} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$, *and* $\mathrm{R}^{\bowtie}_{\mathrm{hh}} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$ *be defined as*

DEF

1. *autocorrelation function* $\quad \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\tau; \Delta t) \triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{h}(\tau; t + \Delta t)\mathsf{h}^*(\tau; t)\right]$
2. *spaced-frequency spaced-time function* $\quad \mathrm{R}^{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\Delta f; \Delta t) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}_{\tau}\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\tau; \Delta t)$
3. *scattering function* $\quad \mathrm{R}^{L}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\tau; \lambda) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}_{\Delta t}\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\tau; \Delta t)$
4. *Doppler function* $\quad \mathrm{R}^{\bowtie}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\Delta f; \lambda) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}_{\tau}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_{\Delta t}\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\tau; \Delta t)$

The arguments of these functions are designated as

τ *delay*
Δf *frequency difference*
Δt *time difference*
λ *Doppler frequency.*

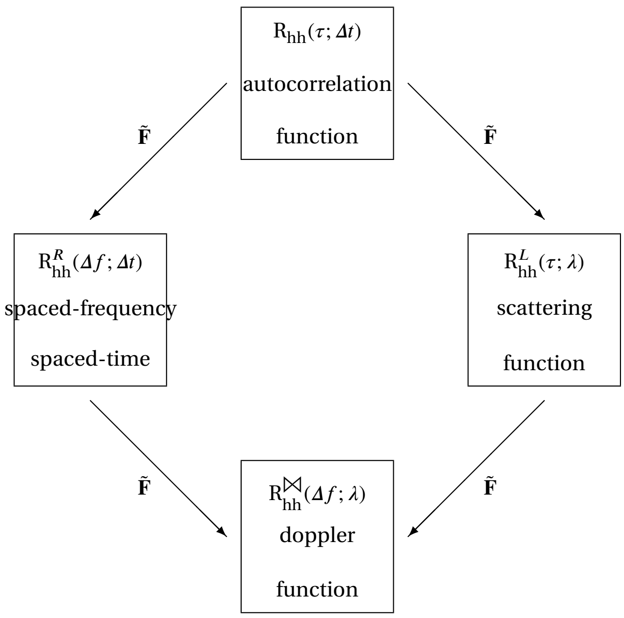


Figure 9.3: Multipath measurement functions

The Fourier transform of a random process (in time) is also a random process (in "frequency"). The Fourier transform of the random process $\mathsf{h}(\tau; t)$ with respect to τ is therefore a random process and has an autocorrelation function. This autocorrelation function is equivalent to the spaced-frequency-spaced-time function $\mathrm{R}^{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\Delta f; \Delta t)$ as shown next.

Proposition 9.3. *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{h}} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{C}$ *be the Fourier transform of* $\mathsf{h} : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}$ *such that*

$$\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f;t) \triangleq [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)](f;t) \triangleq \int_\tau \mathsf{h}(\tau;t)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau.$$

Then

$$\mathsf{E}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f_1;t+\Delta t)\tilde{\mathsf{h}}^*(f_2;t)\right] = \mathrm{R}^R_{\mathsf{hh}}(\Delta f;\Delta t).$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(f_1;t+\Delta t)\tilde{\mathsf{h}}^*(f_2;t)\right] &= \mathsf{E}\left[\int_{\tau_1}\mathsf{h}(\tau_1;t+\Delta t)e^{-i2\pi f_1\tau_1}\,\mathrm{d}\tau_1\left(\int_{\tau_2}\mathsf{h}(\tau_2;t)e^{-i2\pi f_2\tau_2}\,d\tau_2\right)^*\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\int_{\tau_1}\int_{\tau_2}\mathsf{h}(\tau_1;t+\Delta t)e^{-i2\pi f_1\tau_1}\mathsf{h}^*(\tau_2;t)e^{i2\pi f_2\tau_2}\,\mathrm{d}\tau_2\,\mathrm{d}\tau_1\right]\\
&= \int_{\tau_1}\int_{\tau_2}\mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{h}(\tau_1;t+\Delta t)\mathsf{h}^*(\tau_2;t)\right]e^{-i2\pi f_1\tau_1}e^{i2\pi f_2\tau_2}\,\mathrm{d}\tau_2\,\mathrm{d}\tau_1\\
&= \int_{\tau}\mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{h}(\tau;t+\Delta t)\mathsf{h}^*(\tau;t)\right]e^{-i2\pi(f_1-f_2)\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau\\
&= \int_{\tau}\mathrm{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau;\Delta t)e^{-i2\pi\Delta f\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau\\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}_\tau\mathrm{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau;\Delta t)\\
&= \mathrm{R}^R_{\mathsf{hh}}(\Delta f;\Delta t)
\end{aligned}$$

The following proof fails (diverges). However I still include it here anyway. Maybe someone can show me what I did wrong:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{E}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\tau;\lambda_1)\tilde{\mathsf{h}}^*(\tau;\lambda_2)\right] &= \mathsf{E}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\tau;\lambda_1)\tilde{\mathsf{h}}^*(\tau;\lambda_2)\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\int_t\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)e^{-i2\pi\lambda_1 t}\,\mathrm{d}t\left(\int_u\mathsf{h}(\tau;u)e^{-i2\pi\lambda_2 u}\,\mathrm{d}u\right)^*\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\int_t\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)e^{-i2\pi\lambda_1 t}\,\mathrm{d}t\int_u\mathsf{h}^*(\tau;u)e^{i2\pi\lambda_2 u}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]\\
&= \int_t\int_u\mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)\mathsf{h}^*(\tau;u)\right]e^{-i2\pi\lambda_1 t}e^{i2\pi\lambda_2 u}\,\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}t\\
&= \int_t\int_u\mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{h}(\tau;u+\Delta t)\mathsf{h}^*(\tau;u)\right]e^{-i2\pi\lambda_1(u+\Delta t)}e^{i2\pi\lambda_2 u}\,\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}t && \Delta t = t-u \iff t = u+\Delta t\\
&= \int_u\int_{\Delta t}\mathrm{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau;\Delta t)e^{-i2\pi\lambda_1(u+\Delta t)}e^{i2\pi\lambda_2 u}\,\mathrm{d}\Delta t\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_u e^{-i2\pi(\lambda_1-\lambda_2)u}\,\mathrm{d}u\int_{\Delta t}\mathrm{R}_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau;\Delta t)e^{-i2\pi\lambda_1\Delta t}\,\mathrm{d}\Delta t\\
&= \delta(\lambda_1-\lambda_2)\mathrm{R}^L_{\mathsf{hh}}(\tau;\lambda_1)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

9.4 Profile functions

Setting one of the two inputs in each measurement function of Definition 9.3 (page 100) to zero generates four new "profile" functions. The width of these four profile functions are four critical parameters. The four profile functions and four critical parameters are defined in Definition 9.4 (page 102) and illustrated in Figure 9.4 (page 102).

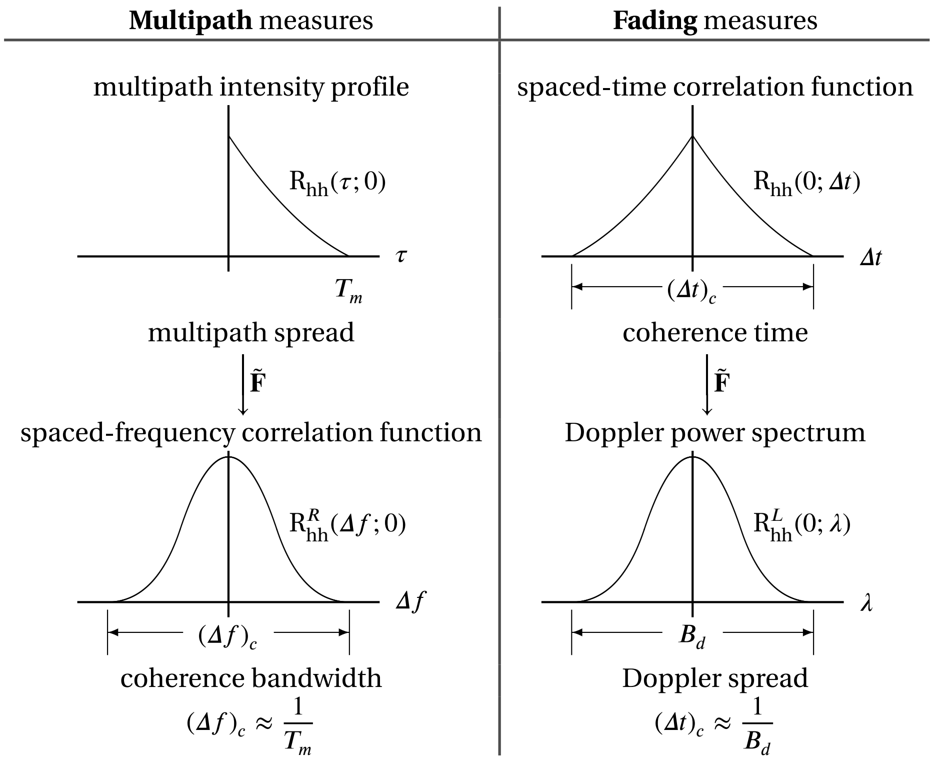


Figure 9.4: Profile functions with critical parameters

Definition 9.4. *The following four* ***profile functions*** *are defined as*

DEF

1.	*multipath intensity profile*	$R_{hh}(\tau;0)$
2.	*spaced-time correlation function*	$R^R_{hh}(0;\Delta t)$
3.	*Doppler power spectrum*	$R^L_{hh}(0;\lambda)$
4.	*spaced-frequency correlation function*	$R^R_{hh}(\Delta f;0)$

The following four ***critical parameters*** *are defined as*

DEF

1.	*multipath spread*	T_m	*is the width of* $R_{hh}(\tau;0)$
2.	*coherence time*	$(\Delta t)_c$	*is the width of* $R^R_{hh}(0;\Delta t)$
3.	*Doppler spread*	B_d	*is the width of* $R^L_{hh}(0;\lambda)$
4.	*coherence bandwidth*	$(\Delta f)_c$	*is the width of* $R^R_{hh}(\Delta f;0)$

Multipath intensity profile $R_{hh}(\tau;0)$

Power. The *multipath intensity profile* $R_{hh}(\tau;0)$ is a measure of the power (the "intensity") of a signal as a function of the path delay τ (each path has a delay τ). This is demonstrated by

$$\begin{aligned}
R_{hh}(\tau;0) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{h}(\tau;t+0)\mathsf{h}^*(\tau;t)\right] \\
&= \mathsf{E}|\mathsf{h}(\tau;t)|^2 \\
&= \mathsf{E}|\mathsf{h}(\tau;0)|^2 && \text{(because } \mathsf{h}(\tau;t) \text{ is WSS with respect to } t).
\end{aligned}$$

Path correlation. As a signal traverses two paths where one is longer and longer paths relative to the other, the resulting two signals are less and less correlated. If they are delayed by more than the *multipath spread* T_m, then they are uncorrelated.

Spaced-time correlation profile $\mathrm{R}^{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(0;\Delta t)$

The *spaced-time correlation profile* $\mathrm{R}^{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(0;\Delta t)$ measures the time auto-correlation of a signal traveling through a single path. A signal is uncorrelated with a delayed version of itself if the delay is greater than the *coherence time* $(\Delta t)_c$.

Doppler power spectrum $\mathrm{R}^{L}_{\mathrm{hh}}(0;\lambda)$

The *Doppler power spectrum* $\mathrm{R}^{L}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\tau;0)$ is a measure of signal power density as a function of λ.

Spaced-frequency correlation function $\mathrm{R}^{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\Delta f;0)$

The *spaced-frequency correlation function* $\mathrm{R}^{R}_{\mathrm{hh}}(\Delta f;0)$ measures the correlation of two sinusoids. If two sinusoids are separted in fequency by more than the *coherence bandwidth* $(\Delta f)_c$, then they are uncorrelated.

9.5 Channel classification

Definition 9.5. *For a signal $s(t)$ in a multipath channel let*

- *T be the signalling period*
- *W be the bandwidth.*

Then $s(t)$ is

DEF

frequency non-selective channel	*if*	$W \ll (\Delta f)_c$	*or*	$W \gg T_m$	$\star$
frequency selective channel	*if*	$W \gg (\Delta f)_c$	*or*	$W \ll T_m$	
slowly fading channel	*if*	$T \ll (\Delta t)_c$	*or*	$T \gg B_d$	$\star$
fast fading channel	*if*	$T \gg (\Delta t)_c$	*or*	$T \ll B_d$.	
underspread channel	*if*	$T_m B_d < 1$			
overspread channel	*if*	$T_m B_d > 1$			

The "underspead/overspread" definitions are related to the *Nyquist signaling rate.*[1] The Nyquist signaling theorem states the signaling rate $1/T$ is related to the transmitted signal bandwidth W by

[1] *Nyquist signaling theorem*: Theorem 6.2 page 62.

$1/T \le 2W$. So at the maximum rate, $TW = 1/2 \approx 1$.

$$\begin{array}{rcll} TW & \approx & 1 & \text{(by Nyquist signaling theorem)} \\ B_d & \ll & T & \text{(for slowly fading channel)} \\ T_m & \ll & W & \text{(for frequency non-selective channel)} \\ T_m B_d & < & TW \approx 1 & \text{(for slowly fading, fequency non-selective channel).} \end{array}$$

9.6 Multipath-fading countermeasures

There are two general classes of multipath-fading countermeasures:

1. diversity techniques
2. Rake receiver.

Diversity techniques for compensating for multipath are[2]

1. frequency diversity
2. time diversity
3. antenna diversity
4. path diversity
5. angle of arrival diversity
6. polarization diversity

The rake receiver is a transversal filter with coefficients optimized for channel operation.

[2] Proakis (2001), pages 821–822

CHAPTER 10

SPREAD SPECTRUM

10.1 Introduction

Communication channel multiple access. A communication system provides the ability for a set of information to be sent from a transmitter to a receiver through a physical channel. If multiple sets of information need to be sent through the channel, then this channel must be shared. Multiple access of a channel can be achieved by separating the information sets in time, frequency, or code. These three multiple access techniques are referred to as

- TDMA Time Division Multiple Access: separation in time
- FDMA Frequency Division Multiple Access: separation in frequency
- CDMA Code Division Multiple Access: separation by code

CDMA Modulation Communication through a channel is typically performed by transmitted information *modulating* (affecting some parameter of) a *carrier* waveform. There are two basic types of CDMA modulation:

- DS Direct Sequence
- FH Frequency Hopping

In FH-CDMA modulation, an information sequence modulates the frequency of a sinusoidal carrier waveform. FH-CDMA will not be further discussed in this chapter.

In DS-CDMA modulation, an information sequence modulates a *pseudo-noise sequence* (pn-sequence). This pn-sequence and the information which modulates it are typically both binary sequences. The modulation operation itself is a simple *modulo 2 addition* operation in mathematics, which is equivalent to an *exclusive OR* operation in logic, which may be implemented with an *exclusive OR gate* in hardware.

Types of PN-Sequences Generating good PN-sequences is one of the keys to effective DS-CDMA communication system design. A sequence is simply a function f whose domain is the set of integers and range is some set R. This report is limited to *binary* pn-sequences, which are functions with range $\{0,1\}$ of the form

$$f : \mathbb{Z} \to \{0,1\}.$$

The most basic binary pn-sequence is the *m-sequence* (maximal length sequence). From this basic sequence, other sequences can be constructed such as *Gold* sequences.

10.2 Generating m-sequences mathematically

10.2.1 Definitions

An m-sequence can be represented as the coefficients of a *polynomial* over a *finite field*. Any *field* is defined by the triplet $(S, +, \cdot)$, where

S:	a set	
$+$:	addition operation in the form	$+ : \quad S \times S \to S$
$\cdot$:	multiplication operation in the form	$\cdot : \quad S \times S \to S$

Definition 10.1. ***Galois Field 2, GF(2)***
GF(2) is the field $(S, +, \cdot)$ *with members of the triplet defined as*

$$\begin{array}{rcl} S &=& \{0,1\} \\ + &:& \{0,1\}\times\{0,1\} \to \{0,1\} \\ \cdot &:& \{0,1\}\times\{0,1\} \to \{0,1\} \end{array} \quad \textit{such that} \quad \begin{array}{cc|c} a & b & a+b \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \quad \textit{and} \quad \begin{array}{cc|c} a & b & a\cdot b \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{array}$$

M-sequences can be generated and represented as *polynomials over GF(2)*. A polynomial over GF(2) is a polynomial with coefficients selected from GF(2). An example of a polynomial over GF(2) is

$$1 + x^2 + x^5 + x^6 + x^7 + x^9.$$

The generation of an m-sequence is equivalent to polynomial division, which is very similar to integer division.

Definition 10.2. ***Polynomial division***
The quantities of polynomial division are identified as follows:

$$\frac{d(x)}{p(x)} = q(x) + \frac{r(x)}{p(x)} \quad \textit{where} \quad \begin{array}{ll} d(x) & \textit{is the dividend} \\ p(x) & \textit{is the divisor} \\ q(x) & \textit{is the quotient} \\ r(x) & \textit{is the remainder.} \end{array}$$

The ring of integers $\mathbb{Z}$ contains some special elements called *primes* which can only be divided[1] by themselves or 1. Rings of polynomials have a similar elements called *primitive polynomials*.

[1] The expression "a divides b" means that b/a has remainder 0.

Definition 10.3. ***Primitive polynomial***
A primitive polynomial $p(x)$ of order n has the properties

1. *$p(x)$ cannot be factored*
2. *the smallest order polynomial that $p(x)$ can divide is $x^{2^n-1}+1=0$.*

Some examples[2] of primitive polynomials over $GF(2)$ are

order	primitive polynomial
2	$p(x) = x^2 + x + 1$
3	$p(x) = x^3 + x + 1$
4	$p(x) = x^4 + x + 1$
5	$p(x) = x^5 + x^2 + 1$
5	$p(x) = x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x + 1$
16	$p(x) = x^{16} + x^{15} + x^{13} + x^4 + 1$
31	$p(x) = x^{31} + x^{28} + 1$

An m-sequence is the remainder when dividing any non-zero polynomial by a primitive polynomial. We can define an *equivalence relation*[3] on polynomials which defines two polynomials as *equivalent with respect to* $p(x)$ when their remainders are equal.

Definition 10.4. ***Equivalence relation*** $\equiv$

$$\text{Let}\quad \frac{a_1(x)}{p(x)} = q_1(x) + \frac{r_1(x)}{p(x)} \quad\text{and}\quad \frac{a_2(x)}{p(x)} = q_2(x) + \frac{r_2(x)}{p(x)}.$$

Then $a_1(x) \equiv a_2(x)$ with respect to $p(x)$ if $r_1(x) = r_2(x)$.

Using the equivalence relation of Definition 10.4, we can develop two very useful equivalent representations of polynomials over GF(2). We will call these two representations the *exponential* representation and the *polynomial* representation.

Example 10.1. By Definition 10.4 and under $p(x) = x^3 + x + 1$, we have the following equivalent representations:

---

[2] Wicker (1995), pages 465–475

[3] An equivalence relation $\equiv$ must satisfy three properties:

1. reflexivity: $a \equiv a$
2. symmetry: if $a \equiv b$ then $b \equiv a$.
3. transitivity: if $a \equiv b$ and $b \equiv c$ then $a \equiv c$.

reference: (Aliprantis and Burkinshaw, 1998, p.7)

$$
\begin{array}{rclcccccc}
\frac{x^0}{x^3+x+1} &=& 0 &+& \frac{1}{x^3+x+1} &\Longrightarrow& x^0 &\equiv& 1 \\
\frac{x^1}{x^3+x+1} &=& 0 &+& \frac{x}{x^3+x+1} &\Longrightarrow& x^1 &\equiv& x \\
\frac{x^2}{x^3+x+1} &=& 0 &+& \frac{x^2}{x^3+x+1} &\Longrightarrow& x^2 &\equiv& x^2 \\
\frac{x^3}{x^3+x+1} &=& 1 &+& \frac{x+1}{x^3+x+1} &\Longrightarrow& x^3 &\equiv& x+1 \\
\frac{x^4}{x^3+x+1} &=& x &+& \frac{x^2+x}{x^3+x+1} &\Longrightarrow& x^4 &\equiv& x^2+x \\
\frac{x^5}{x^3+x+1} &=& x^2+1 &+& \frac{x^2+x+1}{x^3+x+1} &\Longrightarrow& x^5 &\equiv& x^2+x+1 \\
\frac{x^6}{x^3+x+1} &=& x^3+x+1 &+& \frac{x^2+1}{x^3+x+1} &\Longrightarrow& x^6 &\equiv& x^2+1 \\
\frac{x^7}{x^3+x+1} &=& x^4+x^2+x+1 &+& \frac{1}{x^3+x+1} &\Longrightarrow& x^7 &\equiv& 1
\end{array}
$$

Notice that $x^7 \equiv x^0$, and so a cycle is formed with $2^3 - 1 = 7$ elements in the cycle. The monomials to the left of the $\equiv$ are the *exponential* representation and the polynomials to the right are the *polynomial* representation. Additionally, the polynomial representation may be put in a vector form giving a *vector* representation. The vectors may be interpreted as a binary number and represented as a decimal numeral.

exponential	polynomial	*vector*	*decimal*
x^0	1	[001]	1
x^1	x	[010]	2
x^2	x^2	[100]	4
x^3	$x+1$	[011]	3
x^4	x^2+x	[110]	6
x^5	x^2+x+1	[111]	7
x^6	x^2+1	[101]	5

10.2.2 Generating m-sequences using polynomial division

An m-sequence is generated by dividing any non-zero polynomial of order less than m by a primitive polynomial of order m. The m-sequence is the coefficients of the resulting polynomial. M-sequences will repeat every $2^m - 1$ values. This is the maximum sequence length possible when the sequence is generated by division in polynomials over GF(2).

Example 10.2. We can generate an m-sequence of length $2^3 - 1 = 7$ by dividing 1 by the primitive polynomial $x^3 + x + 1$.

$$
\begin{array}{r|l}
 & x^{-3}+x^{-5}+x^{-6}+ \quad x^{-7}+x^{-10}+x^{-12}+x^{-13}+x^{-14}+x^{-17}+\cdots \\
\hline
x^3+x+1 & 1 \\
 & 1+x^{-2}+x^{-3} \\
 & x^{-2}+x^{-3} \\
 & x^{-2}+x^{-4}+x^{-5} \\
 & x^{-3}+x^{-4}+x^{-5} \\
 & x^{-3}+x^{-5}+x^{-6} \\
 & x^{-4}+x^{-6} \\
 & x^{-4}+x^{-6}+x^{-7} \\
 & x^{-7} \\
 & x^{-7}+x^{-9}+x^{-10} \\
 & x^{-9}+x^{-10} \\
 & x^{-9}+x^{-11}+x^{-12} \\
 & x^{-10}+x^{-11}+x^{-12} \\
 & x^{-10}+x^{-12}+x^{-13} \\
 & x^{-11}+x^{-13} \\
 & x^{-11}+x^{-13}+x^{-14} \\
 & x^{-14} \\
 & \vdots
\end{array}
$$

The coefficients, starting with the x^{-1} term, of the resulting polynomial form the m-sequence

$$0010111\;0010111\;\cdots$$

which repeats every $2^3-1=7$ elements.

Note that the division operation in Example 10.2 can be performed using vector notation rather than polynomial notation.

Example 10.3. Generate an m-sequence of length $2^3-1=7$ by dividing 1 by the primitive polynomial x^3+x+1 using vector notation.

$$
\begin{array}{r|cccccccccccccccccc}
 & & . & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & \cdots \\
\hline
1011 & 1 & . & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \\
 & 1 & & 0 & 1 & 1 & & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
 & 0 & & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & & & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & & & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & & & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & & & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & & & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & & & & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & & & & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & & & & & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & & \\
 & & & & & & & & & & & & & & \vdots & & & &
\end{array}
$$

The coefficients, starting to the right of the binary point, is again the sequence

$$0010111\;0010111\;\cdots.$$

10.2.3 Multiplication modulo a primitive polynomial

If $p(x)$ is a primitive polynomial, by Definition 10.4 the product of two polynomials is equivalent (with respect to $p(x)$) of the product *modulo* $p(x)$. The ability to multiplying two polynomials modulo a primitive polynomial is very useful for manipulating m-sequences.

In general, the product of two polynomials can be evaluated as follows. Let

$$\begin{aligned} a(x) &\triangleq a_m x^m + a_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \cdots + a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0 \\ b(x) &\triangleq b_m x^m + b_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \cdots + b_2x^2 + b_1x + b_0 \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} a(x)b(x) &= \left(a_m x^m + a_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \cdots + a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0\right)\left(b_m x^m + b_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \cdots + b_2x^2 + b_1x + b_0\right) \\ &= a_0b_0 + (a_0b_1 + a_1b_0)x + (a_0b_2 + a_1b_1 + a_2b_0)x^2 + \cdots + a_mb_mx^{2m} \\ &= \left(\sum_{i=0}^{m-1} x^i \sum_{j=0}^{i} a_j b_{i-j}\right) + \left(\sum_{i=m}^{2m} x^i \sum_{j=0}^{2m-i} a_{i-m+j} b_{m-j}\right) \end{aligned}$$

The product modulo $p(x)$ is obtained when the terms involving x^m, x^{m+1}, ..., x^{2m} are replaced by their equivalent polynomial representations (see Section 10.2.1).

Example 10.4. Suppose we want to find $(a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0)(b_2x^2 + b_1x + b_0)$ modulo $x^3 + x + 1$.

$$\begin{aligned} a(x)b(x) &= (a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0)(b_2x^2 + b_1x + b_0) \\ &= a_0b_0 + (a_0b_1 + a_1b_0)x + (a_0b_2 + a_1b_1 + a_2b_0)x^2 + (a_1b_2 + a_2b_1)x^3 + a_2b_2x^4 \\ &= a_0b_0 + (a_0b_1 + a_1b_0)x + (a_0b_2 + a_1b_1 + a_2b_0)x^2 + (a_1b_2 + a_2b_1)(x+1) + a_2b_2(x^2 + x) \\ &= (a_0b_0 + a_1b_2 + a_2b_1) + (a_0b_1 + a_1b_0 + a_1b_2 + a_2b_1 + a_2b_2)x + (a_0b_2 + a_1b_1 + a_2b_0 + a_2b_2)x^2 \end{aligned}$$

Notice that if the a_i and b_i coefficients are known, the resulting product has only three terms.

10.3 Generating m-sequences in hardware

Section 10.2 has already demonstrated how to generate m-sequences mathematically. If we further know how to implement each of those mathematical operations efficiently in hardware, we are done. That is what this section is about.

10.3.1 Field operations

The mapping tables for GF(2) addition and multiplication given in Definition 10.1 (page 106) are exactly the same as those for the hardware *exclusive OR (XOR)* gate and the *AND* gate, respectively.

10.3.2 Polynomial multiplication and division using DF1

Suppose we want to construct a circuit to compute the rational expression $f(x)\frac{b(x)}{a(x)}$. This is a common problem in *Digital Signal Processing (DSP)*; we can borrow results from there. DSP is generally concerned with polynomials over the field of real or complex numbers. However, a field is a field, and all fields (whether, real, complex, or GF(2)) support both addition and multiplication;[4] the rules change somewhat, but the basic structure is the same regardless. Alternatively, just as a typical digital filter operates over the real or complex field, **the m-sequence generator** described in this section **is a digital filter which operates over the field GF(2)**.

A sequential hardware multiplier-divider for polynomials is simple.

- Each x in $f(x)$, $b(x)$, and $a(x)$ represents a delay of one clock cycle. In DSP terminology, a delay of one clock cycle is represented by z^{-1}. Thus, $x = z^{-1}$.
- Let $f(x) = f_0 + f_1 x + f_2 x^2 + \cdots$.
  Then let $\dot{f}(n)$ be the sequence $\dot{f}(i) = f_i$, with $i \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- Let $b(x) = b_0 + b_1 x + b_2 x^2 + \cdots + b_m x^m$.
  Let $\dot{b}(n)$ be the sequence $\dot{b}(i) = b_i$, with $i \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- Let $a(x) = 1 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \cdots + a_m x^m$.
  Let $\dot{a}(n)$ be the sequence $\dot{a}(i) = a_i$, with $i \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Then the multiplier-divider (for any mathematical field) can be implemented as shown in Figure 10.1. This structure is called the *Direct Form I* implementation(Oppenheim and Schafer, 1999)344; it implements the rational expression

$$f(x)\frac{b_m x^m + b_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \cdots + b_2 x^2 + b_1 x + b_0}{a_m x^m + a_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \cdots + a_2 x^2 + a_1 x + 1}$$

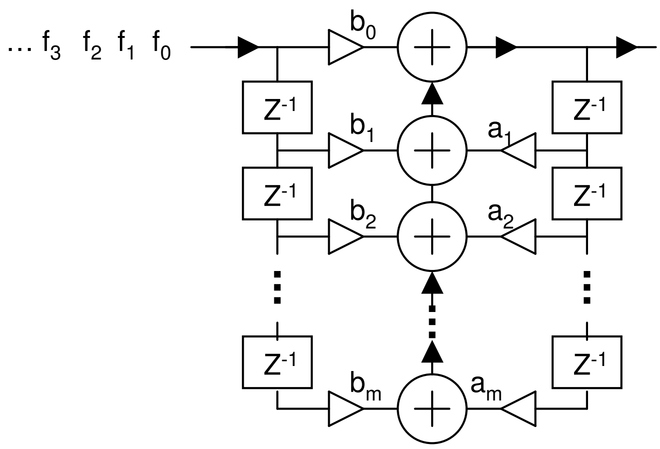


Figure 10.1: Direct Form I Implementation for $f(x)\dfrac{b(x)}{a(x)}$

In GF(2), the blocks in the figure can be implemented very simply:

- Each $x = z^{-1}$ element can be implemented as a simple D flip-flop.
- An $a_i = 1$ or $b_i = 1$ coefficient is implemented as a wire (closed circuit).
- An $a_i = 0$ or $b_i = 0$ coefficient is implemented as a no-connect (open circuit).

Example 10.5. Suppose we want to build a hardware circuit to generate an m-sequence specified by the rational expression

$$\frac{x^2 + x}{x^3 + x + 1}.$$

[4]**Fields:** Roughly speaking, a *group* is a set together with an operation on that set. An *additive group* is a set S with an addition operation $+ : S \times S \to S$. A *multiplicative group* is a set S with a multiplication operation $\cdot : S \times S \to S$. A *field* is constructed using two groups: An addition group and a multiplication group. See Appendix ?? page ??. Reference: (?, p.123).

To do this we can set $f(x) = 1$, $b(x) = x^2 + x$ and $a(x) = x^3 + x + 1$. The resulting structure is shown in Figure 10.2. Notice that the two flip-flops on the left are for initialization only and are not used in

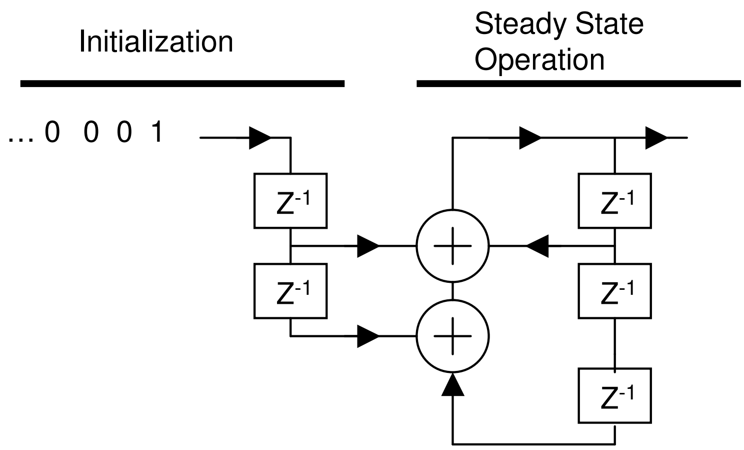


Figure 10.2: Direct Form I Implementation for Example 10.5

the steady state operation of the m-sequence generator. In fact, they can be eliminated altogether by proper initialization of the flip-flops on the right.

10.3.3 Polynomial multiplication and division using DF2

The Direct Form I structure shown in Figure 10.1 can be transformed to a new structure by transformation rules based on *Mason's Gain Formula*.[5] The resulting structure is known as Direct Form II(Oppenheim and Schafer, 1999)347 and is illustrated in Figure 10.3. Again, when using the DF2

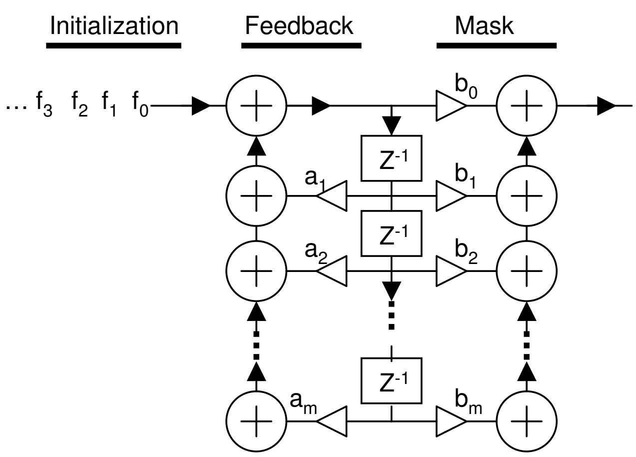


Figure 10.3: Direct Form II Implementation

structure for m-sequence generation, the $\dot{f}(n)$ sequence can be eliminated by proper initialization of the delay elements (flip flops).

[5] The transformation rules are as follows:

1. Reverse the direction of all signal paths.
2. Replace all nodes with addition operators.
3. Replace all addition operators with nodes.

(Oppenheim and Schafer, 1999, p.363)

10.3.4 Hardware polynomial modulo multiplier

The mathematics of polynomial multiplication modulo a primitive polynomial was already presented in Section 10.2.3 and demonstrated in Example 10.4 (page 110). It is straight forward to implement these equations in hardware:

- every $a_i b_j$ bitwise multiply operation is implemented with an AND gate
- every + between consecutive $a_i b_j$ terms is implemented with an XOR gate

Note that **the hardware modulo multiplier can be implemented using only combinatorial logic**(!); No sequential circuitry (such as flip-flops) are needed.

CHAPTER 11

LINE CODING

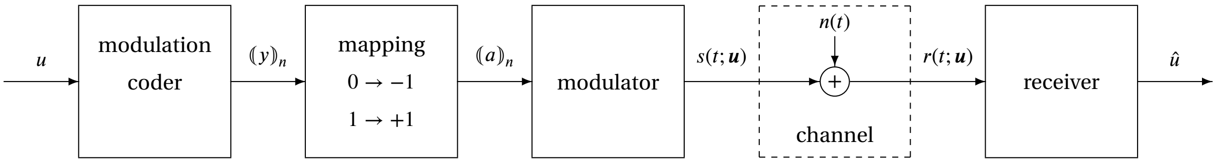


Figure 11.1: Modulation coding system model

This chapter discusses *modulation coding*. Modulation codes are also called *line codes* or *data translation codes*. (Proakis, 2001)579 Modulation coding is a transform $T : u \rightarrow (\!(y)\!)_n$ from an input sequence u to an encoded sequence $(\!(y)\!)_n$ (see Figure 11.1). Modulation codes typically seek to accomplish two objectives:

1. time shaping: eliminate long strings of ones or zeros to improve synchronization or make media access more reliable.
2. spectral shaping: modify spectral characteristics such as reducing the DC component.

A particular modulation code may be specified using several methods including

1. state machine
2. transition matrix
3. algebraic equations.

11.1 Channel model

The modulation coding system model is illustrated in Figure 11.1.

The *modulation coding state machine* is a transform $T : (u_n) \rightarrow (y_n)$. Modulation coding can be modeled as a *state-space* with input u_n, output y_n, state $\boldsymbol{x}_n$ and state equations [1]

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{x}_{n+1} &= f_1(\boldsymbol{x}_n, u_n) \\ y_n &= f_2(\boldsymbol{x}_n, u_n). \end{aligned}$$

Other quantities appearing in Figure 11.1 can be expressed as

$$\begin{array}{lrcl} \text{mapping output:} & a_n &=& 2y_n - 1 \\ \text{channel signal:} & s(t) &=& \sum_n a_n \lambda(t - nT) \\ \text{receive signal:} & r(t) &=& s(t) + n(t). \end{array}$$

The signaling waveform $\lambda(t)$ can be any of a number of waveforms. A common choice is the simple pulse function illustrated in Figure 11.2. But this assumes the channel supports an infinitely wide bandwidth signal. Bandlimited choices of signaling waveforms are described in Chapter 6 (page 59).

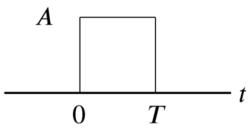


Figure 11.2: Pulse signaling waveform

11.2 Non-Return to Zero Modulation (NRZ)

11.2.1 Description

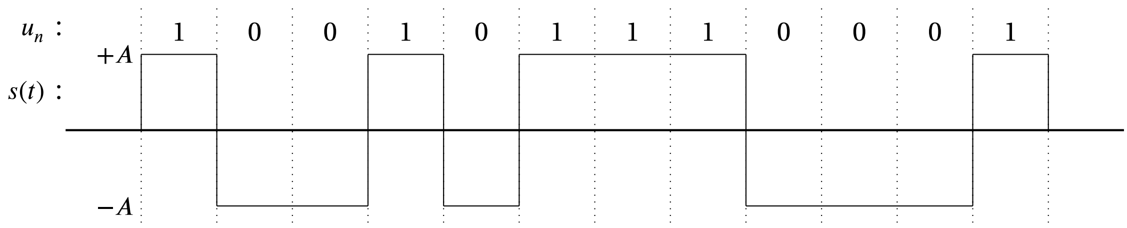


Figure 11.3: NRZ modulated waveform

The non-return to zero (NRZ) waveform is illustrated in Figure 11.3.

11.2.2 Statistics

Note that even if the data sequence u_n is an IID and WSS [2] sequence, the channel signal $s(t)$ is **not** WSS. Specifically, the autocorrelation $\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau, t)$ of $s(t)$ is not just a function of the time difference τ, but also a function of time t. This is due to the fact that within a bit period, if one point is known

[1] III ⟨\protect\char"2026\relax/State_Space_Models.html⟩
[2] IID: independently and identically distributed. WSS: wide sense stationary

then all the points in that bit period are known. Thus the points in a single bit period are certainly not independent and their autocorrelation is a function of time.

However, it is still possible to compute the time average of the autocorrelation and the Fourier transform of this average (similar to the spectral density). This is described in Theorem 11.1 and illustrated in Figure 11.4.

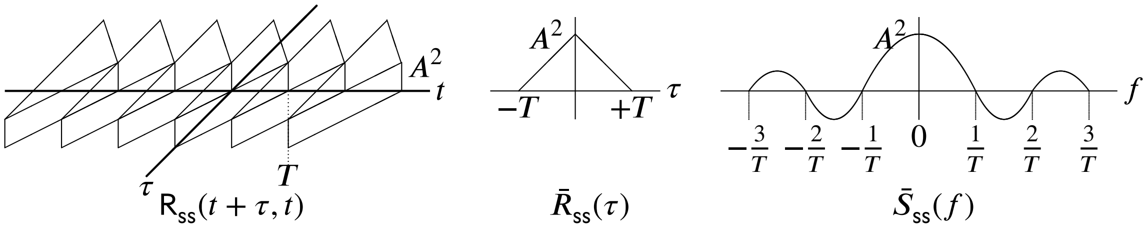


Figure 11.4: Statistics of NRZ modulated waveform

Theorem 11.1. *Let*

- $u_n : \mathbb{Z} \to \{0,1\}$ *be an IID WSS random process with probabilities*
$$\mathsf{P}\{u_n = 0\} = \mathsf{P}\{u_n = 1\} = \frac{1}{2} \qquad \text{for all } n$$
- $s(t)$ *be the waveform NRZ modulated by* u_n
- $\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t)$ *be the autocorrelation of* $s(t)$ *such that*
$$\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t) \triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[s(t+\tau)s(t)\right]$$
- $\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)$ *be the time average of* $\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t)$.
$$\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t)\,\mathrm{d}t$$
- $\bar{S}_{ss}(f)$ *be the Fourier transform of* $\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)$ *such that*
$$\bar{S}_{ss}(f) \triangleq \int_\tau \bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t) &= \begin{cases} A^2 & : \tau \le (t \mod [T]) \le T \\ 0 & : \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\
\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau) &= \begin{cases} A^2\left(1-\frac{|\tau|}{T}\right) & : |\tau| \le T \\ 0 & : |\tau| > T. \end{cases} \\
\bar{S}_{xx}(f) &= A^2\left[\frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\pi f T}\right]^2.
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF: For time intervals $\tau \le (t \mod [T]) \le T$, identical portions of $s(t+\tau)$ and $s(t)$ overlap and the resulting autocorrelation is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t) &= \mathsf{E}\left[s(t+\tau)s(t)\right] \\
&= (-A)(-A)\mathsf{P}\{[s(t+\tau)=-A]\wedge[s(t)=-A]\} + (-A)(+A)\mathsf{P}\{[s(t+\tau)=-A]\wedge[s(t)=-A]\} + \\
&\quad (+A)(-A)\mathsf{P}\{[s(t+\tau)=-A]\wedge[s(t)=-A]\} + (+A)(+A)\mathsf{P}\{[s(t+\tau)=-A]\wedge[s(t)=-A]\} \\
&= (-A)(-A)\frac{1}{2} + (-A)(+A)\cdot 0 + (+A)(-A)\cdot 0 + (+A)(+A)\frac{1}{2} \\
&= A^2
\end{aligned}$$

For all other time intervals, especially $|\tau| > T$, $s(t+\tau)$ and $s(t)$ are statistically independent and hence

$$\mathsf{R}_{ss}(\tau) = \mathsf{E}\left[s(t+\tau)s(t)\right] = \mathsf{E}\left[s(t+\tau)\right]\mathsf{E}\left[s(t)\right] = 0 \cdot 0 = 0.$$

Alternatively,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau, t) &= \mathsf{E}\left[s(t+\tau)s(t)\right] \\
&= (-A)(-A)\mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t+\tau) = -A] \wedge [s(t) = -A]\right\} + (-A)(+A)\mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t+\tau) = -A] \wedge [s(t) = -A]\right\} + \\
&\quad (+A)(-A)\mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t+\tau) = -A] \wedge [s(t) = -A]\right\} + (+A)(+A)\mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t+\tau) = -A] \wedge [s(t) = -A]\right\} \\
&= (-A)(-A)\frac{1}{4} + (-A)(+A)\frac{1}{4} + (+A)(-A)\frac{1}{4} + (+A)(+A)\frac{1}{4} \\
&= A^2 - A^2 - A^2 + A^2 \\
&= 0.
\end{aligned}$$

11.2.3 Detection

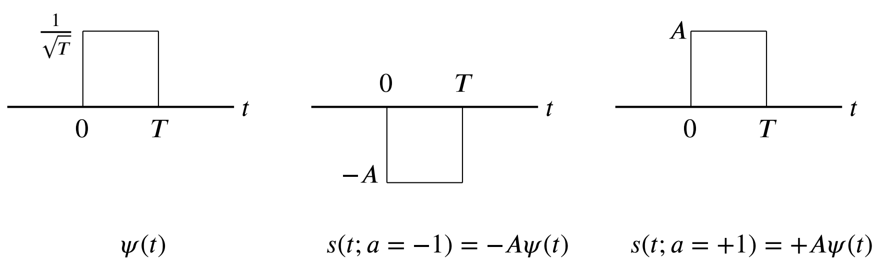


Figure 11.5: NRZ critical functions

Proposition 11.1. *The function*

$$\psi(t) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} & \text{for } 0 \le t < T \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

forms an ***orthonormal basis*** *for the NRZ signaling waveforms such that*

$$\begin{aligned}
s(t; a = -1) &= -A\psi(t) \\
s(t; a = +1) &= +A\psi(t).
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi(t) \,|\, \psi(t) \rangle &= \left\langle \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} \,|\, \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} \right\rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} \langle 1 \,|\, 1 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T 1 \cdot 1 \, dt \\
&= \frac{1}{T} t |_0^T \\
&= \frac{1}{T}(T - 0) \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

✏

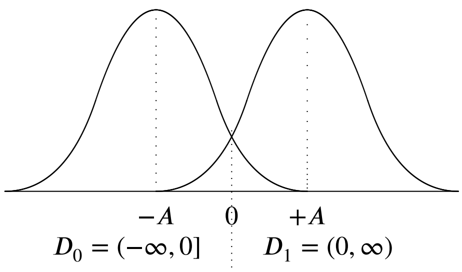


Figure 11.6: Decision statistics for NRZ modulation in AWGN channel

Proposition 11.2. *Let*

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{r}(-1) &\triangleq \langle r(t) | s(t; a = -1) \textit{ was transmitted} \,|\, \psi(t) \rangle \\
\dot{r}(+1) &\triangleq \langle r(t) | s(t; a = +1) \textit{ was transmitted} \,|\, \psi(t) \rangle \,.
\end{aligned}$$

Then $\dot{r}(-1)$ and $\dot{r}(+1)$ are ***independent*** *random variables with marginal distributions*

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{r}(-1) &\sim \mathsf{N}\left(-A, \sigma^2\right) \\
\dot{r}(+1) &\sim \mathsf{N}\left(+A, \sigma^2\right)
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF: This follows directly from Theorem 4.5 (page 36). ✏

Proposition 11.3. *The value*

$$\dot{r} \triangleq \langle r(t) \,|\, \psi(t) \rangle$$

is a sufficient statistic for optimal ML detection of the transmitted symbol a.

The optimal estimate $\hat{a}_{\mathsf{ml}}$ of a is

$$\hat{a} = \begin{cases} -1 & : \dot{r} \le 0 \\ +1 & : \dot{r} > 0. \end{cases}$$

✎PROOF: This is a result of Theorem 4.6 (page 36). ✏

Proposition 11.4. *The probability of detection error in an NRZ modulation system*

$$\mathsf{P}\{error\} = \mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{a}{N_o}\right].$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{P}\{error\} &= \mathsf{P}\left\{s_0(t) \text{ sent } \wedge \dot{r} > 0\right\} + \mathsf{P}\left\{s_1(t) \text{ sent } \wedge \dot{r} < 0\right\} \\
&= \mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{r} > 0 | s_0(t) \text{ sent }\right\} \mathsf{P}\left\{s_0(t) \text{ sent }\right\} + \mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{r} < 0 | s_1(t) \text{ sent }\right\} \mathsf{P}\left\{s_1(t) \text{ sent }\right\} \\
&= 2\mathsf{P}\left\{\dot{r} > 0 | s_0(t) \text{ sent }\right\} \frac{1}{2} \\
&= \mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{\mathsf{E}\dot{r}}{\sqrt{\operatorname{var}\dot{r}}}\right] \\
&= \mathsf{Q}\left[\frac{a}{N_o}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

✏

11.3 Return to Zero Modulation (RZ)

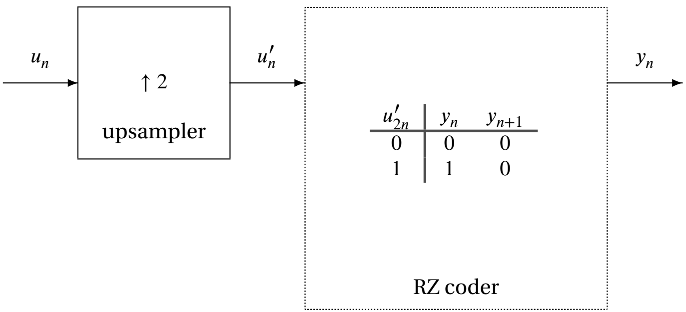


Figure 11.7: RZ modulation coder

The non-return to zero (RZ) modulation coder is illustrated in Figure 11.7. An example RZ modulated waveform is illustrated in Figure 11.8. An RZ modulated waveform $s(t)$ can be decomposed into a deterministic periodic waveform $d(t)$ and a random waveform $r(t)$ such that $s(t) = d(t) + r(t)$ (see Figure 11.9 page 121).[3]

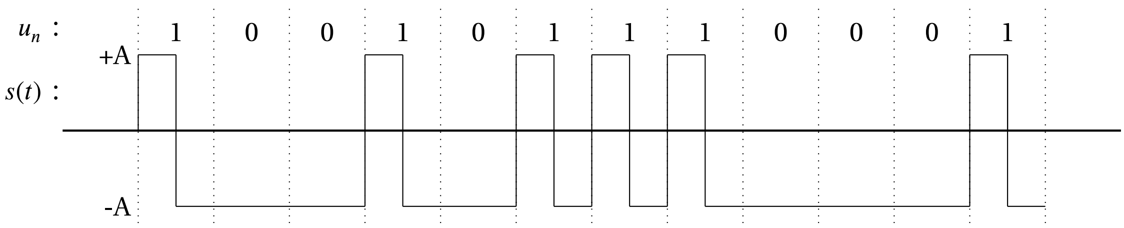


Figure 11.8: RZ waveform

Theorem 11.2. *Let*

[3] Kao (2005)

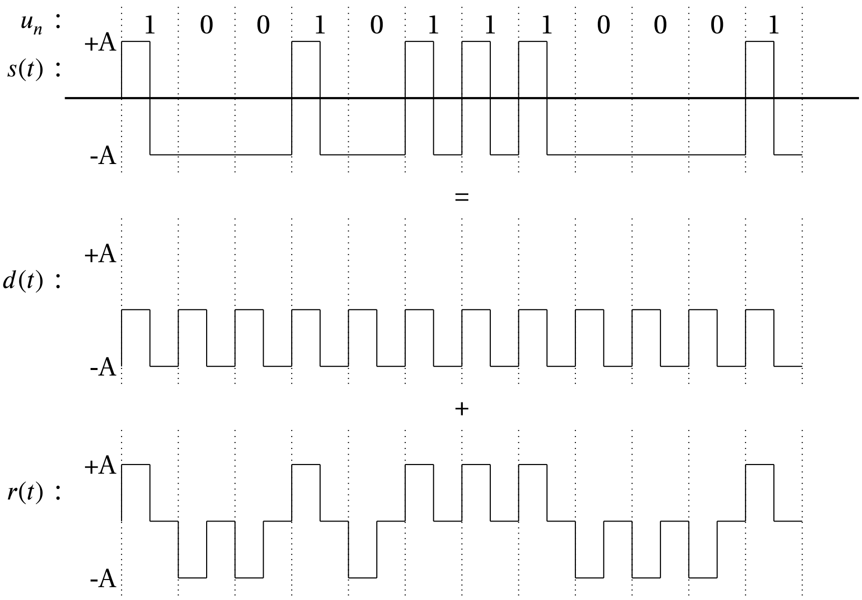


Figure 11.9: Decomposition of RZ modulated waveform

- *$u_n : \mathbb{Z} \to \{0,1\}$ be an IID WSS random process with probabilities*

$$\mathsf{P}\{u_n = 0\} = \mathsf{P}\{u_n = 1\} = \frac{1}{2} \qquad \textit{for all } n$$

- *$s(t)$ be the waveform RZ modulated by u_n*
- *$d(t)$ be the deterministic periodic waveform illustrated in Figure 11.9*
- *$\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t)$ be the autocorrelation of $s(t)$ such that*

$$\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t) \triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[s(t+\tau)s(t)\right]$$

- *$\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)$ be the time average of $\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t)$.*

$$\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t)\, \mathsf{d}t$$

- *$\bar{S}_{ss}(f)$ be the Fourier transform of $\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)$ such that*

$$\bar{S}_{ss}(f) \triangleq \int_\tau \bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, \mathsf{d}\tau.$$

Then

$$\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t) = \begin{cases} A^2 + d(t+\tau)d(t) & : \tau \le (t \mod [T]) \le \frac{T}{2} \\ d(t+\tau)d(t) & : \textit{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau) = \frac{A^2}{2}\left(1-\frac{2|\tau|}{T}\right)\chi_{[-T/2,T/2]}(\tau) + \frac{A^2}{2}\sum_n\left(1-\frac{2|\tau-nT|}{T}\right)\chi_{[-T/2,T/2]}(\tau-nT)$$

$$\bar{S}_{xx}(f) = \frac{A^2T}{4}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\pi f\frac{T}{2}\right)}{\pi f\frac{T}{2}}\right]^2 + \frac{A^2T}{4}\sum_k\left[\frac{\sin\left(\pi k\frac{1}{2}\right)}{\pi k\frac{1}{2}}\right]^2 \delta\left(f-\frac{k}{T}\right)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau,t) &= \mathsf{E}\left[s(t+\tau)s(t)\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[[d(t+\tau)r(t+\tau)][d(t)+r(t)]\right]\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[d(t+\tau)d(t)+d(t+\tau)r(t)+r(t+\tau)d(t)+r(t+\tau)r(t)\right]\\
&= d(t+\tau)d(t)+d(t+\tau)\mathsf{E}\left[r(t)\right]+d(t)\mathsf{E}\left[r(t+\tau)\right]+\mathsf{E}\left[r(t+\tau)r(t)\right]\\
&= \mathsf{R}_{rr}(t+\tau,t)+d(t+\tau)d(t)+d(t+\tau)\cdot 0+d(t)\cdot 0\\
&= \mathsf{R}_{rr}(t+\tau,t)+d(t+\tau)d(t)
\end{aligned}$$

For time intervals $\tau \le (t \mod [T]) \le T/2$, identical portions of $r(t+\tau)$ and $r(t)$ overlap and the resulting autocorrelation is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{rr}(t+\tau,t) &= (-A)(-A)\mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t+\tau)=-A]\wedge[s(t)=-A]\right\}+(-A)(+A)\mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t+\tau)=-A]\wedge[s(t)=-A]\right\}+\\
&\quad (+A)(-A)\mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t+\tau)=-A]\wedge[s(t)=-A]\right\}+(+A)(+A)\mathsf{P}\left\{[s(t+\tau)=-A]\wedge[s(t)=-A]\right\}\\
&= (-A)(-A)\frac{1}{2}+(-A)(+A)\cdot 0+(+A)(-A)\cdot 0+(+A)(+A)\frac{1}{2}\\
&= A^2
\end{aligned}$$

For all other time intervals, especially $|\tau| > T$, $r(t+\tau)$ and $r(t)$ are statistically independent and hence

$$\mathsf{R}_{rr}(\tau) = \mathsf{E}\left[r(t+\tau)r(t)\right] = \mathsf{E}\left[r(t+\tau)\right]\mathsf{E}\left[r(t)\right] = 0\cdot 0 = 0.$$

To compute the time average $\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)$, we need to find the average of both $\mathsf{R}_{rr}(t+\tau,t)$ and $d(t+\tau)d(t)$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{T}\int_0^T d(t+\tau)d(t)\,\mathrm{d}t &= \frac{1}{T}\frac{A^2T}{2}\sum_n\left(1-\frac{|\tau-nT|}{T/2}\right)\chi_{[-T/2,T/2]}(\tau-nT)\\
&= \frac{A^2}{2}\sum_n\left(1-\frac{2|\tau-nT|}{T}\right)\chi_{[-T/2,T/2]}(\tau-nT)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \mathsf{R}_{rr}(t+\tau,t)\,\mathrm{d}t = \begin{cases} \frac{A^2}{2}\left(1-\frac{2|\tau|}{T}\right) & : |\tau|\le\frac{T}{2}\\ 0 & : |\tau|>\frac{T}{2}.\end{cases}$$

$$\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau) = \frac{A^2}{2}\left(1-\frac{2|\tau|}{T}\right)\chi_{[-T/2,T/2]}(\tau)+\frac{A^2}{2}\sum_n\left(1-\frac{2|\tau-nT|}{T}\right)\chi_{[-T/2,T/2]}(\tau-nT)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{S}_{xx}(f) &= \frac{A^2T}{4}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\pi f\frac{T}{2}\right)}{\pi f\frac{T}{2}}\right]^2+\frac{A^2T}{4}\sum_k\left[\frac{\sin\left(\pi\frac{k}{T}\frac{T}{2}\right)}{\pi\frac{k}{T}\frac{T}{2}}\right]^2\delta\left(f-\frac{k}{T}\right)\\
&= \frac{A^2T}{4}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\pi f\frac{T}{2}\right)}{\pi f\frac{T}{2}}\right]^2+\frac{A^2T}{4}\sum_k\left[\frac{\sin\left(\pi k\frac{1}{2}\right)}{\pi k\frac{1}{2}}\right]^2\delta\left(f-\frac{k}{T}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

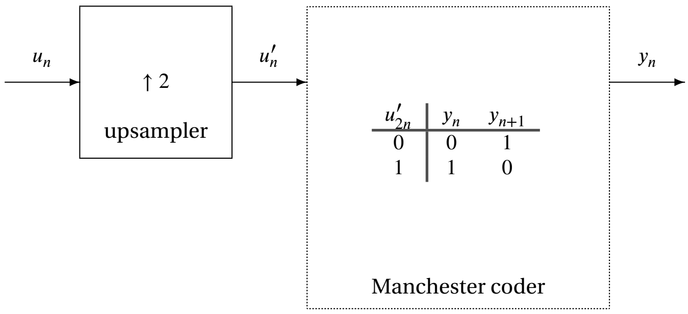


Figure 11.10: Manchester modulation coder

11.4 Manchester Modulation

The Manchester modulation coder is illustrated in Figure 11.10. An example RZ modulated waveform is illustrated in Figure 11.11.

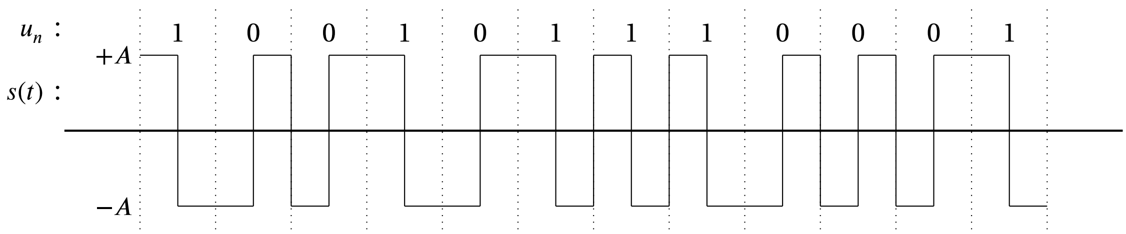


Figure 11.11: Manchester modulated waveform

Theorem 11.3. *Let*

- $u_n : \mathbb{Z} \to \{0, 1\}$ *be an IID WSS random process with probabilities*

$$\mathsf{P}\{u_n = 0\} = \mathsf{P}\{u_n = 1\} = \frac{1}{2} \qquad \textit{for all } n$$

- $s(t)$ *be the waveform Manchester modulated by* u_n
- $\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau, t)$ *be the autocorrelation of* $s(t)$ *such that*

$$\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau, t) \triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[s(t+\tau)s(t)\right]$$

- $\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)$ *be the time average of* $\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau, t)$.

$$\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau, t)\,\mathrm{d}t$$

- $\bar{S}_{ss}(f)$ *be the Fourier transform of* $\bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)$ *such that*

$$\bar{S}_{ss}(f) \triangleq \int_\tau \bar{R}_{ss}(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau.$$

Then

$$\mathsf{R}_{ss}(t+\tau, t) = \begin{cases} 0 & : 0 \le (t \mod [T]) < \tau \\ +A^2 & : \tau \le (t \mod [T]) < \frac{T}{2} \\ -A^2 & : \frac{T}{2} \le (t \mod [T]) < \tau + \frac{T}{2} \\ +A^2 & : \tau + \frac{T}{2} \le (t \mod [T]) < T \end{cases}$$

$$\bar{R}_{\mathsf{ss}}(\tau) = \begin{cases} A^2\left(1-3\frac{|\tau|}{T}\right) & : 0 \le |\tau| < \frac{T}{2} \\ -\frac{A^2}{2}\left(1-\frac{|\tau|}{T}\right) & : \frac{T}{2} \le |\tau| < T \end{cases}$$

$$\bar{S}_{\mathsf{xx}}(f) \stackrel{?}{=} A^2T\frac{\sin^4 \pi fT/2}{\pi fT/2}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{S}_{\mathsf{ss}}(f) &= \int_\tau \bar{R}_{\mathsf{ss}}(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= \int_\tau \bar{R}_{\mathsf{ss}}(\tau)\cos(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau - i\int_\tau \bar{R}_{\mathsf{ss}}(\tau)\sin(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= 2\int_0^T \bar{R}_{\mathsf{ss}}(\tau)\cos(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau + 0 \\
&= 2\int_0^{T/2} A^2\left(1-3\frac{\tau}{T}\right)\cos(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau - 2\int_{T/2}^{T}\frac{A^2}{2}\left(1-\frac{\tau}{T}\right)\cos(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= 2A^2\int_0^{T/2}\cos(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau - A^2\int_{T/2}^{T}\cos(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau - \frac{6A^2}{T}\int_0^{T/2}\tau\cos(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau + \frac{A^2}{T}\int_{T/2}^{T}\tau\cos(2\pi f\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= A^2T\left(\frac{\sin\pi fT}{\pi fT}\right) - A^2T\left(\frac{\sin 2\pi fT}{2\pi fT}\right) + \frac{A^2T}{2}\left(\frac{\sin\pi fT}{\pi fT}\right) - \frac{6A^2T}{4}\frac{\sin\pi fT}{\pi fT} - \frac{6A^2}{4\pi f}\frac{\cos\pi fT}{\pi fT} \\
&\quad + \frac{6A^2}{(2\pi f)^2T} + A^2T\frac{\sin 2\pi fT}{2\pi fT} + \frac{A^2}{2\pi f}\frac{\cos 2\pi fT}{2\pi fT} - \frac{A^2T}{4}\frac{\sin\pi fT}{\pi fT} - \frac{T}{4\pi f}\frac{\cos\pi fT}{\pi fT} \\
&\stackrel{?}{=} A^2T\frac{\sin^4\pi fT/2}{\pi fT/2}
\end{aligned}$$

I have not been able to solve this well yet. The last line is taken from reference Kao (2005). ✏

11.5 Non-Return to Zero Modulation Inverted (NRZI)

NRZI is a modulation code, however it is *not* a runlength-limited code. NRZI has memory and is therefore a kind of state machine.

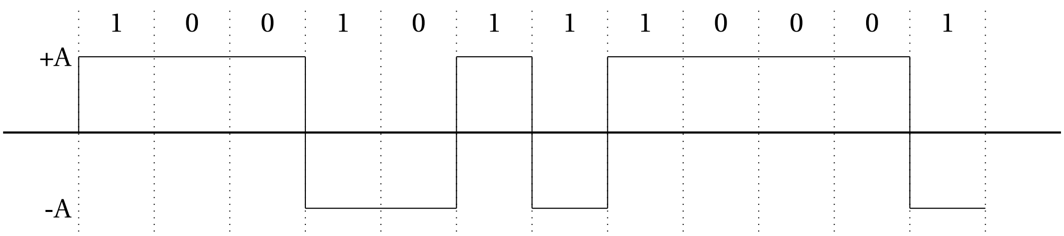


Figure 11.12: NRZI waveform

Definition 11.1. ***Non-Return to Zero Inverted (NRZI)*** *is a modulation code with input sequence u_n and output sequence y_n such that (see Figure 11.13)*

$$y_n = (y_{n-1} + u_n) \mod [2].$$

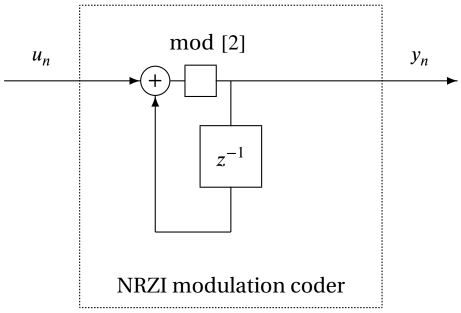


Figure 11.13: NRZI modulation coder

Detection. Detection in an AWGN channel can be performed using a trellis (see Figure 11.14) or single statistic decision regions. A very clean decision region approach is the *duobinary ISI solution* described in Section 6.3 (page 68).

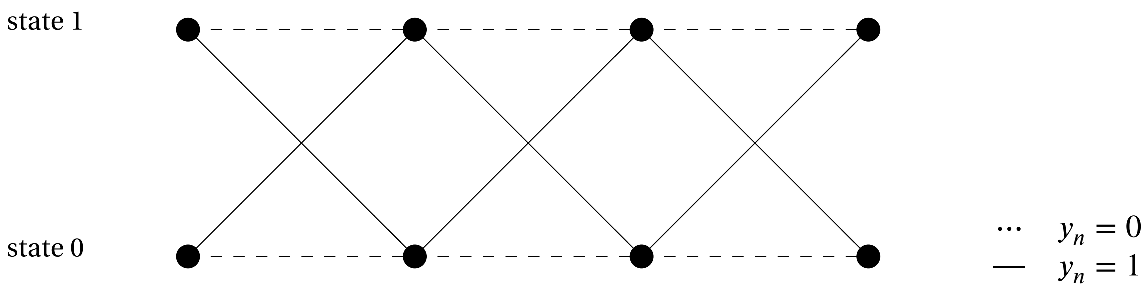


Figure 11.14: NRZI trellis diagram

11.6 Runlength-limited modulation codes

Definitions

Definition 11.2. *A* (d, k)*-**coded sequence** is any binary sequence such that*

$$d \le \text{(the number of 0s between any two consecutive 1s)} \le k.$$

A $(d, k; n)$*-**coded sequence** is a* (d, k)*-coded sequence of length* n*.*

Definition 11.3. ***Fixed length code set,*** $X(d, k; n)$**.**
The set $X(d, k; n)$ *is a set of* $(d, k; n)$*-coded sequences such that if*

$$(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n), (b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n) \in X(d, k; n)$$

then

$$(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n, b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n)$$

is also a (d, k)*-coded sequence.*

Definition 11.4. ***Variable length code set,*** $\bar{X}(d, k; n)$**.**
The set $\bar{X}(d, k; n)$ *is a set of* $(d, k; m)$*-coded sequences such that* $m \le n$ *and if*

$$(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k), (b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_m) \in \bar{X}(d, k; n)$$

then

$$(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_k, b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_m)$$

is also a (d,k)*-coded sequence.*

State diagram. A (d,k) code can be modeled as a state diagram with $k+1$ states such that the output y_n is

$$y_n = \begin{cases} 1 & : \text{state} = 0 \\ 0 & : \text{state} \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

and transitions between states are as shown in Figure 11.15.

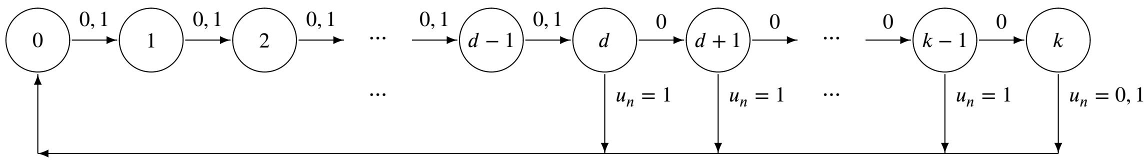


Figure 11.15: (d,k)-coded sequence state diagram

Definition 11.5. *The* ***transition matrix*** $\mathbf{D}_0$ *is the* $N \times N$ *square matrix with elements* a_{mn} *such that*

$$a_{mn} = \begin{cases} 1 & : \text{coding state changes from } m \text{ to } n \text{ when input is } 0. \\ 0 & : \text{coding state does not change when input is } 0. \end{cases}$$

The ***transition matrix*** $\mathbf{D}_1$ *is the* $N \times N$ *square matrix with elements* b_{mn} *such that*

$$b_{mn} = \begin{cases} 1 & : \text{coding state changes from } m \text{ to } n \text{ when input is } 1. \\ 0 & : \text{coding state does not change when input is } 1. \end{cases}$$

The ***transition matrix*** $\mathbf{D}$ *is the* $N \times N$ *square matrix with elements* d_{mn} *such that*

$$d_{mn} = a_{mn} \vee b_{mn}$$

where $\vee$ *is the* INCLUSIVE-OR OPERATION.

Transition matrices. The transition matrices for a (d,k) code are as follows:

$$\mathbf{D}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{D}_1 = \begin{array}{c|c} & \text{row} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & & \ddots & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix} & \begin{matrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ d-1 \\ d \\ d+1 \\ \vdots \\ k-1 \end{matrix} \end{array} \quad \mathbf{D} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & & \ddots & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

k	$d=0$	$d=1$	$d=2$	$d=3$	$d=4$	$d=5$	$d=6$
2	0.8791	0.4057					
3	0.9468	0.5515	0.2878				
4	0.9752	0.6174	0.4057	0.2232			
5	0.9881	0.6509	0.4650	0.3218	0.1823		
6	0.9942	0.6690	0.4979	0.3746	0.2669	0.1542	
7	0.9971	0.6793	0.5174	0.4057	0.3142	0.2281	0.1335
8	0.9986	0.6853	0.5293	0.4251	0.3432	0.2709	0.1993
9	0.9993	0.6888	0.5369	0.4376	0.3630	0.2979	0.2382
10	0.9996	0.6909	0.5418	0.4460	0.3746	0.3158	0.2633
11	0.9998	0.6922	0.5450	0.4516	0.3833	0.3282	0.2804
12	0.9999	0.6930	0.5471	0.4555	0.3894	0.3369	0.2924
13	0.9999	0.6935	0.5485	0.4583	0.3937	0.3432	0.3011
14	0.9999	0.6938	0.5495	0.4602	0.3968	0.3478	0.3074
15	0.9999	0.6939	0.5501	0.4615	0.3991	0.3513	0.3122
∞	1.0000	0.6942	0.5515	0.4650	0.4057	0.3620	0.3282

Table 11.1: $C(d,k)$: Capacities of (d,k)-coded sequences

Characteristics

Symbol mapping. The symbols to be transmitted are mapped into the elements of $X(d,k;n)$. The maximum number of symbols that can be mapped is

$$\lfloor \log_2 |X(d,k;n)| \rfloor,$$

where $|\cdot| : X \to \mathbb{Z}$ represents the order of a set X.

Definition 11.6. *The **capacity** of a (d,k)-coded sequence is*

$$C(d,k) \triangleq \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{n} \lfloor \log_2 |X(d,k;n)| \rfloor.$$

Theorem 11.4. *Let*

- $\mathbf{D}$ *be the transition matrix of* (d,k)
- $\lambda_{\max}$ *be the largest eigenvalue of* $\mathbf{D}$.

Then the capacity $C(d,k)$ *is*

$$C(d,k) = \log_2 \lambda_{\max}.$$

The capacities for several $X(d,k)$-coded sequences are given in Table 11.1. (Proakis, 2001)582

Definition 11.7. *The **efficiency** of the* $X(d,k;n)$ *code set is*

$$\text{efficiency} \triangleq \frac{\textit{code rate of } X(d,k;n)}{C(d,k)}.$$

*The **efficiency** of the* $\bar{X}(d,k;n)$ *code set is*

$$\text{efficiency} \triangleq \frac{\textit{average code rate of } X(d,k;n)}{C(d,k)}.$$

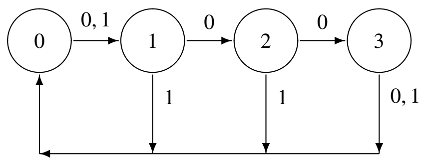


Figure 11.16: (1, 3)-coded sequence state diagram

Examples: fixed-length, no memory

Example 11.1. **Code set** $X(1,3;4)$**:**

Transition matrices:

$$\mathbf{D}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{D}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{D} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Capacity:

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbf{D} - \lambda \mathbf{I}| &= \begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -\lambda & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} \\ &= -\lambda \begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} - 1 \cdot \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} \\ &= -\lambda(-\lambda^3) - 1(\lambda^2 + \lambda + 1) \\ &= \lambda^4 - \lambda^2 - \lambda - 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$C(d,k) = \log_2(\lambda_{\max}) = \log_2(1.46557123) = 0.551463$$

There are multiple sets that are $X(1,3;4)$ code sets:

	$X(1,3;4)$ code sets		
u_n	set1	set2	set3
0	0010	1000	0100
1	0101	1010	0101

The efficiency for each of these sets is

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{code rate}}{C(d,k)} = \frac{1/4}{0.5515} = 0.4533$$

Example 11.2. **Code set** $X(2,\infty,4)$**:**

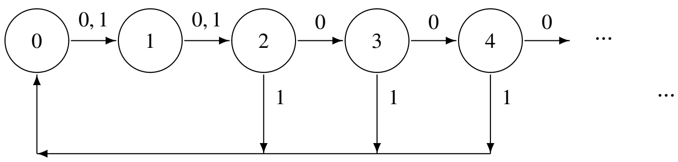


Figure 11.17: $(2,\infty)$-coded sequence state diagram

u_n	code
0	0001
1	0010

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{code rate}}{C(d,k)} = \frac{1/4}{0.5515} = 0.4533$$

Example 11.3. **Code set** $X(0,3,4)$**:**

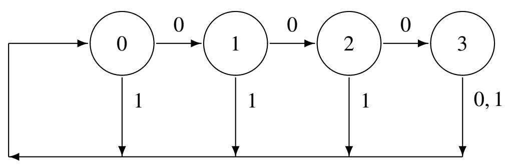


Figure 11.18: $(0,3)$-coded sequence state diagram

The state diagram is shown in Figure 11.18.

The transition matrices are

$$\mathbf{D}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{D}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{D} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

To find the channel capacity:

$$\begin{aligned}
|\mathbf{D} - \lambda\mathbf{I}| &= \begin{vmatrix} 1-\lambda & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -\lambda & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} \\
&= (1-\lambda)\begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} - 1 \cdot \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} \\
&= (1-\lambda)(-\lambda^3) - 1(\lambda^2 - (-\lambda - 1)) \\
&= \lambda^4 - \lambda^3 - \lambda^2 - \lambda - 1
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} C(d,k) &= \log_2(\lambda_{\max}) \\ &= \log_2(1.927562) \\ &= 0.946777 \end{aligned}$$

u_n	code
000	0100
001	0101
010	0110
011	1001
100	1010
101	1011
110	1100
111	1101

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{code rate}}{C(d,k)} = \frac{3/4}{0.9468} = 0.7921$$

Example: fixed-length, with memory

Example 11.4. **Code set** $X(1,3;2)$ **(Miller code):**

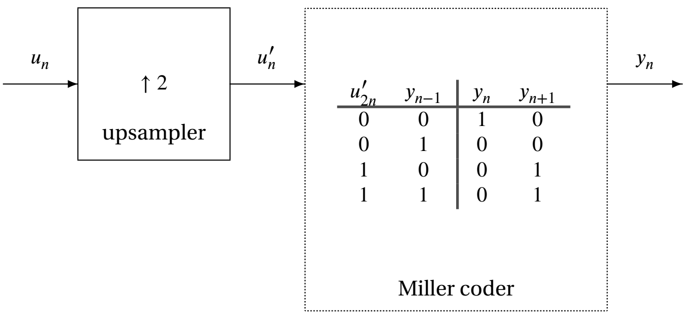


Figure 11.19: Miller modulation coder

The state diagram, transition matrices, and capacity for $(1,3)$-coded sequences is shown in Example 11.1 (page 128). The operation is illustrated in Figure 11.19 and described in the following table:

u'_{2n}	y_{n-1}	y_n	y_{n+1}
0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0
1	0	0	1
1	1	0	1

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{code rate}}{C(d,k)} = \frac{1/2}{0.5515} = 0.9066$$

Compare this to the memoryless $X(1,3,4)$ code which has efficiency 0.4533 (Example 11.1 page 128). In this case, allowing the code to have memory has doubled the efficiency.

Example: variable-length, no memory

Example 11.5. **Code set $\bar{X}(2,7)$:**
This code has both variable length input and variable length output. Many disk storage devices designed by IBM use this code.

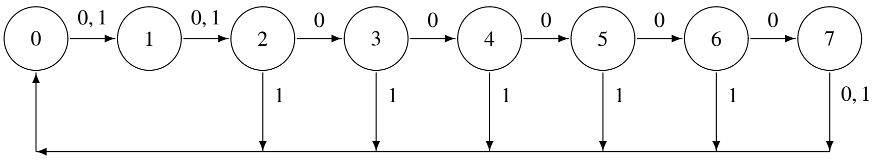


Figure 11.20: (2,7)-coded sequence state diagram

$$\mathbf{D}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0&1&0&0&0&0&0&0\\ 0&0&1&0&0&0&0&0\\ 0&0&0&1&0&0&0&0\\ 0&0&0&0&1&0&0&0\\ 0&0&0&0&0&1&0&0\\ 0&0&0&0&0&0&1&0\\ 0&0&0&0&0&0&0&1\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{D}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0&1&0&0&0&0&0&0\\ 0&0&1&0&0&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{D} = \begin{bmatrix} 0&1&0&0&0&0&0&0\\ 0&0&1&0&0&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&1&0&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&1&0&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&1&0&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&1&0\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&1\\ 1&0&0&0&0&0&0&0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C(d,k) = \log_2(\lambda_{\max}) = \log_2(1.431343) = 0.517370$$

The code words are (Proakis, 2001)584

u_n	*code*
10	1000
11	0100
011	00100
010	001000
000	100100
0011	00100100
0010	00001000.

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{code rate}}{C(d,k)} = \frac{1/2}{0.517370} = 0.9664$$

11.7 Miller-NRZI modulation code

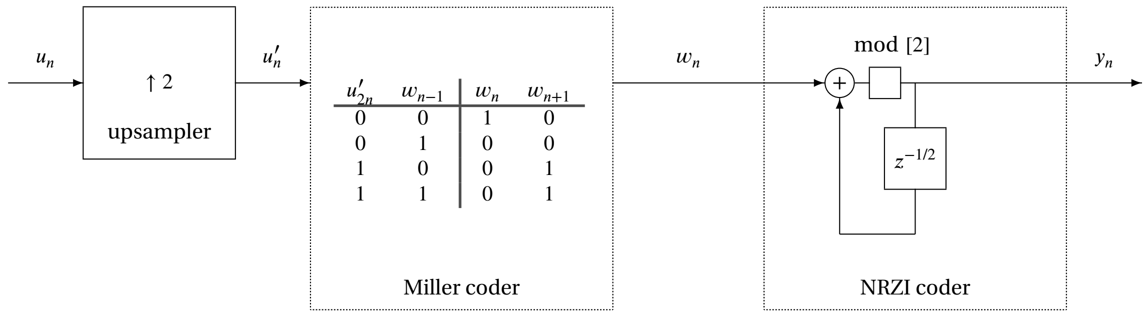


Figure 11.21: Miller-NRZI modulation coder

Miller-NRZI modulation coding is commonly called

- Miller coding
- Miller with precoding
- Delay modulation.

Miller-NRZI is a concatenation of a *Miller coder* (Example 11.4) and an NRZI coder (Section 11.5). Equations governing the operation of the coder include

$$\begin{aligned} y_n &= y_{n-1} \oplus w_n \\ y_{n+1} &= y_n \oplus w_{n+1}. \end{aligned}$$

The composition of the Miller and NRZI operations produces the following state table:

input u'_{2n}	state w_{n-1}	state y_{n-1}	w_n	w_{n+1}	output y_n	output y_{n+1}
0	0	0	1	0	1	1
0	0	1	1	0	0	0
0	1	0	0	0	0	0
0	1	1	0	0	1	1
1	0	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	1	0	1	1	0
1	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	0

For each input bit u_n, there are two new output bits (y_n, y_{n+1}) and two new state bits (w_{n+1}, y_{n+1}). Notice that because

$$\begin{aligned} \text{old state} &\equiv (w_{n-1}, y_{n-1}) = (y_{n-1} \oplus y_{n-2}, y_{n-1}) \equiv f(\text{old output}) \\ \text{current state} &\equiv (w_{n+1}, y_{n+1}) = (y_{n+1} \oplus y_n, y_{n+1}) \equiv f(\text{current output}) \end{aligned}$$

the output pair (y_n, y_{n+1}) also contains the state information and can therefore also be used as the labels for the state of the system. This can be viewed as more convenient because then the output pair and the state pair are identical. In this case, state diagrams and trellises are easier to illustrate since we only have to label the states, while the outputs do not have to be labeled because the output pair (y_n, y_{n+1}) is identical to the state pair (y_n, y_{n+1}).

Conversion from the state pairs to the equivalent output pairs are as follows:

w_{n+1}	y_{n+1}	y_n	y_{n+1}
0	0	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

w_{n-1}	y_{n-1}	y_{n-2}	y_{n-1}
0	0	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

Using these conversions, a new equivalent state table is as follows:

input	old output		new output	
u'_{2n}	y_{n-2}	y_{n-1}	y_n	y_{n+1}
0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	1	1
0	1	0	0	0
0	1	1	0	0
1	0	0	0	1
1	0	1	1	0
1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	1	0

A trellis diagram equivalent to this state table can be found in Figure 11.22. Notice the symmetry of the trellis. In particular, if we flip the trellis about an imaginary center axis while leaving the state labels undisturbed, the same trellis results.

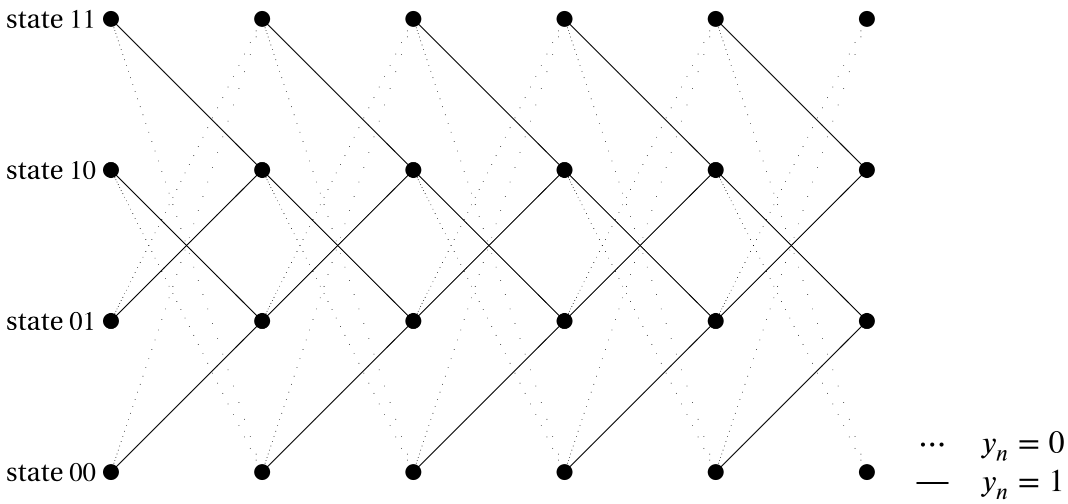


Figure 11.22: Miller-NRZI trellis diagram

CHAPTER 12

NETWORK DETECTION

12.1 Detection

For detection, we need

1. Cost function: for hard decisions, its range must be linearly ordered. For soft decisions, it can be a lattice.

2. system joint and marginal probabilities (for Bayesian detection)

12.2 Bayesian Estimation

Definition 12.1.

DEF

H	$\triangleq$	$\{h_1, h_2, h_3, \ldots\}$	*set of hypotheses*
$\boldsymbol{D}$	$\triangleq$	$\{D_1, D_2, D_3, \ldots\}$	*partition—decision regions*
X	$\triangleq$	$\{X_1, X_2, X_3, \ldots\}$	*set of sensor inputs*

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{C}(h; P) &= \min_{\boldsymbol{D}} \sum_i \mathsf{P}\left\{\left[X \in D_i\right] \wedge \left[H \neq h_i\right]\right\} \\
&= \min_{\boldsymbol{D}} \sum_i \mathsf{P}\left\{X \in D_i \mid H \neq h_i\right\} \mathsf{P}\left\{H \neq h_i\right\} \\
&= \min_{\boldsymbol{D}} \sum_i \sum_{j \neq i} \left[1 - \mathsf{P}\left\{X \in D_i \mid H = h_i\right\}\right] \sum_{j \neq i} \left[1 - \mathsf{P}\left\{H = h_i\right\}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\hat{h} = \arg_h \mathsf{C}(h; P)$$

12.3 Joint Gaussian Model

Assume convexity ...

$$
\begin{aligned}
\boldsymbol{D} &= \arg\min_{\boldsymbol{D}} \mathsf{C}(h;\boldsymbol{P}) \\
&= \arg_{\boldsymbol{D}}\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{D}}\sum_i \int_{D_i} \mathsf{p}(\boldsymbol{x}|H\neq h_i)\underbrace{\mathsf{p}(H\neq h_i)}_{c}d\boldsymbol{x} = 0\right\} \\
&= \arg_{\boldsymbol{D}}\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{D}}c\sum_i \int_{D_i} \mathsf{p}(\boldsymbol{x}|H\neq h_i)d\boldsymbol{x} = 0\right\} \\
&= \arg_{\boldsymbol{D}}\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{D}}\sum_i \left[1-\sum_{j\neq i}\int_{D_i} \mathsf{p}(\boldsymbol{x}|H = h_i)d\boldsymbol{x}\right] = 0\right\} \\
&= \arg_{\boldsymbol{D}}\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{D}}\sum_i \left[1-\sum_{j\neq i}\int_{D_i} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2\pi)^n|\boldsymbol{M}|}}\exp -\frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{x}-\mathsf{E}\boldsymbol{x})^T\boldsymbol{M}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{x}-\mathsf{E}\boldsymbol{x})d\boldsymbol{z}\right] = 0\right\} \\
&= \arg_{\boldsymbol{D}}\left\{\sum_i \left[1-\sum_{j\neq i}\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{D}}\int_{D_i} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2\pi)^n|\boldsymbol{M}|}}\exp -\frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{x}-\mathsf{E}\boldsymbol{x})^T\boldsymbol{M}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{x}-\mathsf{E}\boldsymbol{x})d\boldsymbol{z}\right] = 0\right\} \\
&= \arg_{\boldsymbol{D}}\left\{\sum_i \left[1-\sum_{j\neq i}\begin{bmatrix}\frac{\partial}{\partial D_1}\\ \frac{\partial}{\partial D_2}\\ \vdots\ \frac{\partial}{\partial D_n}\end{bmatrix}\int_{D_i} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(2\pi)^n|\boldsymbol{M}|}}\exp -\frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{x}-\mathsf{E}\boldsymbol{x})^T\boldsymbol{M}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{x}-\mathsf{E}\boldsymbol{x})d\boldsymbol{z}\right] = 0\right\} \\
&= \arg_{\boldsymbol{D}}\left\{\sum_i \left[1-\sum_{j\neq i}\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix}\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_1}\\ \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_2} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_2}\\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots\\ \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_n} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_n}\end{bmatrix}}_{\text{Jacobian matrix}}\right]\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

For two variable Gaussian ...

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{C} &= \min_{\boldsymbol{D}}\sum_i \int_{D_i} \mathsf{p}(\boldsymbol{x}|H\neq h_i)\underbrace{\mathsf{p}(H\neq h_i)}_{c}d\boldsymbol{x} \\
&= \min_{\boldsymbol{D}} c\sum_i \int_{D_i} \mathsf{p}(\boldsymbol{x}|H\neq h_i)d\boldsymbol{x} \\
&= \min_{\boldsymbol{D}} c\sum_i \left[1-\sum_{j\neq i}\int_{D_i} \mathsf{p}(\boldsymbol{x}|H = h_i)d\boldsymbol{x}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

$$= \min_D c \sum_i \left[1 - \sum_{j\neq i} \int_{D_i} \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{|M|}} \exp\left(\frac{z_1^2 \mathsf{E}[z_2 z_2] - 2 z_1 z_2 \mathsf{E}[z_1 z_2] + z_2^2 \mathsf{E}[z_1 z_1]}{-2|M|} \right) dz \right]$$

12.4 2 hypothesis, 2 sensor detection

Theorem 12.1 (centralized case). *Let $(\Omega, \mathbb{E}, \mathsf{P})$ be a probability space. Let $D \subsetneq \mathbb{E}$ be the* DECISION REGION *indicating hypothesis $H = h_1$. Let $\pi_0 \triangleq \mathsf{P}\{H = h_0\}$ and $\pi_1 \triangleq \mathsf{P}\{H = h_1\}$.*

THM

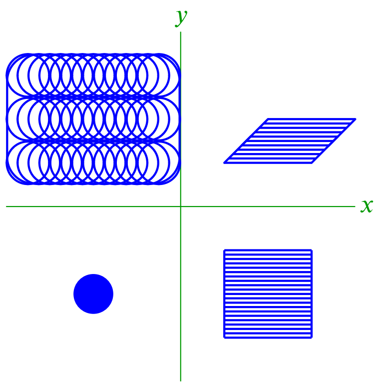
$$\begin{aligned} D &= \arg\min_D \left[\underbrace{\mathsf{P}\left\{(x,y) \in D | H = h_0\right\} \pi_0}_{\text{error for } H = h_0} + \underbrace{\mathsf{P}\left\{(x,y) \in D^c | H = h_1\right\} \pi_1}_{\text{error for } H = h_1} \right] \\ &= \arg\min_D \left[\underbrace{\pi_0 \int_D \mathsf{p}_0(x,y)\ \mathsf{d}x\ \mathsf{d}y}_{\text{error for } H = h_0} + \underbrace{\pi_1 \int_D \mathsf{p}_1(x,y)\ \mathsf{d}x\ \mathsf{d}y}_{\text{error for } H = h_1} \right] \end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} D &= \arg\min_D [\mathsf{P}\{\text{error}\}] && \text{by definition of decision region } D \\ &= \arg\min_D \left[\mathsf{P}\{\text{error} \wedge H = h_0\} + \mathsf{P}\{\text{error} \wedge H = h_1\}\right] \\ &= \arg\min_D \left[\mathsf{P}\left\{\text{error}|H = h_0\right\} \pi_0 + \mathsf{P}\left\{\text{error}|H = h_1\right\} \pi_1\right] \\ &= \arg\min_D \left[\mathsf{P}\left\{(x,y) \in D|H = h_0\right\} \pi_0 + \mathsf{P}\left\{(x,y) \in D^c|H = h_1\right\} \pi_1\right] \\ &= \arg\min_D \left[\pi_0 \int_D \mathsf{p}_0(x,y)\ \mathsf{d}x\ \mathsf{d}y + \pi_1 \int_D \mathsf{p}_1(x,y)\ \mathsf{d}x\ \mathsf{d}y\right] \end{aligned}$$

⇰

Example 12.1. In the centralized case, the decision regions D in the xy-plane can be any arbitrary shape, as illustrated to the right.



Definition 12.2.

DEF

Let $\mathbf{P}_x$ and $\mathbf{P}_y$ be ***set projection operators*** *such that* $\begin{aligned} D_x &\triangleq \mathbf{P}_x D \\ D_y &\triangleq \mathbf{P}_y D \end{aligned}$

Proposition 12.1. *Let $+$ represent* MINKOWSKI ADDITION

PRP

$$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{D}_x + \mathbf{D}_y$$

Theorem 12.2 (distributed AND case). *Let $(\Omega, \mathbb{E}, \mathsf{P})$ be a probability space. Let $D \subsetneq \mathbb{E}$ be the* DECISION REGION *indicating hypothesis $H = h_1$. Let $\pi_0 \triangleq \mathsf{P}\{H = h_0\}$ and $\pi_1 \triangleq \mathsf{P}\{H = h_1\}$. Let $E \triangleq D^c$.*

THM

$$D = \arg\min_D \begin{pmatrix} \mathsf{P}\{ & x \in E, & y \in E & \}\{H = h_1\}\pi_1 & + \\ \mathsf{P}\{ & x \in E, & y \in D & \}\{H = h_1\}\pi_1 & + \\ \mathsf{P}\{ & x \in D, & y \in E & \}\{H = h_1\}\pi_1 & + \\ \mathsf{P}\{ & x \in D, & y \in D & \}\{H = h_0\}\pi_0 & \end{pmatrix}$$

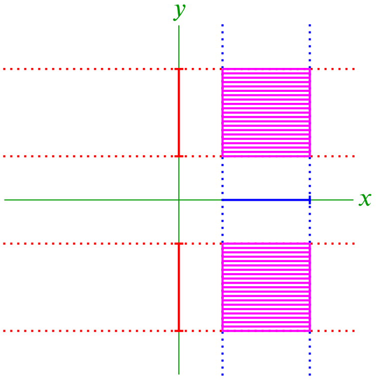
✎PROOF:

x	y	H	$x \wedge y$	
0	0	0	0	
0	1	0	0	
1	0	0	0	
1	1	0	1	error
0	0	1	0	error
0	1	1	0	error
1	0	1	0	error
1	1	1	1	

$$\begin{aligned} D &= \arg\min_D [\mathsf{P}\{\text{error}\}] && \text{by definition of decision region } D \\ &= \arg\min_D \left[\mathsf{P}\{\text{error} \wedge H = h_0\} + \mathsf{P}\{\text{error} \wedge H = h_1\}\right] \\ &= \arg\min_D \left[\mathsf{P}\{\text{error}|H = h_0\}\pi_0 + \mathsf{P}\{\text{error}|H = h_1\}\pi_1\right] \\ &= \arg\min_D \begin{pmatrix} \mathsf{P}\{ & x \in E_x, & y \in E_y & \}\{H = h_1\}\pi_1 & + \\ \mathsf{P}\{ & x \in D_x, & y \in E_y & \}\{H = h_1\}\pi_1 & + \\ \mathsf{P}\{ & x \in E_x, & y \in D_y & \}\{H = h_1\}\pi_1 & + \\ \mathsf{P}\{ & x \in D_x, & y \in D_y & \}\{H = h_0\}\pi_0 & \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

✏

Example 12.2. In the distributed AND case, the decision regions D in the xy-plane are only simple rectangular shapes, as illustrated to the right.



Proposition 12.2.

PRP

In general, distributed AND *detection is suboptimal.*

✎PROOF: Because only rectangular decision regions are possible, detection is suboptimal. ✏

Theorem 12.3. [1]

THM

For the distributed AND *detection*

$$D_x = \left\{ x | \pi_0 \int_{D_y} \mathsf{p}_0(x,y)\; \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}y \le \pi_1 \int_{D_y} \mathsf{p}_1(x,y)\; \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}y \right\}$$

[1] Willett et al. (2000), page 3268

✎PROOF:

$$D_x = \left\{x|y \in D_y \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \mathsf{P}\left\{(x,y)\,|H = h_0\right\}\pi_0 \leq \mathsf{P}\left\{(x,y)\,|H = h_1\right\}\pi_1\right\}$$
$$= \left\{x|\pi_0 \int_{D_y} \mathrm{p}_0\,(x,y)\;\mathrm{d}x\;\mathrm{d}y \leq \pi_1 \int_{D_y} \mathrm{p}_1\,(x,y)\;\mathrm{d}x\;\mathrm{d}y\right\}$$

✏

APPENDIX A

ELECTROMAGNETICS

Physics involves the study of principles which govern the natural world. Some of these governing principles can be described using a concept called a "field". Three naturally occuring fields have been identified:

- gravitational field
- electric field
- magnetic field

Thus far no set of equations has been found that show the relationship between all three of these fields. However, James Maxwell has successfully constructed a set of four equations which demonstrate the relationship between the electric and magnetic fields. These equations show that electric and magnetic fields are intimately related and thus the joint study of these fields is called *electromagnetic field* theory.

A.1 Identities

The following identities are useful in working with differential operators. Identities will be distinguished from equations[1] by using the assignment "≡" rather than "=".

Theorem A.1 (Stokes' Theorem)**.**

THM
$$\int_s (\nabla\times A)\cdot d\mathbf{s} \equiv \oint_l \mathbf{A}\cdot d\mathbf{L}$$

Theorem A.2 (Divergence Theorem)**.**

THM
$$\int_v (\nabla\cdot A)\, dv \equiv \oint_s \mathbf{A}\cdot d\mathbf{s}$$

[1] An *identity* is a special case of an *equation*; And in this sense an identity is different from an equation. An identity is true over the entire domain of the free variable. However, an equation may only be true over a portion of the domain or may even be always false. For example, suppose $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$. Then $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta \equiv 1$ is an **identity** because it is true for all $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$. The expression $\cos^2\theta = 1$ is only an **equation** (not an identity) because it is only true at integer multiples of 2π. The expression $\cos^2\theta = 2$ is an **equation** which is not true for any value in the domain ($\theta \in \mathbb{R}$). Reference: Smith (1999/2000)

Theorem A.3 (Laplacian Identity).

THM $\nabla\times\nabla\times\boldsymbol{A} \equiv \nabla(\nabla\cdot\boldsymbol{A}) - \nabla^2\boldsymbol{A}$

A.2 Electromagnetic Field Definitions

A.2.1 Vector quantities

Maxwell's equations describe electromagnetic properties in terms of four vector quantities: E, $\mathbf{H}$, $\mathbf{D}$, and $\mathbf{B}$.

Definition A.1.

DEF *The **electric field** E describes the force per unit charge exerted by the field.*

$$\mathsf{E} \triangleq \frac{\mathbf{F}}{Q} \qquad \text{where } \mathbf{F} \text{ is force exerted on a charge } Q.$$

Definition A.2.

DEF *The **electric flux density** $\mathbf{D}$ specifies the equivalent charge per unit area.*

Definition A.3.

DEF *The **magnetic field** $\mathbf{H}$ specifies the force generated by the movement of a charged particle.*

Definition A.4.

DEF *The **magnetic flux density** $\mathbf{B}$ specifies the equivalent force of movement of charge per unit area exerted by a magnetic field $\mathbf{H}$.*

A.2.2 Operators

The relationship between the electric flux density $\mathbf{D}$ and electric field E is described by the *permittivity operator* $\mathcal{E}$ as defined Definition A.5 (next definition).

Remark A.1. [2] For a very wide class of media, the relation between $\mathbf{D}$ and E can be described very accurately as $\mathbf{D} = \mathcal{E}\mathsf{E}$. However in general, $\mathbf{D}$ is a function of both E and $\mathbf{H}$ such that $\mathbf{D} = f(\mathsf{E}, \mathbf{H})$. One such class of media is *bianisotropic media.*

Definition A.5.

DEF *The **permittivity operator** $\mathcal{E}$ is defined as* $\mathbf{D} = \mathcal{E}\mathsf{E}$

If the operation $\mathcal{E}$ is INVERTIBLE *then* $\mathsf{E} = \mathcal{E}^{-1}\mathbf{D}$ *where $\mathcal{E}^{-1}$ is the inverse operation of $\mathcal{E}$*

The relationship between the magnetic flux density $\mathbf{B}$ and magnetic field $\mathbf{H}$ is described by the *permeability operator* $\mathcal{U}$ as defined in Definition A.6 (next definition).

Remark A.2. Similar to Remark A.1, for an very wide class of media, the relation between $\mathbf{B}$ and $\mathbf{H}$ can be described very accurately as $\mathbf{B} = \mathcal{U}\mathbf{H}$. However in general, $\mathbf{B}$ is a function of both $\mathbf{H}$ and E such that $\mathbf{B} = \mathsf{g}(\mathbf{H}, \mathsf{E})$ for some function g.

[2] Kong (1990), page 5

Definition A.6.

DEF *The* ***permeability operator*** $\mathcal{U}$ *is defined as* $\mathbf{B} = \mathcal{U}\mathbf{H}$
If the operation $\mathcal{U}$ *is* INVERTIBLE *then* $\mathbf{H} = \mathcal{U}^{-1}\mathbf{B}$ *where* $\mathcal{U}^{-1}$ *is the inverse operation of* $\mathcal{U}$

A.2.3 Types of Media

Electromagnetic waves propagate through a *media*. A media may be classified according to whether it is **linear**, **homogeneous**, **isotropic**, **time-invariant**, or **simple**.

Definition A.7.

DEF *A media is* ***simple*** *if the operators* $\mathcal{E}$ *and* $\mathcal{U}$ *are multiplicative constants* ϵ *and* μ *such that*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D} &= \epsilon \mathsf{E} \quad \text{and} \\ \mathbf{B} &= \mu \mathbf{H} \end{aligned}$$

A.3 Electromagnetic Field Axioms

The fundamentals of electromagnetic theory are at their core based largely on empirical results rather than on mathematical analysis. Since they are based on experiment rather than analysis, we present them here as "axioms", which of course require no proof.

Axiom A.1 (Maxwell-Faraday Axiom).

AX $\nabla \times \mathsf{E} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{B}$

Axiom A.2 (Maxwell-Ampere Axiom).

AX $\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{J}$ *where* $\mathbf{J}$ *is electric current density*

Axiom A.3 (Maxwell-Gauss-D Axiom).

AX $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = \rho$ *where* ρ *is electric charge density*

Axiom A.4 (Maxwell-Gauss-B Axiom).

AX $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$

A.4 Wave Equations

In a simple media, electric and magnetic fields propagate in the form of waves. This can be shown using two theorems.

- In a *linear* media, the time/space relationships between E and $\mathbf{H}$ can be described using second order differential equations (Theorem A.4 page 144).
- In a *simple* media, the solution to these equations are waves propagating in both time and location (Theorem A.5 page 146).

Theorem A.4 (Electric field wave equation).

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
\text{(1). } \mathcal{E} \text{ and } \mathcal{U} \text{ are } \textbf{linear}. & \text{and} & \\
\text{(2). } \mathcal{E} \text{ and } \mathcal{U} \text{ are } \textbf{time-invariant} & \text{and} & \\
\text{(3). } \mathcal{E} \text{ and } \mathcal{U} \text{ are } \textbf{invertible} & (\mathcal{E}^{-1} \text{ and } \mathcal{U}^{-1} \text{ exist}) & \text{and} \\
\text{(4). If } \mathsf{E} = 0\text{, then } \mathbf{D} = 0 & (\mathbf{D} = \mathcal{E}0 = 0) & \text{and} \\
\text{(5). If } \mathbf{H} = 0\text{, then } \mathbf{B} = 0 & (\mathbf{B} = \mathcal{U}0 = 0) & \text{and} \\
\text{(6). The charge density is constant in location} & (\nabla\rho = 0) & \text{and} \\
\text{(7). Current flow is constant in location and time} & (\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{J} = 0 \text{ and } \nabla\mathbf{J} = 0) &
\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{lcl}
\nabla^2\mathsf{E} & = & \mathcal{E}\mathcal{U} \\
\nabla^2 H & = & \mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}
\end{array}\right.$$

✎PROOF: The condition that $\mathcal{E}$ is linear and invertible implies $\mathcal{E}^{-1}$ is also linear. We now analyze the curl of the left hand side of the Maxwell-Faraday Axiom.

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla\times\nabla\times E &= \nabla(\nabla\cdot E) - \nabla^2\mathsf{E} && \text{by Theorem A.3 page 141} \\
&= \nabla(\nabla\cdot\mathcal{E}^{-1}\mathbf{D}) - \nabla^2\mathsf{E} && \text{because } \mathcal{E} \text{ is invertible} \\
&= \nabla\mathcal{E}^{-1}(\nabla\cdot\mathbf{D}) - \nabla^2\mathsf{E} && \text{because } \mathcal{E}^{-1} \text{ is linear} \\
&= \mathcal{E}^{-1}\nabla(\nabla\cdot\mathbf{D}) - \nabla^2\mathsf{E} && \text{because } \mathcal{E}^{-1} \text{ is linear} \\
&= \mathcal{E}^{-1}\nabla\rho - \nabla^2\mathsf{E} && \text{by Axiom A.3 page 143} \\
&= \mathcal{E}^{-1}0 - \nabla^2\mathsf{E} && \text{by condition 6} \\
&= \mathcal{E}^{-1}\mathcal{E}0 - \nabla^2\mathsf{E} && \text{by condition 4} \\
&= 0 - \nabla^2\mathsf{E} && \text{because } \mathcal{E}^{-1}\mathcal{E} = I \text{ is the identity operator} \\
&= -\nabla^2\mathsf{E}
\end{aligned}$$

We now analyze the curl of the right side of the Maxwell-Faraday Axiom.

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla\times\left(-\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{B}\right) &= -\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\nabla\times\mathbf{B} && \text{by linearity of operators} \\
&= -\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\nabla\times\mathcal{U}H && \text{by Definition A.6 page 143} \\
&= -\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathcal{U}\nabla\times H && \text{by linearity of } \mathcal{U} \\
&= -\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\nabla\times H && \text{by time-invariance of } \mathcal{U} \\
&= -\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{J}\right) && \text{by the Maxwell-Ampere Axiom} \\
&= -\mathcal{U}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathbf{D} + \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{J}\right) \\
&= -\mathcal{U}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathbf{D} + 0\right) && \text{by condition 7} \\
&= -\mathcal{U}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathcal{E}\mathsf{E}\right) && \text{by Definition A.5 page 142} \\
&= -\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathsf{E} && \text{by time-invariance of } \mathcal{E}
\end{aligned}$$

Starting with the Maxwell-Ampere Axiom and using the results of the previous two sets of equations, we can now prove the first equation of the theorem.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla\times\mathsf{E} &= -\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{B} && \Rightarrow \\
\nabla\times\nabla\times\mathsf{E} &= \nabla\times(-\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{B}) && \Leftrightarrow \\
-\nabla^2\mathsf{E} &= -\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathsf{E} && \Leftrightarrow \\
\nabla^2\mathsf{E} &= \mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathsf{E}
\end{aligned}
$$

The condition that $\mathcal{U}$ is linear and invertible implies $\mathcal{U}^{-1}$ is also linear.

We now analyze the curl of the left hand side of the Maxwell-Ampere Axiom.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla\times\nabla\times H &\equiv \nabla(\nabla\cdot H) - \nabla^2 H && \text{by Theorem A.3 page 141} \\
&= \nabla(\nabla\cdot\mathcal{U}^{-1}\mathbf{B}) - \nabla^2 H && \text{because } \mathcal{U} \text{ is invertible} \\
&= \nabla\mathcal{U}^{-1}(\nabla\cdot\mathbf{B}) - \nabla^2 H && \text{because } \mathcal{U}^{-1} \text{ is linear} \\
&= \mathcal{U}^{-1}\nabla(\nabla\cdot\mathbf{B}) - \nabla^2 H && \text{because } \mathcal{U}^{-1} \text{ is } \textit{linear} \\
&= \mathcal{U}^{-1}0 - \nabla^2 H && \text{by Axiom A.4 page 143} \\
&= \mathcal{U}^{-1}\mathcal{U}0 - \nabla^2 H && \text{by condition 5} \\
&= 0 - \nabla^2 H && \text{because } \mathcal{U}^{-1}\mathcal{U} = I \text{ is the identity operator} \\
&= -\nabla^2 H
\end{aligned}
$$

We now analyze the curl of the right side of the *Maxwell-Faraday Axiom* (Axiom A.1 page 143).

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla\times\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{J}\right) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\nabla\times\mathbf{D} + \nabla\times\mathbf{J} && \text{by linearity of operators} \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\nabla\times\mathbf{D} && \text{by condition 7} \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\nabla\times\mathcal{E}\mathsf{E} && \text{by Definition A.5 page 142} \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathcal{E}\nabla\times\mathsf{E} && \text{by linearity of } \mathcal{E} \\
&= \mathcal{E}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\nabla\times E && \text{by time-invariance of } \mathcal{E} \\
&= \mathcal{E}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(-\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{B}\right) && \text{by the Maxwell-Faraday Axiom} \\
&= -\mathcal{E}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathbf{B} \\
&= -\mathcal{E}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathcal{U}\mathbf{H} && \text{by Definition A.6 page 143} \\
&= -\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathbf{H} && \text{by } \textit{time-invariance} \text{ of } \mathcal{U}
\end{aligned}
$$

Starting with the Maxwell-Faraday Axiom and using the results of the previous two sets of equations, we can now prove the second part of the theorem.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla\times\mathbf{H} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{D}+\mathbf{J} && \Rightarrow \\
\nabla\times\nabla\times\mathbf{H} &= \nabla\times(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\mathbf{D}+\mathbf{J}) && \Leftrightarrow \\
-\nabla^2\mathbf{H} &= -\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathbf{H} && \Leftrightarrow \\
\nabla^2\mathbf{H} &= \mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathbf{H}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem A.4 (page 144) shows that under Axioms Axiom A.1 – Axiom A.4 (page 143) and certain other general conditions, both the electric field and magnetic field can be represented as second order differential equations in location and time. The general solution to these equations is given in the next theorem.

Theorem A.5. [3] *In a simple media, the wave equation for the electric field* E *has the following general solution:*

THM $\boxed{\mathsf{E}(x,y,z,t) = p_1(\hat{k}\cdot r - vt) + p_2(\hat{k}\cdot r + vt)}$

where p_1 *and* p_2 *are any vector functions,* $\hat{\mathbf{k}} = \hat{\mathbf{x}}k_x + \hat{\mathbf{y}}k_y + \hat{\mathbf{z}}k_z$ *is a unit vector in the direction of wave propagation,* r *is a position vector, and* $v = 1/\sqrt{\epsilon\mu}$.

✎PROOF: According to Theorem A.4 (page 144),

$$\nabla^2\mathsf{E} \;=\; \mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathsf{E}. \tag{A.1}$$

Since the media is simple, the operation $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}$ equivalent to multiplicatioin by $\epsilon\mu$ and so

$$\nabla^2\mathsf{E} = \epsilon\mu\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathsf{E}.$$

This equation is actually three equations.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla^2 E_x &= \epsilon\mu\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}E_x && \text{x component}\\
\nabla^2 E_y &= \epsilon\mu\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}E_y && \text{y component}\\
\nabla^2 E_z &= \epsilon\mu\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}E_z && \text{z component}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proving any one of them proves them all. We pick the first one. The term $\epsilon\mu\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}E_x$ can be evaluated as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\epsilon\mu\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}E_x &= \epsilon\mu\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}p_{1x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}\cdot r - vt) + \epsilon\mu\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}p_{2x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}\cdot r + vt)\\
&= \epsilon\mu v^2 p''_{1x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}\cdot r - vt) + \epsilon\mu v^2 p''_{2x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}\cdot r + vt)\\
&= p''_{1x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}\cdot r - vt) + p''_{2x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}}\cdot r + vt)
\end{aligned}
$$

[3] Inan and Inan (2000), page 21

The term $\nabla^2 E_x$ can be evaluated as follows:

$$\nabla^2 E_x = \nabla^2 p_{1x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt) + \nabla^2 p_{2x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt)$$

The two terms on the right can be simplified.

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla^2 p_{1x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt) &= \left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}\right) p_{1x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt) \\
&= \left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}\right) p_{1x}(xk_x + yk_y + zk_z - vt) \\
&= \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} p_{1x}(xk_x + yk_y + zk_z - vt) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} p_{1x}(xk_x + yk_y + zk_z - vt) + \\
&\quad \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} p_{1x}(xk_x + yk_y + zk_z - vt) \\
&= k_x^2 p_{1x}^{"}(xk_x + yk_y + zk_z - vt) + k_y^2 p_{1x}^{"}(xk_x + yk_y + zk_z - vt) + \\
&\quad k_z^2 p_{1x}^{"}(xk_x + yk_y + zk_z - vt) \\
&= (k_x^2 + k_y^2 + k_z^2) p_{1x}^{"}(xk_x + yk_y + zk_z - vt) \\
&= \hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{k}} p_{1x}^{"}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt) \\
&= p_{1x}^{"}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\nabla^2 p_{2x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r + vt) = p_{2x}^{"}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r + vt)$$

The term $\nabla^2 E_x$ can now be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla^2 E_x &= \nabla^2 p_{1x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt) + \nabla^2 p_{2x}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt) \\
&= p_{1x}^{"}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r - vt) + p_{2x}^{"}(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \cdot r + vt) \\
&= \epsilon\mu \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} E_x.
\end{aligned}$$

✏

A.5 Effect of objects on electromagnetic waves

The following are attributes of an electromagnetic wave. Some of these attributes can be affected by an object in the path of the wave. Because the attributes of the wave can be affected by the object, measurements of the attributes can be exploited to infer some information about the object.

- propagation
- polarization
- permittivity
- permeability

Propagation An object can affect electromagnetic wave propagation in the following ways.

- Reflection
- Refraction
- Diffraction

Reflection A single reflection is very useful for gaining information about a single surface of an object. This is used extensively by radar and sonar systems. Of course multiple refections could be used to gain more information about the object. This could involve several reflections over time or an array of transmitting and receiving antennas.

Refraction, permittivity, permeability Refraction is very useful for determining the internal composition of an object. The electric field wave equation tells us that

$$\nabla^2 \mathsf{E} = \mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2}\mathsf{E}$$

where $\mathcal{E}$ is the *permittivity operator* and $\mathcal{U}$ the *permeability operator*. Using numerical techniques, it may be possible to "solve" (find the mapping for) the operation $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}$. In general the operation is *non-linear*. However in many cases it may be *linear* or approximately linear in which case $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}$ may be modeled as a matrix. One technique for analyzing the matrix is to perform a *singular value decomposition* (SVD) and then analyze the pseudo eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the decomposition to gain a clearer understanding of the properties of the object. The SVD of $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}$ can be expresed as

$$\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U} = U\Lambda V$$

where Λ is a diagonal matrix containing the pseudo-eigenvalues of $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{U}$ and U and V are matrices containing the pseudo-eigenvectors.

Diffraction An object may completely block a portion of an oncoming electromagnetic wave. However, due to diffraction, the wave may essentially reconstruct the hole the object made in the wave as the wave propagates farther and farther past the object. This effect is at least partly explained by *Huygen's principle.* Information gathered from a diffracted wave could perhaps give move information about the overall shape of an object than a single reflection could. This is because a reflected wave only carries information about a single surface, whereas a diffracted wave flows around an object and therefore may carry information about the entire outer surface of the object.

Polarization Qualitatively, polarization is the general "shape" of the electric field $\mathsf{E}(x,y,z,t)$. For example, FM radio uses linear polarization. Some radar systems use circular polarization. If $\mathsf{E}(x,y,z,t)$ is extremely random in magnitude and direction over time, then the wave is said to be *unpolarized.* Light from the sun is an example of a wave that is nearly unpolarized[4]. A more formal (quantitative) definition of polarization is presented next.

Definition A.8.

DEF

Let a ***polarization function*** $p(x,y,z)$ *be defined as*

$$p(x,y,z) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty}\frac{1}{2T}\int_{-T}^{T}\mathsf{E}(x,y,z,t)\,dt$$

The shape of $p(x,y,z,t)$ *is the* ***polarization*** *of* $\mathsf{E}(x,y,z,t)$.

Remark A.3. [5] An object can affect the polarization of a wave. This has been exploited in radar systems to distinguish a metal object from clouds and "clutter".

[4] Inan and Inan (2000), page 94
[5] Inan and Inan (2000), page 96

APPENDIX B

INFORMATION THEORY

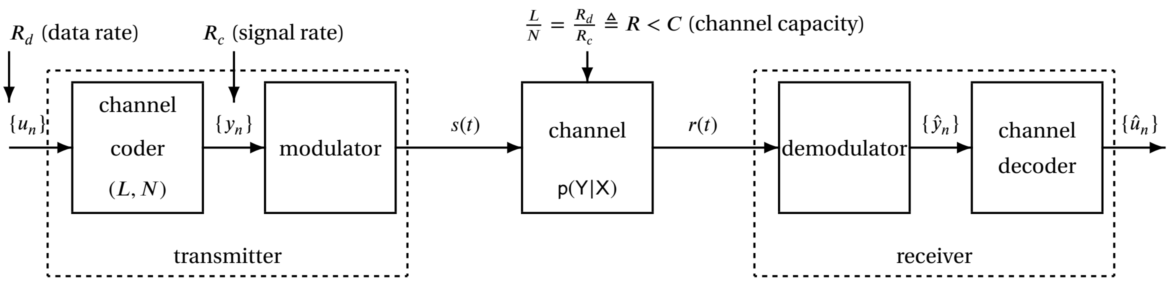


Figure B.1: Memoryless modulation system model

B.1 Information Theory

B.1.1 Definitions

The *Kullback Leibler distance* $\mathsf{D}\left(\mathsf{p}_1, \mathsf{p}_2\right)$ (Definition B.1 page 149) is a measure between two probability density functions p_1 and p_2. It is not a true distance measure[1] but it behaves in a similar manner. If $\mathsf{p}_1 = \mathsf{p}_2$, then the *KL distance* is 0. If p_1 is very different from p_2, then $|\mathsf{D}\left(\mathsf{p}_1, \mathsf{p}_2\right)|$ will be much larger.

Definition B.1. [2] *Let p_1 and p_2 be probability density functions. Then the* ***Kullback Leibler distance*** *(the* KL DISTANCE*, also called the* ***relative entropy****) of p_1 and p_2 is*

DEF $$\mathsf{D}\left(\mathsf{p}_1, \mathsf{p}_2\right) \triangleq \mathsf{E} \log_2 \frac{\mathsf{p}_1(\mathsf{X})}{\mathsf{p}_2(\mathsf{X})} \quad \textit{bits}$$ *If the base of logarithm is e (the "natural logarithm") rather than 2, then the units are* NATS *rather than* BITS.

The *mutual information* $\mathsf{I}(\mathsf{X}; \mathsf{Y})$ of random variable X and Y is the *KL distance* between their *joint distribution* $\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X}, \mathsf{Y})$ and the product of their *marginal distributions* $\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})$ and $\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y})$. If X and Y are independent, then the *KL distance* between joint and marginal product is $\log 1 = 0$ and they have no *mutual information* $(\mathsf{I}(\mathsf{X}; \mathsf{Y}) = 0)$. If X and Y are highly correlated, then the *joint distribution* is

[1] *Distance measure*: Definition **??** (page **??**)

[2] Kullback and Leibler (1951), Csiszar (1961), ichi Amari (2012), Cover and Thomas (1991) page 18

much different than the product of the marginals making the *KL distance* greater and along with it the *mutual information* greater as well.

Definition B.2 (Mutual information). [3]

DEF
$$\mathrm{I}(X;Y) \triangleq \mathrm{D}\left(p(X,Y),\, p(X)p(Y)\right) \triangleq \mathrm{E}_{xy} \log_2 \frac{p(X,Y)}{p(X)p(Y)} \qquad \textit{bits}$$

The *self information* $\mathrm{I}(X;X)$ of random variable X is the *mutual information* between X and itself. That is, it is a measure of the information contained in X. Self information $\mathrm{I}(X;X)$ can also be viewed as the *KL distance* between the constant 1 (no information because 1 is completely known) and $p(X)$.

Definition B.3 (Self information). [4]

DEF
$$\mathrm{I}(X;X) \triangleq \mathrm{D}\left(1, p(X)\right) \triangleq \mathrm{E}_{x} \log_2 \frac{1}{p(X)} \qquad \textit{bits}$$

The *entropy* $\mathrm{H}(X)$ of a random variable X is equivalent to the self information $\mathrm{I}(X;X)$ of X. That is, the entropy of X is a measure of the information contained in X.

Likewise, the *conditional entropy* $\mathrm{H}(X|Y)$ of X given Y is the information contained in X given Y has occurred. If X and Y are independent, then X does not care about the occurrence of Y. Thus in this case, the occurrence of $Y = y$ does not change the amount of information provided by X and $\mathrm{H}(X|Y) = \mathrm{H}(X)$. If X and Y are highly correlated, the occurrence of $Y = y$ tells us a lot about what the value of X might turn out to be. Thus in this case, the information provided by X given Y is greatly reduced and $\mathrm{H}(X|Y) << \mathrm{H}(X)$.

The *joint entropy* $\mathrm{H}(X,Y)$ of X and Y is the amount of information contained in the ordered pair (X,Y).

Definition B.4 (Entropy). [5]

DEF
$$\begin{array}{llcll}
\textit{entropy of } X: & \mathrm{H}(X) & \triangleq & \mathrm{E}_{x} \log_2 \frac{1}{p(X)} & \textit{bits}\\
\textit{joint entropy of } X,Y: & \mathrm{H}(X,Y) & \triangleq & \mathrm{E}_{xy} \log_2 \frac{1}{p(X,Y)} & \textit{bits}\\
\textit{conditional entropy of } X \textit{ given } Y: & \mathrm{H}(X|Y) & \triangleq & \mathrm{E}_{xy} \log_2 \frac{1}{p(X|Y)} & \textit{bits}
\end{array}$$

B.1.2 Relations

Theorem B.1.

THM
$$\mathrm{H}(X,Y) = \mathrm{H}(Y,X)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{H}(X,Y) &\triangleq \mathrm{E}_{xy} \log \frac{1}{p_{xy}(X,Y)}\\
&= \mathrm{E}_{yx} \log \frac{1}{p_{yx}(Y,X)}\\
&\triangleq \mathrm{H}(Y,X)
\end{aligned}$$

[3] Kullback (1959), Cover and Thomas (1991), pages 18–19
[4] Hartley (1928), Fano (1949), Cover and Thomas (1991), pages 18–19
[5] Cover and Thomas (1991), pages 15–17

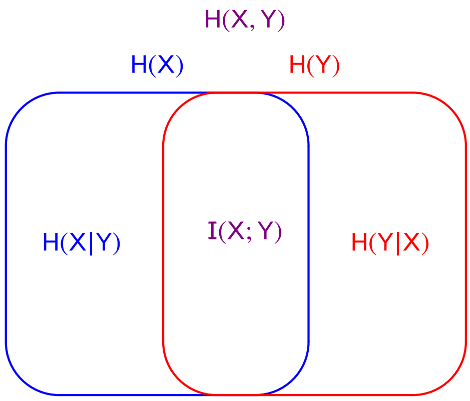


Figure B.2: Relationship between information and entropy

Theorem B.2 (Entropy chain rule)**.**

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{H}(X,Y) &= \mathsf{H}(X|Y)+\mathsf{H}(Y)\\
&= \mathsf{H}(Y|X)+\mathsf{H}(X).\\
\mathsf{H}(X_1,X_2,\ldots,X_N) &= \sum_{n=1}^{N-1}\mathsf{H}(X_n|X_{n+1},\ldots,X_N)+\mathsf{H}(X_N)
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{H}(X,Y) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(X,Y)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(X|Y)\mathsf{p}(Y)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(X|Y)}+\mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(Y)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(X|Y)}+\mathsf{E}_{y}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(Y)}\\
&= \mathsf{H}(X|Y)+\mathsf{H}(Y)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{H}(X,Y) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(X,Y)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(Y|X)\mathsf{p}(X)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(Y|X)}+\mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(X)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{xy}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(Y|X)}+\mathsf{E}_{y}\log\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(X)}\\
&= \mathsf{H}(Y|X)+\mathsf{H}(X)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{H}(X_1,X_2,\ldots,X_N) &= \mathsf{H}(X_1|X_2,\ldots,X_N)+\mathsf{H}(X_2,\ldots,X_N)\\
&= \mathsf{H}(X_1|X_2,\ldots,X_N)+\mathsf{H}(X_2|X_3,\ldots,X_N)+\mathsf{H}(X_3,\ldots,X_N)\\
&= \mathsf{H}(X_1|X_2,\ldots,X_N)+\mathsf{H}(X_2|X_3,\ldots,X_N)+\mathsf{H}(X_3|X_4,\ldots,X_N)+\mathsf{H}(X_4,\ldots,X_N)
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}_n|\mathsf{X}_{n+1},\ldots,\mathsf{X}_n) + \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}_N)$$

✏

Theorem B.3.

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &= \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}|\mathsf{Y})\\
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &= \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X})\\
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &= \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}) + \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X},\mathsf{Y})\\
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &= \mathrm{I}(\mathsf{Y};\mathsf{X})\\
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{X}) &= \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X})
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X},\mathsf{Y})}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y})}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X}|\mathsf{Y})}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})} + \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X}|\mathsf{Y})\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})} - \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X}|\mathsf{Y})}\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}|\mathsf{Y})
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X},\mathsf{Y})}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y})}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X})}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y})}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y})} + \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X})\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y})} - \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X})}\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X})
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &= \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X})\\
&= \mathrm{I}(\mathsf{Y};\mathsf{X})
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{X}) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X},\mathsf{X})}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})}\\
&= \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})}\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X})
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &\triangleq \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}|\mathsf{Y})\\
&= \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}) - [\mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X},\mathsf{Y}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y})]\\
&= \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}) + \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X},\mathsf{Y})
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem B.4 (Information chain rule).

THM
$$\mathrm{I}(X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_N; Y) = \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \mathrm{I}(X_n | X_{n+1}, \ldots, X_N) + \mathrm{I}(X_N)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}(X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_N; Y) &= \mathrm{H}(X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_N) - \mathrm{H}(X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_N | Y) \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \mathrm{H}(X_n | X_{n+1}, \ldots, X_N) + \mathrm{H}(X_N) - \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \mathrm{H}(X_n | X_{n+1}, \ldots, X_N, Y) - \mathrm{H}(X_N | Y) \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \left[\mathrm{H}(X_n | X_{n+1}, \ldots, X_N) - \mathrm{H}(X_n | X_{n+1}, \ldots, X_N, Y)\right] + \left[\mathrm{H}(X_N) - \mathrm{H}(X_N | Y)\right] \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \mathrm{I}(X_n | X_{n+1}, \ldots, X_N) + \mathrm{I}(X_N)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

B.1.3 Properties

Theorem B.5. [6]

THM
$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{D}(p_1, p_2) &\geq 0 \\
\mathrm{I}(X; Y) &\geq 0
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{D}(p_1, p_2) &\triangleq \mathrm{E}_x \log \frac{p_1(X)}{p_2(X)} \\
&= \mathrm{E}_x \left[-\log \frac{p_2(X)}{p_1(X)} \right] \\
&\geq -\log \mathrm{E}_x \left[\frac{p_2(X)}{p_1(X)} \right] && \text{by } \textit{Jensen's Inequality} \text{ (Theorem ?? page ??)} \\
&= -\log \int_x p_1(x) \frac{p_2(x)}{p_1(x)} \, dx \\
&= -\log \int_x p_2(x) \, dx \\
&= -\log(1) \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[6] Cover and Thomas (1991), page 26

B.2 Channel Capacity

Definition B.5. *Let (L, N) be a block coder with N output bits for each L input bits.*

$$\begin{array}{rcll} R & \triangleq & \frac{L}{N} & \textit{coding rate} \\ \mathsf{C} & \triangleq & \max \mathsf{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) & \textit{channel capacity} \\ \mathsf{E}(R) & \triangleq & \max_\rho \max_Q [\mathsf{E}_0(\rho, Q) - \rho R] & \textit{random coding exponent} \end{array}$$

Theorem B.6 (noisy channel coding theorem). [7]

THM

If $R < \mathsf{C}$ then it is possible to construct an encoder and decoder such that the probability of error P_e is arbitrarily small. Specifically

$$P_e \le e^{-N\mathsf{E}(R)}$$

For $0 \le R \ge \mathsf{C}$, the function $\mathsf{E}(R)$ is POSITIVE, DECREASING, *and* CONVEX.

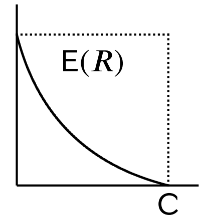


Figure B.3: Typical $\mathsf{E}(R)$

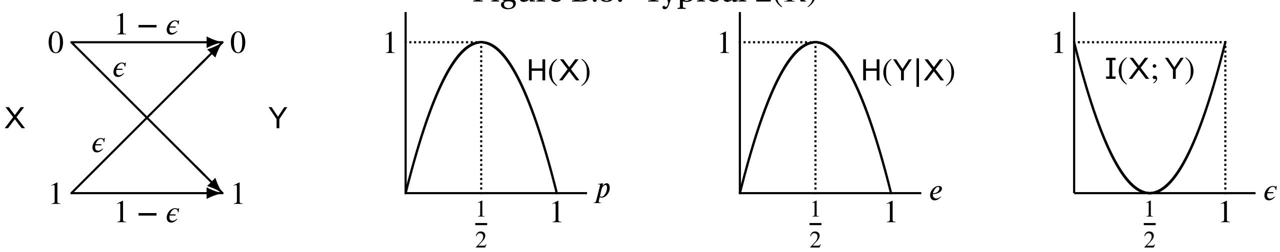


Figure B.4: Binary symmetric channel (BSC)

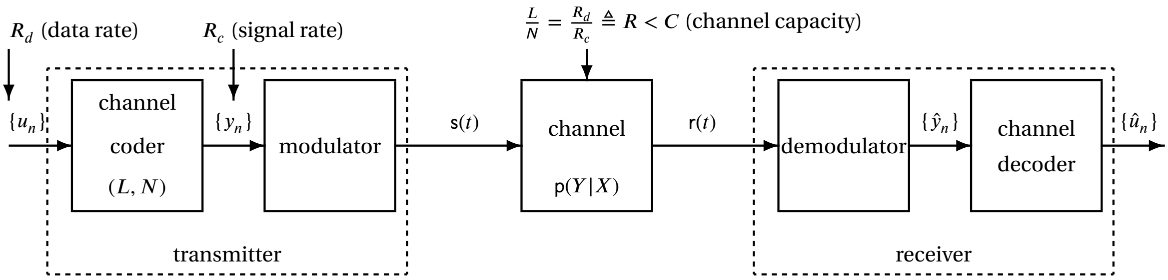


Figure B.5: Memoryless modulation system model

How much information can be reliably sent through the channel? The answer depends on the *channel capacity* C. As proven by the *Noisy Channel Coding Theorem* (NCCT), each transmitted symbol can carry up to C bits for any arbitrarily small probability of error greater than zero. The price for decreasing error is increasing the block code size.

Note that the NCCT does not say at what rate (in bits/second) you can send data through the AWGN channel. The AWGN channel knows nothing of time (and is therefore not a realistic channel). The NCCT channel merely gives a *coding rate*. That is, the number of information bits each symbol can carry. Channels that limit the rate (in bits/second) that can be sent through it are obviously aware of time and are often referred to as *bandlimited channels*.

[7] Gallager (1968), page 143

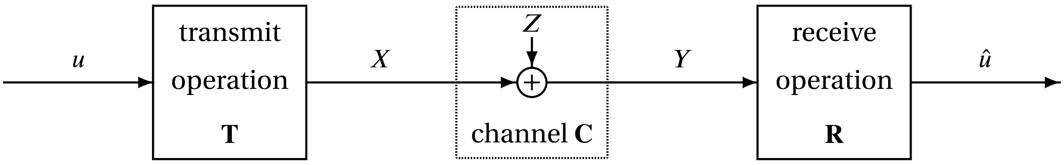


Figure B.6: Additive noise system model

Theorem B.7. *Let* $Z \sim \mathsf{N}(0, \sigma^2)$. *Then*

$$\text{THM} \quad \mathsf{H}(Z) = \frac{1}{2}\log_2 2\pi e \sigma^2$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{H}(Z) &= \mathsf{E}_z \log \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(Z)} \\
&= -\mathsf{E}_z \log \mathsf{p}(z) \\
&= -\mathsf{E}_z \log \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} e^{\frac{-z^2}{2\sigma^2}}\right] \\
&= -\mathsf{E}_z \left[-\frac{1}{2}\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \frac{-z^2}{2\sigma^2}\log e\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{E}_z \left[\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \frac{\log e}{\sigma^2} z^2\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \frac{\log e}{\sigma^2}\mathsf{E}_z z^2\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \frac{\log e}{\sigma^2}(\sigma^2 + 0)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \log e\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\log(2\pi e \sigma^2)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem B.8. *Let* $Y = X + Z$ *be a Gaussian channel with* $\mathsf{E}X^2 = P$ *and* $Z \sim \mathsf{N}(0, \sigma^2)$. *Then*

$$\text{THM} \quad \mathrm{I}(X;Y) \le \frac{1}{2}\log\left(1 + \frac{P}{\sigma^2}\right) = \mathsf{C}$$

✎PROOF: No proof at this time.

Reference: (Cover and Thomas, 1991, page 241) ✏

Example B.1. 1. If there is no transmitted energy ($P = 0$), then the capacity of the channel to pass information is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{C} &= \frac{1}{2}\log_2\left(1 + \frac{P}{\sigma^2}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\log_2\left(1 + \frac{0}{\sigma^2}\right) \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

That is, the symbols cannot carry any information.

2. If there is finite symbol energy and no noise ($\sigma^2 = 0$), then the capacity of the channel to pass information is

$$\begin{aligned}\mathsf{C} &= \frac{1}{2}\log_2\left(1+\frac{P}{0}\right)\\ &= \infty\end{aligned}$$

That is, each symbol can carry an infinite amount of information. That is, we can use a modulation scheme with an infinite number of of signaling waveforms (analog modulation) and thus each symbol can be represented by one of an infinite number of waveforms.

3. If the transmitted energy is ($P = 15\sigma^2$), then the capacity of the channel to pass information is

$$\begin{aligned}\mathsf{C} &= \frac{1}{2}\log_2\left(1+\frac{15\sigma^2}{\sigma^2}\right)\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\log_2(1+15)\\ &= \frac{1}{2}4\\ &= 2\end{aligned}$$

This means

$$2 = \mathsf{C} > \mathsf{R} \triangleq \frac{\text{information bits}}{\text{symbol}} = \frac{\text{information bits}}{\text{coded bits}} \times \frac{\text{coded bits}}{\text{symbol}} = \mathsf{r_c r_s}$$

This means that if the coding rate is $\mathsf{r_c} = 1/4$, then we must use a modulation with 256 ($\mathsf{r_s} = 8$ bits/symbol) or fewer waveforms.

Conversely, if the modulation scheme uses 4 waveforms, then $\mathsf{r_s} = 2$ bits/symbol and so the code rate $\mathsf{r_c}$ can be up to 1 (almost no coding redundancy is needed).

4. If there is the transmitted energy ($P = \sigma^2$), then the capacity of the channel to pass information is

$$\begin{aligned}\mathsf{C} &= \frac{1}{2}\log_2\left(1+\frac{\sigma^2}{\sigma^2}\right)\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\log_2(1+1)\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\end{aligned}$$

That is, each symbol can carry just under 1/2 bits of information. This means

$$\frac{1}{2} = \mathsf{C} > \mathsf{R} \triangleq \frac{\text{information bits}}{\text{symbol}} = \frac{\text{information bits}}{\text{coded bits}} \times \frac{\text{coded bits}}{\text{symbol}} = \mathsf{r_c r_s}$$

This means that if the coding rate is $\mathsf{r_c} = 1/4$, then we must use a modulation with 4 ($\mathsf{r_s} = 2$ bits/symbol) or fewer waveforms.

Conversely, if the modulation scheme uses 16 waveforms, then $\mathsf{r_s} = 4$ bits/symbol and so the code rate $\mathsf{r_c}$ must be less than 1/8.

B.3 Specific channels

B.3.1 Binary Symmetric Channel (BSC)

The properties of the *binary symmetric channel (BSC)* are illustrated in Figure B.4 (page 154) and stated in Theorem B.9 (next).

Theorem B.9 (Binary symmetric channel). *Let* $\mathbf{C} : \mathsf{X} \to \mathsf{Y}$ *be a channel operation with* $\mathsf{X}, \mathsf{Y} \in \{0, 1\}$ *and*

$$\begin{aligned} p &\triangleq \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=1\} \\ \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1|\mathsf{X}=0\} &= \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0|\mathsf{X}=1\} \triangleq \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

Then

THM

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1\} &= \epsilon + p - 2\epsilon p \\ \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0\} &= 1 - p - \epsilon + 2\epsilon p \\ \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}) &= p\log_2\tfrac{1}{p} + (1-p)\log_2\tfrac{1}{(1-p)} \\ \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}) &= (1-p-\epsilon+2\epsilon p)\log_2\tfrac{1}{1-p-\epsilon+2\epsilon p} + (\epsilon+p-2\epsilon p)\log_2\tfrac{1}{\epsilon+p-2\epsilon p} \\ \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X}) &= (1-\epsilon)\log_2\tfrac{1}{1-\epsilon} + \epsilon\log_2\tfrac{1}{\epsilon} \\ \mathsf{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &= (1-p-\epsilon+2\epsilon p)\log_2\tfrac{1}{1-p-\epsilon+2\epsilon p} + (\epsilon+p-2\epsilon p)\log_2\tfrac{1}{\epsilon+p-2\epsilon p} \\ &\quad -(1-\epsilon)\log_2\tfrac{1}{1-\epsilon} + -\epsilon\log_2\tfrac{1}{\epsilon} \\ \mathsf{C} &= 1 + \epsilon\log_2\epsilon + (1-\epsilon)\log_2(1-\epsilon) \end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=1\} &\triangleq p \\ \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=0\} &= 1-p \\ \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1\} &= \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1|\mathsf{X}=0\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=0\} + \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1|\mathsf{X}=1\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=1\} \\ &= \epsilon(1-p) + (1-\epsilon)p \\ &= \epsilon - \epsilon p + p - \epsilon p \\ &= \epsilon + p - 2\epsilon p \\ \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0\} &= \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0|\mathsf{X}=0\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=0\} + \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0|\mathsf{X}=1\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=1\} \\ &= (1-\epsilon)(1-p) + \epsilon p \\ &= 1 - p - \epsilon + \epsilon p + \epsilon p \\ &= 1 - p - \epsilon + 2\epsilon p \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{X}) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{x}}\log_2\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{X})} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{1}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=n\}\log_2\frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=n\}} \\ &= \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=0\}\log_2\frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=0\}} + \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=1\}\log_2\frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=1\}} \\ &= p\log_2\frac{1}{p} + (1-p)\log_2\frac{1}{(1-p)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}) \triangleq \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{y}}\log_2\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y})}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{n=0}^{1} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=n\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=n\}} \\
&= \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0\}} + \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1\}} \\
&= (1-p-\epsilon+2\epsilon p)\log_2 \frac{1}{1-p-\epsilon+2\epsilon p} + (\epsilon+p-2\epsilon p)\log_2 \frac{1}{\epsilon+p-2\epsilon p}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X}) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{xy}} \log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X})} \\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{1}\sum_{n=0}^{1} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=m,\mathsf{Y}=n\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=n|\mathsf{X}=m\}} \\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{1}\sum_{n=0}^{1} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=n|\mathsf{X}=m\}\,\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=m\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=n|\mathsf{X}=m\}} \\
&= \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0|\mathsf{X}=0\}\,\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=0\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0|\mathsf{X}=0\}} + \\
&\quad \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0|\mathsf{X}=1\}\,\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=1\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=0|\mathsf{X}=1\}} + \\
&\quad \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1|\mathsf{X}=0\}\,\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=0\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1|\mathsf{X}=0\}} + \\
&\quad \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1|\mathsf{X}=1\}\,\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{X}=1\}\log_2 \frac{1}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{Y}=1|\mathsf{X}=1\}} \\
&= (1-\epsilon)(1-p)\log_2 \frac{1}{1-\epsilon} + \epsilon p \log_2 \frac{1}{\epsilon} + \epsilon(1-p)\log_2 \frac{1}{\epsilon} + (1-\epsilon)p\log_2 \frac{1}{1-\epsilon} \\
&= (1-p-\epsilon+\epsilon p+p-\epsilon p)\log_2 \frac{1}{1-\epsilon} + (\epsilon p+\epsilon-\epsilon p)\log_2 \frac{1}{\epsilon} \\
&= (1-\epsilon)\log_2 \frac{1}{1-\epsilon} + \epsilon\log_2 \frac{1}{\epsilon}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) &= \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}) - \mathsf{H}(\mathsf{Y}|\mathsf{X}) \\
&= (1-p-\epsilon+2\epsilon p)\log_2 \frac{1}{1-p-\epsilon+2\epsilon p} + (\epsilon+p-2\epsilon p)\log_2 \frac{1}{\epsilon+p-2\epsilon p} - (1-\epsilon)\log_2 \frac{1}{1-\epsilon} + -\epsilon\log_2 \frac{1}{\epsilon}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{C} &\triangleq \max_p \mathsf{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) \\
&= \mathsf{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y})\big|_{p=\frac{1}{2}} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\log_2 \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} + \frac{1}{2}\log_2 \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} - (1-\epsilon)\log_2 \frac{1}{1-\epsilon} + -\epsilon\log_2 \frac{1}{\epsilon} \\
&= 1 + \epsilon\log_2 \epsilon + (1-\epsilon)\log_2(1-\epsilon)
\end{aligned}$$

✎

Remark B.1.

REM

When $\epsilon = 0$	(noiseless channel), the channel capacity is 1 bit (maximum capacity).
When $\epsilon = 1$	(inverting channel), the channel capacity is still 1 bit.
When $\epsilon = 1/2$	(totally random channel), the channel capacity is 0.
When $p = 1$ (1	is always transmitted), the entropy of X is 0.
When $p = 0$ (0	is always transmitted), the entropy of X is 0.
When $p = 1/2$	(totally random transmission), the entropy of X is 1 bit (maximum entropy).

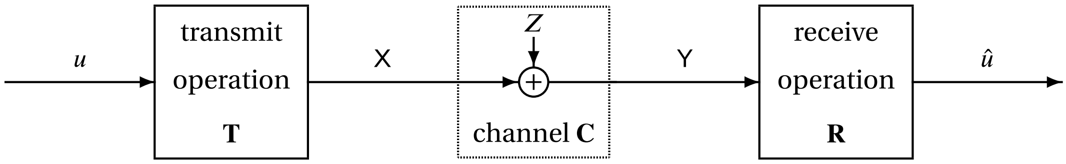


Figure B.7: Additive noise system model

B.3.2 Gaussian Noise Channel

Theorem B.10. *Let* $Z \sim \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right)$. *Then*

THM
$$\mathsf{H}(Z) = \frac{1}{2}\log_2 2\pi e\sigma^2$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{H}(Z) &= \mathsf{E}_z \log \frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(Z)} \\
&= -\mathsf{E}_z \log \mathsf{p}(z) \\
&= -\mathsf{E}_z \log \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} e^{\frac{-z^2}{2\sigma^2}}\right] \\
&= -\mathsf{E}_z \left[-\frac{1}{2}\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \frac{-z^2}{2\sigma^2}\log e\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{E}_z \left[\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \frac{\log e}{\sigma^2} z^2\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \frac{\log e}{\sigma^2}\mathsf{E}_z z^2\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \frac{\log e}{\sigma^2}(\sigma^2 + 0)\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\log(2\pi\sigma^2) + \log e\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\log(2\pi e\sigma^2)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem B.11. [8] *Let* $\mathsf{Y} = \mathsf{X} + Z$ *be a Gaussian channel with* $\mathsf{E}\mathsf{X}^2 = P$ *and* $Z \sim \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right)$. *Then*

THM
$$\mathsf{I}(\mathsf{X};\mathsf{Y}) \le \frac{1}{2}\log\left(1 + \frac{P}{\sigma^2}\right) = \mathsf{C} \qquad \textit{bits per usage}$$

Theorem B.12. [9] *Let* $\mathsf{Y} = \mathsf{X} + Z$ *be a bandlimited Gaussian channel with* $\mathsf{E}\mathsf{X}^2 = P$ *and* $Z \sim \mathsf{N}\left(0, \sigma^2\right)$ *and bandwidth* W. *Then*

THM
$$\mathsf{C} = W\log\left(1 + \frac{P}{\sigma^2 W}\right) \qquad \textit{bits per second}$$

[8] Cover and Thomas (1991), page 241
[9] Cover and Thomas (1991), page 250

APPENDIX C

ESTIMATION OVERVIEW

C.1 Estimation types

Estimation types. Let $x(t; \theta)$ be a waveform with parameter θ. There are three basic types of estimation of x:

1. *detection*:
   - The waveform $x(t; \theta_n)$ is known except for the value of parameter θ_n.
   - The parameter θ_n is one of a finite set of values.
   - Estimate θ_n and thereby also estimate $x(t; \theta)$.
2. *parametric* estimation:
   - The waveform $x(t; \theta)$ is known except for the value of parameter θ.
   - The parameter θ is one of an infinite set of values.
   - Estimate θ and thereby also estimate $x(t; \theta)$.
3. *nonparametric* estimation:
   - The waveform $x(t)$ is unknown and assumed without any parameter θ.
   - Estimate $x(t)$.

Estimation criterion. Optimization requires a criterion against which the quality of an estimate is measured.[1] The most demanding and general criterion is the *Bayesian* criterion. The Bayesian criterion requires knowledge of the probability distribution functions and the definition of a *cost function*. Other criterion are special cases of the Bayesian criterion such that the cost function is defined in a special way, no cost function is defined, and/or the distribution is not known (Figure C.2 page 164).

Estimation techniques. Estimation techniques can be classified into five groups (Figure C.2 page 164):[2]

---

[1] Mandyam D. Srinath (1996) ⟨013125295X⟩.

[2] Nelles (2001) page 26 ⟨"Fig 2.2 Overview of linear and nonlinear optimization techniques"⟩, Nelles (2001) page 33 ⟨"Fig 2.5 The Bayes method is the most general approach but..."⟩, Nelles (2001) page 63 ⟨"Table 3.3 Relationship between linear recursive and nonlinear optimization techniques"⟩, Nelles (2001) page 66

1. sequential decoding
2. norm minimization
3. gradient search
4. inner product analysis
5. direct search

Sequential decoding is a non-linear estimation family. Perhaps the most famous of these is the Veterbi algorithm which uses a trellis to calculate the estimate. The Verterbi algorithm has been shown to yield an optimal estimate in the maximal likelihood (ML) sense. Norm minimization and gradient search algorithms are all linear algorithms. While this restriction to linear operations often simplifies calculations, it often yields an estimate that is not optimal in the ML sense.

C.2 Estimation criterion

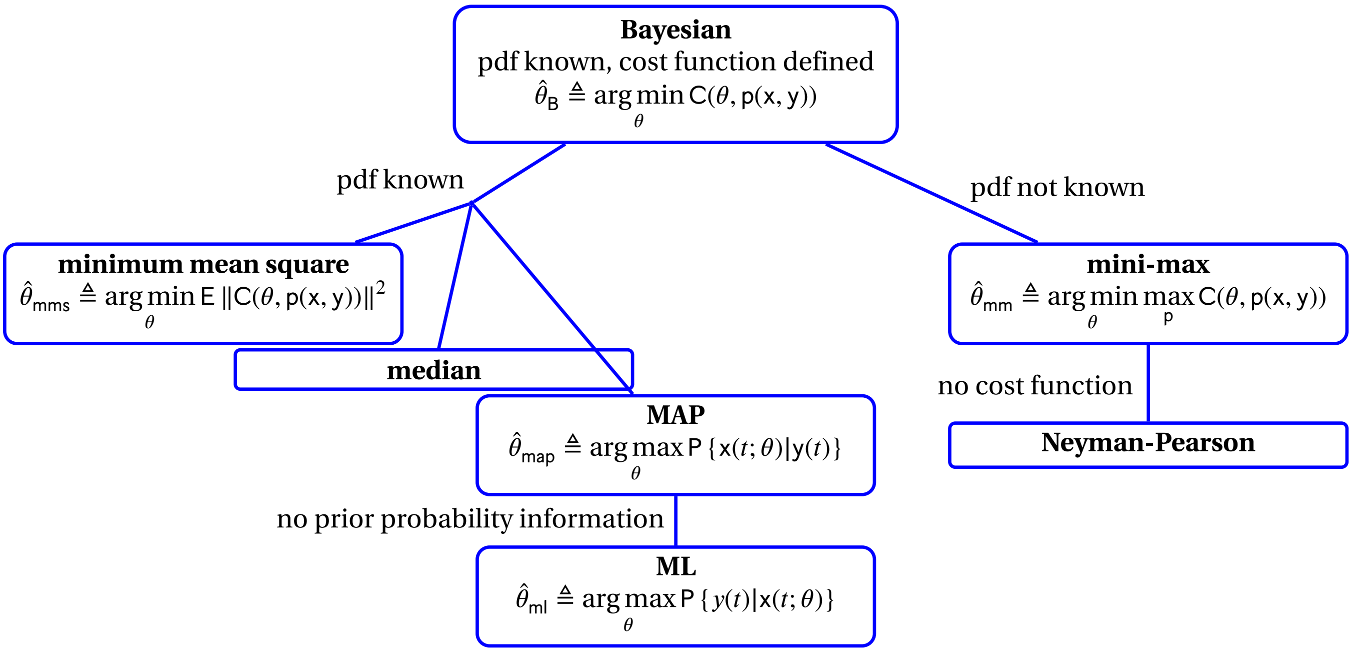


Figure C.1: Estimation criterion

Definition C.1. *Let*

(A). $\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)$ *be a random process with unknown parameter* θ

(B). $\mathsf{y}(t)$ *an observed random process which is statistically dependent on* $\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)$

(C). $\mathsf{C}(\theta, \mathsf{p}(x, y))$ *be a cost function.*

Then the following ***estimates*** *are defined as follows:*

DEF

(1). ***Bayesian estimate*** $\qquad \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{B}} \triangleq \arg\min_{\theta} C(\theta, \mathsf{p}(x, y))$

(2). ***Mean square estimate*** *(“**MS estimate**”)* $\qquad \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{mms}} \triangleq \arg\min_{\theta} \mathsf{E}\,\|C(\theta, \mathsf{p}(x, y))\|^2$

(3). ***mini-max estimate*** *(“**MM estimate**”)* $\qquad \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{mm}} \triangleq \arg\min_{\theta} \max_{\mathsf{p}} C(\theta, \mathsf{p}(x, y))$

(4). ***maximum a-posteriori probability estimate*** *(“**MAP estimate**”)* $\qquad \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{map}} \triangleq \arg\max_{\theta} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{y}(t)\}$

(5). ***maximum likelihood estimate*** *(“**ML estimate**”)* $\qquad \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} \triangleq \arg\max_{\theta} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{y}(t)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}$

Theorem C.1. *Let* $\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)$ *be a random process with unknown parameter* θ.

THM $$\{\mathsf{P}\{\theta\} = \text{CONSTANT}\} \implies \{\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{map}} = \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}}\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{map}} &\triangleq \arg\max_{\theta} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)|\mathsf{y}(t)\} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{map}} && \text{(Definition C.1 page 162)}\\
&\triangleq \arg\max_{\theta} \frac{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\wedge \mathsf{y}(t)\}}{\mathsf{P}\{r(t)\}} && \text{by definition of \textit{conditional probability}} && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)}\\
&\triangleq \arg\max_{\theta} \frac{\mathsf{P}\{r(t)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}}{\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{y}(t)\}} && \text{by definition of \textit{conditional probability}} && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)}\\
&= \arg\max_{\theta} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{y}(t)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}\mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\} && \text{because } \mathsf{y}(t) \text{ is independent of } \theta\\
&= \arg\max_{\theta} \mathsf{P}\{\mathsf{y}(t)|\mathsf{x}(t;\theta)\}\\
&\triangleq \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\theta}_{\mathsf{ml}} && \text{(Definition C.1 page 162)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

C.3 Measures of estimator quality

Definition C.2. [3]

DEF *The **mean square error*** $\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\theta})$ *of an estimate* $\hat{\theta}$ *of a parameter* θ *is defined as*

$$\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\theta}) \triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)^2\right]$$

Definition C.3. [4]

DEF *The **normalized rms error*** $\epsilon(\hat{\theta})$ *of an estimate* $\hat{\theta}$ *of a parameter* θ *is defined as*

$$\epsilon(\hat{\theta}) \triangleq \frac{\sqrt{\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\theta})}}{\theta} \triangleq \frac{\sqrt{\mathsf{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)^2\right]}}{\theta}$$

Definition C.4. [5]

DEF *The **mean integrated square error*** $\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\theta})$ *of an estimate* $\hat{\theta}$ *of a parameter* θ *is defined as*

$$\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\theta}) \triangleq \mathsf{E}\int_{\theta\in\mathbb{R}} \left[\left(\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)^2\right]$$

The *mean square error* of $\hat{\theta}$ can be expressed as the sum of two components: the variance of $\hat{\theta}$ and the bias of $\hat{\theta}$ squared (next Theorem). For an example of Theorem C.2 in action, see the proof for the $\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\mu})$ of the *arithmetic mean estimate* as provided in Theorem **??** (page **??**).

Theorem C.2. [6] *Let* $\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\theta})$ *be the* MEAN SQUARE ERROR *(Definition C.2 page 163) and* $\epsilon(\hat{\theta})$ *the* NORMALIZED

[3] Silverman (1986) page 35 ⟨§"1.3.2 Measures of discrepancy..."⟩, Bendat and Piersol (2010) ⟨§"1.4.3 Error Analysis Criteria"⟩, Bendat and Piersol (1966), page 183§"5.3 Statistical Errors for Parameter Estimates"

[4] Bendat and Piersol (2010) ⟨§"1.4.3 Error Analysis Criteria"⟩

[5] Silverman (1986) page 35 ⟨§"1.3.2 Measures of discrepancy..."⟩, Rosenblatt (1956) page 835 ⟨"integrated mean square error"⟩

[6] Choi (1978) page 76, Kay (1988) page 45 ⟨§"3.3 ESTIMATION THEORY"⟩, STUART AND ORD (1991) PAGE 629 ⟨"MINIUM MEAN-SQUARE-ERROR ESTIMATION"⟩, CLARKSON (1993) PAGE 51 ⟨§"2.6 ESTIMATION OF MOMENTS"⟩, BENDAT AND PIERSOL (2010) ⟨§"1.4.3 ERROR ANALYSIS CRITERIA"⟩, BENDAT AND PIERSOL (1966), PAGE 183§"5.3 STATISTICAL ERRORS FOR PARAMETER ESTIMATES", BENDAT AND PIERSOL (1980) PAGE 39 ⟨§"2.4.1 BIAS VERSUS RANDOM ERRORS"⟩

RMS ERROR *(Definition C.3 page 163) of an estimator $\hat{\theta}$.*

THM

$$\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\theta}) = \underbrace{\mathsf{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta}-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\right)^2\right]}_{\text{variance of }\hat{\theta}} + \underbrace{\left[\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\theta\right]^2}_{\text{bias of }\hat{\theta}\text{ squared}} \qquad \epsilon(\hat{\theta}) = \frac{\sqrt{\mathsf{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta}-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\right)^2\right]+\left[\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\theta\right]^2}}{\theta}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{mse}(\hat{\theta}) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)^2\right] && \text{by definition of mse} \quad \text{(Definition C.2 page 163)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta}\underbrace{-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}+\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}}_{0}-\theta\right)^2\right] && \text{by } \textit{additive identity} \text{ property of } (\mathbb{C},+,\cdot,0,1)\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta}-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\right)^2+\underbrace{\left(\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)^2}_{\text{constant}}-2\left(\hat{\theta}-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\right)\left(\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)\right] && \text{by } \textit{Binomial Theorem}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left(\hat{\theta}-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\right)^2+\left(\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)^2-2\mathsf{E}\left[\hat{\theta}\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\hat{\theta}\theta-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\hat{\theta}+\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\theta\right] && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \mathsf{E} \quad \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left(\hat{\theta}-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\right)^2+\left(\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)^2-2\underbrace{\left[\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\mathsf{E}\theta-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}+\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\mathsf{E}\theta\right]}_{0} && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \mathsf{E} \quad \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}\\
&= \mathsf{E}\left(\hat{\theta}-\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}\right)^2+\left(\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta}-\theta\right)^2
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Definition C.5. [7]

DEF *An estimate $\hat{\theta}$ of a parameter θ is a **minimum variance unbiased estimator** (MVUE) if*

(1). $\mathsf{E}\hat{\theta} = 0$ (UNBIASED) *and*

(2). *no other unbiased estimator $\hat{\phi}$ has smaller variance* $\mathrm{var}(\hat{\phi})$

C.4 Estimation techniques

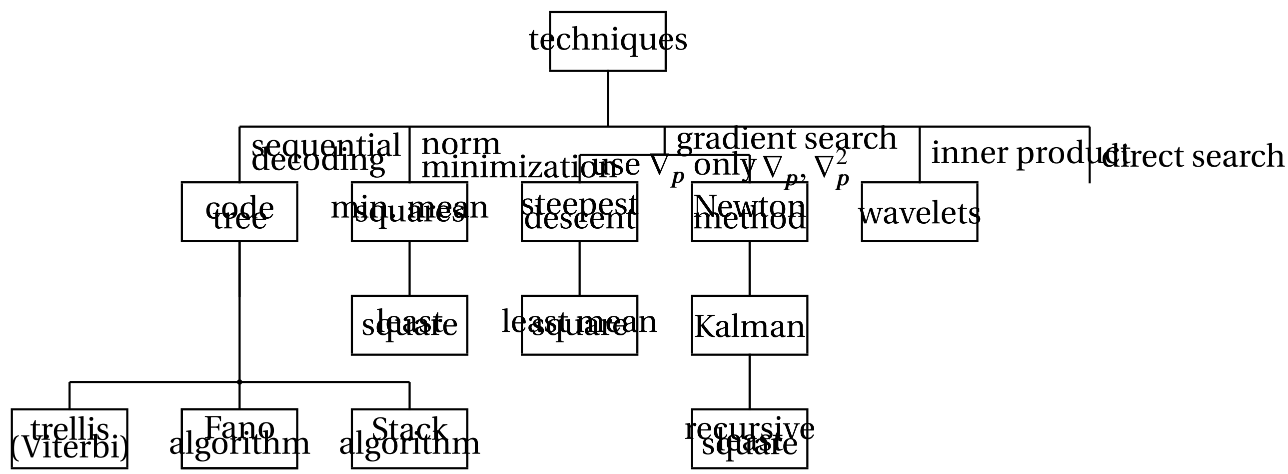


Figure C.2: Estimation techniques

[7] Choi (1978) page 76, Shao (2003) page 161 ⟨§"The UMVUE"⟩, Bolstad (2007) page 164 ⟨§"Minimum Variance Unbiased Estimator"⟩,

C.5 Sequential decoding

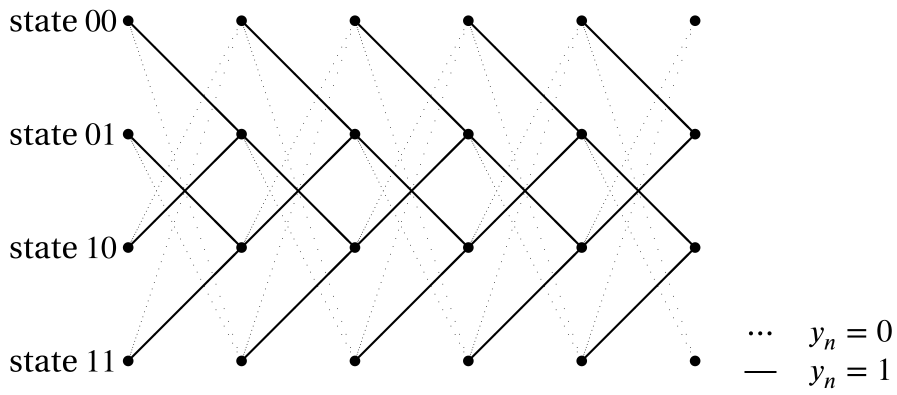


Figure C.3: Viterbi algorithm trellis

It has been shown that the Viterbi algorithm (trellis) produces an optimal estimate in the maximal likelihood (ML) sense. A Verterbi trellis is shown in Figure C.3 (page 165).

APPENDIX D

RANDOM PROCESS EIGEN-ANALYSIS

D.1 Definitions

Definition D.1. *Let* $\mathsf{x}(t)$ *be random processes with* AUTO-CORRELATION *function* (Definition **??** page **??**) $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)$.

DEF	*The* ***auto-correlation operator*** $\mathbf{R}$ *of* $\mathsf{x}(t)$ *is defined as* $\mathbf{R}\mathsf{f} \triangleq \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\mathsf{f}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u$

Definition D.2. *Let* $\mathsf{x}(t)$ *be a* RANDOM PROCESS *with* AUTO-CORRELATION $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(\tau)$ (Definition **??** page **??**).

DEF	*A* RANDOM PROCESS $\mathsf{x}(t)$ *is* ***white*** *if* $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(\tau) = \delta(\tau)$

If a random process $\mathsf{x}(t)$ is *white* (Definition D.2 page 167) and the set $\Psi = \left\{\psi_1(t), \psi_2(t), \ldots, \psi_N(t)\right\}$ is **any** set of orthonormal basis functions, then the innerproducts $\langle n(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle$ and $\langle n(t) \,|\, \psi_m(t)\rangle$ are *uncorrelated* for $m \neq n$. However, if $\mathsf{x}(t)$ is **colored** (not white), then the innerproducts are not in general uncorrelated. But if the elements of Ψ are chosen to be the eigenfunctions of $\mathbf{R}$ such that $\mathbf{R}\psi_n = \lambda_n\psi_n$, then by Theorem **??** (page **??**), the set $\left\{\psi_n(t)\right\}$ are *orthogonal* and the innerproducts **are** *uncorrelated* even though $\mathsf{x}(t)$ is not white. This criterion is called the Karhunen-Loève criterion for $\mathsf{x}(t)$.

Theorem D.1. *Let* $\mathbf{R}$ *be an* AUTO-CORRELATION *operator.*

THM			
	$\langle \mathbf{R}\mathsf{x} \,|\, \mathsf{x}\rangle \geq 0$	$\forall \mathsf{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}$	(NON-NEGATIVE)
	$\langle \mathbf{R}\mathsf{x} \,|\, \mathsf{y}\rangle = \langle \mathsf{x} \,|\, \mathbf{R}\mathsf{y}\rangle$	$\forall \mathsf{x},\mathsf{y} \in \boldsymbol{X}$	(SELF-ADJOINT)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{R}$ is *non-negative*:

$$\langle \mathbf{R}\mathsf{y} \,|\, \mathsf{y}\rangle = \left\langle \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\mathsf{y}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u \,\middle|\, \mathsf{y}(t)\right\rangle \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \qquad \text{(Definition D.1 page 167)}$$

$$= \left\langle \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(u)\right]\mathsf{y}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u \,\middle|\, \mathsf{y}(t)\right\rangle \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u) \qquad \text{(Definition ?? page ??)}$$

$$= \mathsf{E}\left[\left\langle \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(u)\mathsf{y}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u \,\middle|\, \mathsf{y}(t)\right\rangle\right] \qquad \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle \text{ and } \int$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}^*(u)\mathsf{y}(u)\,\mathrm{d}u\,\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{y}(t)\rangle\right] && \text{by \textit{additivity} property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{y}(u)\,|\,\mathsf{x}(u)\rangle\,\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{y}(t)\rangle\right] && \text{by local definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle \\
&= \mathsf{E}\left[\langle \mathsf{x}(u)\,|\,\mathsf{y}(u)\rangle^*\,\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{y}(t)\rangle\right] && \text{by \textit{conjugate symmetry} prop.} \\
&= \mathsf{E}|\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{y}(t)\rangle|^2 && \text{by definition of } |\cdot| \quad \text{(Definition ?? page ??)} \\
&\geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{R}$ is self-adjoint:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle [\mathbf{R}\mathsf{x}](t)\,|\,\mathsf{y}\rangle &= \left\langle \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\mathsf{x}(u)\,\mathrm{d}u\,|\,\mathsf{y}(t)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \quad \text{(Definition D.1 page 167)} \\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}(u)\,\langle \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\,|\,\mathsf{y}(t)\rangle\;\mathrm{d}u && \text{by \textit{additive} property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle \\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}(u)\,\langle \mathsf{y}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\rangle^*\;\mathrm{d}u && \text{by \textit{conjugate symmetry} prop.} \\
&= \langle \mathsf{x}(u)\,|\,\langle \mathsf{y}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\rangle\rangle && \text{by local definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{x}(u)\,|\,\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{y}(t)\mathsf{R}^*_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\,\mathrm{d}t\right\rangle && \text{by local definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{x}(u)\,|\,\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{y}(t)\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(u,t)\,\mathrm{d}t\right\rangle && \text{by property of } \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}} \quad \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)} \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{x}(u)\,|\,\underbrace{\mathbf{R}}_{\mathbf{R}^*}\mathsf{y}\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \quad \text{(Definition D.1 page 167)}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\Longrightarrow \quad \mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}^* \quad \Longrightarrow \mathbf{R} \text{ is \textit{self adjoint}}$$

✎

D.2 Properties

Theorem D.2. [1] *Let $(\lambda_n)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ be the eigenvalues and $(\psi_n)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ be the eigenfunctions of operator $\mathbf{R}$ such that $\mathbf{R}\psi_n = \lambda_n\psi_n$.*

THM

1. $\lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$ — *(eigenvalues of $\mathbf{R}$ are* REAL*)*
2. $\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \implies \langle \psi_n \,|\, \psi_m\rangle = 0$ — *(eigenfunctions associated with distinct eigenvalues are* ORTHOGONAL*)*
3. $\|\psi_n(t)\|^2 > 0 \implies \lambda_n \geq 0$ — *(eigenvalues are* NON-NEGATIVE*)*
4. $\|\psi_n(t)\|^2 > 0, \langle \mathbf{R}\mathsf{f}\,|\,\mathsf{f}\rangle > 0 \implies \lambda_n > 0$ — *(if $\mathbf{R}$ is* POSITIVE DEFINITE*, then eigenvalues are* POSITIVE*)*

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that eigenvalues are *real-valued*: Because $\mathbf{R}$ is self-adjoint, its eigenvalues are real.

2. eigenfunctions associated with distinct eigenvalues are orthogonal: Because $\mathbf{R}$ is self-adjoint, this property follows.

[1] Keener (1988), pages 114–119

3. Proof that eigenvalues are *non-negative*:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &\geq \langle \mathbf{R}\psi_n \,|\, \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition of non-negative definite}\\
&= \langle \lambda_n \psi_n \,|\, \psi_n \rangle && \text{by hypothesis}\\
&= \lambda_n \langle \psi_n \,|\, \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition of inner-products}\\
&= \lambda_n \left\|\psi_n\right\|^2 && \text{by definition of norm induced by inner-product}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Eigenvalues are *positive* if $\mathbf{R}$ is *positive definite*:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &> \langle \mathbf{R}\psi_n \,|\, \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition of \textit{positive definite}}\\
&= \langle \lambda_n \psi_n \,|\, \psi_n \rangle && \text{by hypothesis}\\
&= \lambda_n \langle \psi_n \,|\, \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition of inner-products}\\
&= \lambda_n \left\|\psi_n\right\|^2 && \text{by definition of norm induced by inner-product}
\end{aligned}$$

⇨

Theorem D.3 (Karhunen-Loève Expansion). [2] *Let* $\mathbf{R}$ *be the* AUTO-CORRELATION OPERATOR *(Definition D.1 page 167) of a* RANDOM PROCESS $\mathsf{x}(t)$*. Let* $(\lambda_n)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be the eigenvalues of* $\mathbf{R}$ *and* $(\psi_n)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *are the eigenfunctions of* $\mathbf{R}$ *such that* $\mathbf{R}\psi_n = \lambda_n\psi_n$.

THM

$$\underbrace{\left\|\psi_n(t)\right\| = 1}_{\{\psi_n(t)\}\text{ are NORMALIZED}} \implies \underbrace{\mathsf{E}\left(\left|\mathsf{x}(t) - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \langle \mathsf{x}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle\, \psi_n(t)\right|^2\right) = 0}_{\text{CONVERGENCE IN PROBABILITY}} \qquad (\{\psi_n(t)\} \text{ is a BASIS for } \mathsf{x}(t))$$

✎PROOF:

1. Define $\dot{x}_n \triangleq \langle \mathsf{x}(t) \,|\, \psi_n(t)\rangle$

2. Define $\mathbf{R}\mathsf{x}(t) \triangleq \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\mathsf{x}(u)\; \mathsf{d}u$

3. lemma: $\mathsf{E}[\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}(t)] = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \lambda_n \left|\psi_n(t)\right|^2$. Proof:

$$\mathsf{E}[\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}(t)] = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \lambda_n \left|\psi_n(t)\right|^2 \qquad \begin{array}{lll} \text{by} & \textit{non-negative}\text{ property} & \text{(Theorem D.1 page 167)}\\ \text{and} & \textit{Mercer's Theorem} & \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}\end{array}$$

4. lemma:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{x}(t)\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\right)^*\right]\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{x}(t)\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}(u)\psi_n^*(u)\; \mathsf{d}u\psi_n(t)\right)^*\right] && \text{by definition of } \dot{x} && \text{(definition 1 page 169)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left(\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(u)\right]\psi_n(u)\; \mathsf{d}u\right)\psi_n^*(t) && \text{by \textit{linearity}} && \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}\\
&\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left(\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\psi_n(u)\; \mathsf{d}u\right)\psi_n^*(t) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u) && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)}
\end{aligned}$$

[2] Keener (1988), pages 114–119

$$\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left(\mathbf{R}\psi_n(t)\psi_n^*(t)\right) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \quad \text{(definition 2 page 169)}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \lambda_n\psi_n(t)\psi_n^*(t) \qquad \text{by property of } \textit{eigen-system}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \lambda_n\left|\psi_n(t)\right|^2$$

5. lemma:

$$\mathsf{E}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \dot{x}_m\psi_m(t)\right)^*\right]$$
$$\triangleq \mathsf{E}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}(u)\psi_n^*(u)\;\mathsf{d}u\psi_n(t)\left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_v \mathsf{x}(v)\psi_m^*(v)\;\mathsf{d}v\psi_m(t)\right)^*\right] \qquad \text{by definition of } \dot{x} \text{ (definition 1 page 169)}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_u\left(\int_v \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{x}(u)\mathsf{x}^*(v)\right]\psi_m(v)\;\mathsf{d}v\right)\psi_n^*(u)\;\mathsf{d}u\psi_n(t)\psi_m^*(t) \qquad \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ (Theorem ?? page ??)}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_u\left(\int_v \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(u,v)\psi_m(v)\;\mathsf{d}v\right)\psi_n^*(u)\;\mathsf{d}u\psi_n(t)\psi_m^*(t) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u) \text{ (Definition ?? page ??)}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_u \left(\mathbf{R}\psi_m(u)\right)\psi_n^*(u)\;\mathsf{d}u\psi_n(t)\psi_m^*(t) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \text{ (definition 2 page 169)}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_u \left(\lambda_m\psi_m(u)\right)\psi_n^*(u)\;\mathsf{d}u\psi_n(t)\psi_m^*(t) \qquad \text{by property of } \textit{eigen-system}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_m\left(\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \psi_m(u)\psi_n^*(u)\;\mathsf{d}u\right)\psi_n(t)\psi_m^*(t) \qquad \text{by } \textit{linearity}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_m\left\|\psi(t)\right\|^2\bar{\delta}_{mn}\psi_n(t)\psi_m^*(t) \qquad \text{by } \textit{orthogonal} \text{ property (Theorem D.2 page 168)}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_m\bar{\delta}_{mn}\psi_n(t)\psi_m^*(t) \qquad \text{by } \textit{normalized} \text{ hypothesis}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_n\psi_n(t)\psi_n^*(t) \qquad \text{by definition of } \textit{Kronecker delta } \bar{\delta} \text{ (Definition ?? page ??)}$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_n\left|\psi_n(t)\right|^2$$

6. Proof that $\{\psi_n(t)\}$ is a *basis* for $\mathsf{x}(t)$:

$$\mathsf{E}\left(\left|\mathsf{x}(t) - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\right|^2\right)$$
$$= \mathsf{E}\left(\left[\mathsf{x}(t) - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\right]\left[\mathsf{x}(t) - \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_m\psi_m(t)\right]^*\right)$$
$$= \mathsf{E}\left(\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(t) - \mathsf{x}(t)\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\right]^* - \mathsf{x}^*(t)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_n\psi_n(t) + \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\right]\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_m\psi_m(t)\right]^*\right)$$
$$= \mathsf{E}\left(\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(t)\right) - \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{x}(t)\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\right]^*\right] - \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{x}^*(t)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\right] + \mathsf{E}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_n\psi_n(t)\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\dot{x}_m\psi_m(t)\right]^*\right]$$

by *linearity* of E (Theorem ?? page ??)

$$= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_n\left|\psi_n(t)\right|^2}_{\text{by (3) lemma}} - \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_n\left|\psi_n(t)\right|^2}_{\text{by (4) lemma}} - \underbrace{\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_n\left|\psi_n(t)\right|^2\right]^*}_{\text{by (4) lemma}} + \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\lambda_n\left|\psi_n(t)\right|^2}_{\text{by (5) lemma}}$$

$= 0$

✏

Remark D.1. The *matrix* $\mathbf{R}$ is **Toeplitz**. For more information about the properties of *Toeplitz* matrices, see Grenander and Szegö (1958), Widom (1965), Gray (1971), Smylie et al. (1973) page 408 ⟨§"B. Properties of the Toeplitz Matrix"⟩, Grenander and Szegö (1984), Haykin and Kesler (1979), Haykin and Kesler (1983), Böttcher and Silbermann (1999), Gray (2006).

APPENDIX E

ESTIMATION USING MATCHED FILTER

Let S be the set of transmitted waveforms and Y be a set of orthonormal basis functions that span S. *Signal matching* computes the innerproducts of a received signal $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$ with each signal from S. *Orthonormal decomposition* computes the innerproducts of $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$ with each signal from the set Y.

In the case where $|S|$ is large, often $|Y| << |S|$ making orthonormal decomposition much easier to implement. For example, in a QAM-64 modulation system, signal matching requires $|S| = 64$ innerproduct calculations, while orthonormal decomposition only requires $|Y| = 2$ innerproduct calculations because all 64 signals in S can be spanned by just 2 orthonormal basis functions.

Maximizing SNR. Theorem 4.1 (page 31) shows that the innerproducts of $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$ with basis functions of Y is *sufficient* for optimal detection. Theorem E.1 (page 173) (next) shows that a receiver can maximize the SNR of a received signal when signal matching is used.

Theorem E.1. *Let* $\mathsf{x}(t)$ *be a transmitted signal,* $\mathsf{v}(t)$ *noise, and* $\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)$ *the received signal in an AWGN channel. Let the* SIGNAL TO NOISE RATIO *SNR be defined as*

$$\mathrm{SNR}[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)] \triangleq \frac{|\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{x}(t)\rangle|^2}{\mathsf{E}\left[|\langle \mathsf{v}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{x}(t)\rangle|^2\right]}.$$

THM $$\mathrm{SNR}[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)] \le \frac{2\,\|\mathsf{x}(t)\|^2}{N_o}$$ *and is maximized (equality) when* $\mathsf{x}(t) = a\mathsf{x}(t)$, *where* $a \in \mathbb{R}$.

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{SNR}[\mathsf{y}(t;\theta)] &\triangleq \frac{|\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{x}(t)\rangle|^2}{\mathsf{E}\left[|\langle \mathsf{v}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{x}(t)\rangle|^2\right]} \\
&= \frac{|\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,f(t)\rangle|^2}{\mathsf{E}\left[\left[\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{v}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(t)\;dt\right]\left[\int_{\hat{\theta}} n(\hat{\theta})f^*(\hat{\theta})\;du\right]^*\right]} \\
&= \frac{|\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,\mathsf{x}(t)\rangle|^2}{\mathsf{E}\left[\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{v}(t)n^*(\hat{\theta})\mathsf{x}^*(t)\mathsf{x}(\hat{\theta})\;\;\mathrm{d}t\;\mathrm{d}u\right]} \\
&= \frac{|\langle \mathsf{x}(t)\,|\,f(t)\rangle|^2}{\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}}\int_{\hat{\theta}} \mathsf{E}\left[\mathsf{v}(t)n^*(\hat{\theta})\right]\mathsf{x}^*(t)\mathsf{x}(\hat{\theta})\;\;\mathrm{d}t\;\mathrm{d}u}
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{|\langle \mathsf{x}(t) \mid \mathsf{x}(t)\rangle|^2}{\int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \int_{\hat{\theta}} \frac{1}{2} N_o \delta(t-\hat{\theta}) \mathsf{x}^*(t)\mathsf{x}(\hat{\theta})\ \mathrm{d}t\ \mathrm{d}u} \\
&= \frac{|\langle \mathsf{x}(t) \mid \mathsf{x}(t)\rangle|^2}{\frac{1}{2} N_o \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}^*(t)\mathsf{x}(t)\ \mathrm{d}t} \\
&= \frac{|\langle \mathsf{x}(t) \mid \mathsf{x}(t)\rangle|^2}{\frac{1}{2} N_o \left\|\mathsf{x}(t)\right\|^2} \\
&\le \frac{|\left\|\mathsf{x}(t)\right\|\ \left\|\mathsf{x}(t)\right\||^2}{\frac{1}{2} N_o \left\|\mathsf{x}(t)\right\|^2} && \text{by *Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality*} \\
&= \frac{2\left\|\mathsf{x}(t)\right\|^2}{N_o}
\end{aligned}
$$

The Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality becomes an equality (SNR is maximized) when $\mathsf{x}(t) = a\mathsf{x}(t)$. ✏

Implementation. The innerproduct operations can be implemented using either

1. a correlator or
2. a matched filter.

A correlator is simply an integrator of the form $\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \mid f(t)\rangle = \int_0^T \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) f(t)\ \mathrm{d}t$.

A matched filter introduces a function $\mathsf{h}(t)$ such that $\mathsf{h}(t) = \mathsf{x}(T-t)$ (which implies $\mathsf{x}(t) = h(T-t)$) giving

$$
\underbrace{\langle \mathsf{y}(t;\theta) \mid \mathsf{x}(t)\rangle = \int_0^T \mathsf{y}(t;\theta)\mathsf{x}(t)\ \mathrm{d}t}_{\text{correlator}} = \underbrace{\left.\int_0^\infty \mathsf{x}(\tau)h(t-\tau)\ \mathrm{d}\tau\right|_{t=T} = \left.\mathsf{x}(t) \star \mathsf{h}(t)\right|_{t=T}}_{\text{matched filter}}.
$$

This shows that $\mathsf{h}(t)$ is the impulse response of a filter operation sampled at time τ. By Theorem E.1 (page 173), the optimal impulse response is $\mathsf{h}(\tau - t) = \mathsf{f}(t) = \mathsf{x}(t)$. That is, the optimal $\mathsf{h}(t)$ is just a "flipped" and shifted version of $\mathsf{x}(t)$.

APPENDIX F

TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

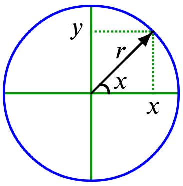
F.1 Definition Candidates

Definition F.1 (Hermitian components). [1] *Let* $(\mathbb{F}, *)$ *be a* $*$*-algebra a* (STAR ALGEBRA).

DEF	*The **real part** of* x *is defined as*	$\Re x \triangleq \frac{1}{2}\left(x + x^*\right)$	$\forall x \in \mathbb{F}$
	*The **imaginary part** of* x *is defined as*	$\Im x \triangleq \frac{1}{2i}\left(x - x^*\right)$	$\forall x \in \mathbb{F}$

There are several ways of defining the sine and cosine functions, including the following:[2]

1. **Planar geometry:** Trigonometric functions are traditionally introduced as they have come to us historically—that is, as related to the parameters of triangles.[3]



$$\cos x \triangleq \frac{x}{r} \qquad \sin x \triangleq \frac{y}{r}$$

2. **Complex exponential:** The cosine and sine functions are the real and imaginary parts of the complex exponential such that[4]

$$\cos x \triangleq \mathbf{R}_e e^{ix} \qquad \sin x \triangleq \mathbf{I}_m\left(e^{ix}\right)$$

3. **Polynomial:** Let $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \sum_{n=0}^{N} x_n$ in some topological space. The sine and cosine functions

---

[1] Michel and Herget (1993) page 430, Rickart (1960) page 179, Gelfand and Naimark (1964) page 242

[2] The term *sine* originally came from the Hindu word *jiva* and later adapted to the Arabic word *jiba*. Abrabic-Latin translator Robert of Chester apparently confused this word with the Arabic word *jaib*, which means "bay" or "inlet"—thus resulting in the Latin translation *sinus*, which also means "bay" or "inlet". Reference: Boyer and Merzbach (1991) page 252

[3] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 78

[4] Euler (1748)

can be defined in terms of *Taylor expansion*s such that[5]

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x) &\triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n)!}\, x^{2n} &&= 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots \\
\sin(x) &\triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n+1)!}\, x^{2n+1} &&= x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots
\end{aligned}$$

4. **Product of factors:** Let $\prod_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \prod_{n=0}^{N} x_n$ in some topological space. The sine and cosine functions can be defined in terms of a product of factors such that[6]

$$\cos(x) \triangleq \prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\left[1 - \left(\frac{x}{(2n-1)\frac{\pi}{2}}\right)^2\right] \qquad \sin(x) \triangleq x \prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\left[1 - \left(\frac{x}{n\pi}\right)^2\right]$$

5. **Partial fraction expansion:** The sine function can be defined in terms of a partial fraction expansion such that[7]

$$\sin(x) \triangleq \frac{1}{\frac{1}{x} + 2x\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^n}{x^2-(n\pi)^2}} \qquad \cos(x) \triangleq \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{x} + 2x\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2-(n\pi)^2}\right)}_{\cot(x)}\sin(x)$$

6. **Differential operator:** The sine and cosine functions can be defined as solutions to differential equations expressed in terms of the differential operator $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x) &\triangleq \mathsf{f}(x) \quad\text{where}\quad \underbrace{\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f} + \mathsf{f} = 0}_{\text{differential equation}} \quad \underbrace{\mathsf{f}(0) = 1}_{\text{1st initial condition}} \quad \underbrace{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0) = 0}_{\text{2nd initial condition}} \\
\sin(x) &\triangleq \mathsf{g}(x) \quad\text{where}\quad \underbrace{\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{g} + \mathsf{g} = 0}_{\text{differential equation}} \quad \underbrace{\mathsf{g}(0) = 0}_{\text{1st initial condition}} \quad \underbrace{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{g}\right](0) = 1}_{\text{2nd initial condition}}
\end{aligned}$$

7. **Integral operator:** The sine and cosine functions can be defined as inverses of integrals of square roots of rational functions such that[8]

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x) &\triangleq \mathsf{f}^{-1}(x) \quad\text{where}\quad \mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \underbrace{\int_x^1 \sqrt{\frac{1}{1-y^2}}\,\mathrm{d}y}_{\arccos(x)} \\
\sin(x) &\triangleq \mathsf{g}^{-1}(x) \quad\text{where}\quad \mathsf{g}(x) \triangleq \underbrace{\int_0^x \sqrt{\frac{1}{1-y^2}}\,\mathrm{d}y}_{\arcsin(x)}
\end{aligned}$$

For purposes of analysis, it can be argued that the more natural approach for defining harmonic functions is in terms of the differentiation operator $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}$ (Definition F.2 page 177). Support for such an approach includes the following:

[5] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157, Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 74
[6] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 75
[7] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 75
[8] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 79

- Both sine and cosine are very easily represented analytically as polynomials with coefficients involving the operator $\frac{d}{dx}$ (Theorem F.1 page 179).
- All solutions of homogeneous second order differential equations are linear combinations of sine and cosine (Theorem F.3 page 180).
- Sine and cosine themselves are related to each other in terms of the differentiation operator (Theorem F.4 page 181).
- The complex exponential function is a solution of a second order homogeneous differential equation (Definition F.5 page 182).
- Sine and cosine are orthogonal with respect to an innerproduct generated by an integral operator—which is a kind of inverse differential operator (Section F.6 page 190).

F.2 Definitions

Definition F.2. [9] *Let $\boldsymbol{C}$ be the* SPACE OF ALL CONTINUOUSLY DIFFERENTIABLE REAL FUNCTIONS *and $\frac{d}{dx} \in \boldsymbol{C}^{\boldsymbol{C}}$ the differentiation operator.*

DEF

*The function $f \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ is the **cosine** function $\cos(x) \triangleq f(x)$ if*

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} 1. & \frac{d^2}{dx^2}f + f &=& 0 & \text{(second order homogeneous differential equation)} \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & f(0) &=& 1 & \text{(first initial condition)} \quad \text{and} \\ 3. & \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0) &=& 0 & \text{(second initial condition).} \end{array}$$

Definition F.3. [10] *Let $\boldsymbol{C}$ and $\frac{d}{dx} \in \boldsymbol{C}^{\boldsymbol{C}}$ be defined as in definition of $\cos(x)$ (Definition F.2 page 177).*

DEF

*The function $f \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ is the **sine** function $\sin(x) \triangleq f(x)$ if*

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} 1. & \frac{d^2}{dx^2}f + f &=& 0 & \text{(second order homogeneous differential equation)} \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & f(0) &=& 0 & \text{(first initial condition)} \quad \text{and} \\ 3. & \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0) &=& 1 & \text{(second initial condition).} \end{array}$$

Definition F.4. [11]

DEF

Let π ("pi") be defined as the element in $\mathbb{R}$ such that

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} (1). & \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &=& 0 & \text{and} \\ (2). & \pi &>& 0 & \text{and} \end{array}$$

(3). *π is the **smallest** of all elements in $\mathbb{R}$ that satisfies (1) and (2).*

F.3 Basic properties

Lemma F.1. [12] *Let $\boldsymbol{C}$ be the* SPACE OF ALL CONTINUOUSLY DIFFERENTIABLE REAL FUNCTIONS *and $\frac{d}{dx} \in \boldsymbol{C}^{\boldsymbol{C}}$ the differentiation operator.*

---

[9] Rosenlicht (1968) page 157, Flanigan (1983) pages 228–229
[10] Rosenlicht (1968) page 157, Flanigan (1983) pages 228–229
[11] Rosenlicht (1968) page 158
[12] Rosenlicht (1968), page 156, Liouville (1839)

LEM

$$\left\{\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}+\mathsf{f}=0\right\} \iff \left\{\begin{aligned}\mathsf{f}(x) &= \underbrace{[\mathsf{f}](0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\textit{even terms}} + \underbrace{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\textit{odd terms}} \\ &= \left(\mathsf{f}(0)+\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)x\right) - \left(\frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{3!}x^3\right) + \left(\frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{4!}x^4 + \frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{5!}x^5\right)\cdots\end{aligned}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: Let $\mathsf{f}'(x) \triangleq \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}(x)$.

$$\mathsf{f}'''(x) = -\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](x)$$

$$\mathsf{f}^{(4)}(x) = -\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](x) \qquad = -\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}\right](x) = \mathsf{f}(x)$$

1. Proof that $\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}\right](x)+\mathsf{f}(x)=0 \implies \mathsf{f}(x)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n}+\frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right]$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\mathsf{f}^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n && \text{by Taylor expansion}\\
&= \mathsf{f}(0)+\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)x - \frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{2!}x^2 - \frac{\mathsf{f}^3(0)}{3!}x^3 + \frac{\mathsf{f}^4(0)}{4!}x^4 + \frac{\mathsf{f}^5(0)}{5!}x^5 - \cdots\\
&= \mathsf{f}(0)+\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)x - \frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{2!}x^2 - \frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{3!}x^3 + \frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{4!}x^4 + \frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{5!}x^5 - \cdots\\
&= \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n}+\frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}\right](x)+\mathsf{f}(x)=0 \impliedby \mathsf{f}(x)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n}+\frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right]$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}\right](x) &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}[\mathsf{f}(x)]\\
&= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n}+\frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right] && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{(2n)(2n-1)\mathsf{f}(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n-2}+\frac{(2n+1)(2n)\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n-1}\right]\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{(2n-2)!}x^{2n-2}+\frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{(2n-1)!}x^{2n-1}\right]\\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{n+1}\left[\frac{\mathsf{f}(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n}+\frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right]\\
&= -\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by right hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem F.1 (Taylor series for cosine/sine). [13]

$$\cos(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

$$\sin(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x) &= \underbrace{\mathsf{f}(0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\left[\tfrac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\text{odd terms}} && \text{by Lemma F.1 page 177}\\
&= 1\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + 0\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} && \text{by cos initial conditions (Definition F.2 page 177)}\\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x) &= \underbrace{\mathsf{f}(0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\left[\tfrac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\text{odd terms}} && \text{by Lemma F.1 page 177}\\
&= 0\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + 1\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} && \text{by sin initial conditions (Definition F.3 page 177)}\\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem F.2. [14]

$$\begin{array}{rcl|rcll}
\cos(0) &=& 1 & \cos(-x) &=& \cos(x) & \forall x\in\mathbb{R}\\
\sin(0) &=& 0 & \sin(-x) &=& -\sin(x) & \forall x\in\mathbb{R}
\end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(0) &= 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots\Big|_{x=0} && \text{by \textit{Taylor series for cosine} (Theorem F.1 page 179)}\\
&= 1\\
\sin(0) &= x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots\Big|_{x=0} && \text{by \textit{Taylor series for sine} (Theorem F.1 page 179)}\\
&= 0\\
\cos(-x) &= 1 - \frac{(-x)^2}{2} + \frac{(-x)^4}{4!} - \frac{(-x)^6}{6!} + \cdots && \text{by \textit{Taylor series for cosine} (Theorem F.1 page 179)}\\
&= 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots\\
&= \cos(x) && \text{by \textit{Taylor series for cosine} (Theorem F.1 page 179)}\\
\sin(-x) &= (-x) - \frac{(-x)^3}{3!} + \frac{(-x)^5}{5!} - \frac{(-x)^7}{7!} + \cdots && \text{by \textit{Taylor series for sine} (Theorem F.1 page 179)}
\end{aligned}$$

[13] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157
[14] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157

$$= -\left[x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots\right]$$

$$= \sin(x) \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for sine} \qquad \text{(Theorem F.1 page 179)}$$

✏

Lemma F.2. [15]

LEM

$$\left.\begin{array}{lcl}\cos(1) & > & 0\\ \cos(2) & < & 0\end{array}\right| \quad x \in (0:2) \implies \sin(x) > 0$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(1) &= 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots\Big|_{x=1} && \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for cosine} \quad \text{(Theorem F.1 page 179)}\\
&= 1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4!} - \frac{1}{6!} + \cdots\\
&> 0\\
\cos(2) &= 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots\Big|_{x=2} && \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for cosine} \quad \text{(Theorem F.1 page 179)}\\
&= 1 - \frac{4}{2} + \frac{16}{24} - \frac{64}{720} + \cdots\\
&< 0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
x \in (0:2) &\implies \text{each term in the sequence } \left(\left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!}\right), \left(\frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!}\right), \left(\frac{x^9}{9!} - \frac{x^{11}}{11!}\right), \ldots\right) \text{ is} > 0\\
&\implies \sin(x) > 0
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition F.1. *Let π be defined as in Definition F.4 (page 177).*

PRP

(A). *The value π **exists** in $\mathbb{R}$.*
(B). $2 < \pi < 4$.

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\cos(1) > 0 && \text{by Lemma F.2 page 180}\\
&\cos(2) < 0 && \text{by Lemma F.2 page 180}\\
&\implies 1 < \frac{\pi}{2} < 2\\
&\implies 2 < \pi < 4
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem F.3. [16] *Let $\boldsymbol{C}$ be the space of all continuously differentiable real functions and $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} \in \boldsymbol{C}^{\boldsymbol{C}}$ the differentiation operator. Let $\mathrm{f}'(0) \triangleq \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathrm{f}\right](0)$.*

THM

$$\left\{\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathrm{f} + \mathrm{f} = 0\right\} \iff \left\{\mathrm{f}(x) = \mathrm{f}(0)\cos(x) + \mathrm{f}'(0)\sin(x)\right\} \qquad \forall \mathrm{f} \in \boldsymbol{C}, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$$

[15] Rosenlicht (1968), page 158

[16] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157. The general solution for the *non-homogeneous* equation $\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathrm{f}(x) + \mathrm{f}(x) = \mathrm{g}(x)$ with initial conditions $\mathrm{f}(a) = 1$ and $\mathrm{f}'(a) = \rho$ is $\mathrm{f}(x) = \cos(x) + \rho\sin(x) + \int_a^x \mathrm{g}(y)\sin(x-y)\,\mathrm{d}y$. This type of equation is called a *Volterra integral equation of the second type*. References: Folland (1992), page 371, Liouville (1839). Volterra equation references: Pedersen (2000), page 99, Lalescu (1908), Lalescu (1911)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\left[\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f\right](x) = -f(x) \implies f(x) = f(0)\cos(x) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sin(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= f(0)\underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\cos(x)} + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\sin(x)} && \text{by left hypothesis and Lemma F.1 page 177} \\ &= f(0)\cos x + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sin x && \text{by definitions of cos and sin (Definition F.2 page 177, Definition F.3 page 177)} \end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f = -f \impliedby f(x) = f(0)\cos(x) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sin(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= f(0)\cos x + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sin x && \text{by right hypothesis} \\ &= f(0)\underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\cos(x)} + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\sin(x)} \\ \implies & \frac{d^2}{dx^2}f + f = 0 && \text{by Lemma F.1 page 177} \end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem F.4. [17] *Let $\frac{d}{dx} \in C^C$ be the differentiation operator.*

THM		
$\frac{d}{dx}\cos(x) = -\sin(x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$	$\frac{d}{dx}\sin(x) = \cos(x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$	$\cos^2(x) + \sin^2(x) = 1 \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx}\cos(x) &= \frac{d}{dx}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} && \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \text{ (Theorem F.1 page 179)} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{2nx^{2n-1}}{(2n)!} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n-1}}{(2n-1)!} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{n+1}\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} \\ &= -\sin(x) && \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \text{ (Theorem F.1 page 179)} \\ \frac{d}{dx}\sin(x) &= \frac{d}{dx}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} && \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \text{ (Theorem F.1 page 179)} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{(2n+1)x^{2n}}{(2n+1)!} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} \\ &= \cos(x) && \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \text{ (Theorem F.1 page 179)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx}\left[\cos^2(x) + \sin^2(x)\right] &= -2\cos(x)\sin(x) + 2\sin(x)\cos(x) \\ &= 0 \\ &\implies \cos^2(x) + \sin^2(x) \text{ is } \textit{constant} \\ &\implies \cos^2(x) + \sin^2(x) \\ &= \cos^2(0) + \sin^2(0) \\ &= 1 + 0 = 1 && \text{by Theorem F.2 page 179} \end{aligned}$$

✏

[17] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157

Proposition F.2.

PRP $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(\pi/2) &= \pm\sqrt{\sin^2(\pi/2) + 0} \\
&= \pm\sqrt{\sin^2(\pi/2) + \cos^2(\pi/2)} && \text{by definition of } \pi && \text{(Definition F.4 page 177)} \\
&= \pm\sqrt{1} && \text{by Theorem F.4 page 181} \\
&= \pm 1 \\
&= 1 && \text{by Lemma F.2 page 180}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

F.4 The complex exponential

Definition F.5.

DEF *The function* $\mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *is the* ***exponential function*** $\exp(ix) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x)$ *if*

1. $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}\mathsf{f} + \mathsf{f} = 0$ *(second order homogeneous differential equation)* *and*
2. $\mathsf{f}(0) = 1$ *(first initial condition)* *and*
3. $\left[\frac{d}{dx}\mathsf{f}\right](0) = i$ *(second initial condition).*

Theorem F.5 (Euler's identity). [18]

THM $e^{ix} = \cos(x) + i\sin(x) \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\exp(ix) &= \mathsf{f}(0)\cos(x) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}\mathsf{f}\right](0)\sin(x) && \text{by Theorem F.3 page 180} \\
&= \cos(x) + i\sin(x) && \text{by Definition F.5 page 182}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition F.3.

PRP $e^{-i\pi/2} = -i \;\big|\; e^{i\pi/2} = i$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{i\pi/2} &= \cos(\pi/2) + i\sin(\pi/2) && \text{by \textit{Euler's identity} (Theorem F.5 page 182)} \\
&= 0 + i && \text{by Theorem F.2 (page 179) and Proposition F.2 (page 182)} \\
e^{-i\pi/2} &= \cos(-\pi/2) + i\sin(-\pi/2) && \text{by \textit{Euler's identity} (Theorem F.5 page 182)} \\
&= \cos(\pi/2) - i\sin(\pi/2) && \text{by Theorem F.2 page 179} \\
&= 0 - i && \text{by Theorem F.2 (page 179) and Proposition F.2 (page 182)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[18] Euler (1748), Bottazzini (1986), page 12

Corollary F.1.

COR
$$e^{ix} = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(ix)^n}{n!} \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\boxed{e^{ix}} &= \cos(x) + i\sin(x) && \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} \quad \text{(The}\\
&= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\cos(x)} + i \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\sin(x)} && \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \quad \text{(The}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(i^2)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{i(i^2)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(ix)^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(ix)^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}\cap\mathbb{Z}_e} \frac{(ix)^n}{n!} + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}\cap\mathbb{Z}_o} \frac{(ix)^n}{n!} = \boxed{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(ix)^n}{n!}}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Corollary F.2 (Euler formulas). [19]

COR
$$\cos(x) = \mathbf{R}_e\left(e^{ix}\right) = \frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2} \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R} \qquad \sin(x) = \mathbf{I}_m\left(e^{ix}\right) = \frac{e^{ix}-e^{-ix}}{2i} \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\boxed{\mathbf{R}_e\left(e^{ix}\right)} &\triangleq \frac{e^{ix}+\left(e^{ix}\right)^*}{2} = \frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2} && \text{by definition of } \Re\\
&= \frac{\cos(x)+i\sin(x)}{2} + \frac{\cos(-x)+i\sin(-x)}{2} && \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} \quad \text{(Theorem F.5 page 182)}\\
&= \frac{\cos(x)+i\sin(x)}{2} + \frac{\cos(x)-i\sin(x)}{2} && = \frac{\cos(x)}{2} + \frac{\cos(x)}{2} \quad = \boxed{\cos(x)}\\
\boxed{\mathbf{I}_m\left(e^{ix}\right)} &\triangleq \frac{e^{ix}-\left(e^{ix}\right)^*}{2i} = \frac{e^{ix}-e^{-ix}}{2i} && \text{by definition of } \Im\\
&= \frac{\cos(x)+i\sin(x)}{2i} - \frac{\cos(-x)+i\sin(-x)}{2i} && \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} \quad \text{(Theorem F.5 page 182)}\\
&= \frac{\cos(x)+i\sin(x)}{2i} - \frac{\cos(x)-i\sin(x)}{2i} && = \frac{i\sin(x)}{2i} + \frac{i\sin(x)}{2i} \quad = \boxed{\sin(x)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem F.6. [20]

THM
$$e^{(\alpha+\beta)} = e^{\alpha}\, e^{\beta} \qquad \forall \alpha,\beta\in\mathbb{C}$$

[19] Euler (1748), Bottazzini (1986), page 12
[20] Rudin (1987) page 1

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{\alpha}\, e^{\beta} &= \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{\alpha^n}{n!}\right)\left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{\beta^m}{m!}\right) && \text{by Corollary F.1 page 183}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{\alpha^k}{k!}\, \frac{\beta^{n-k}}{(n-k)!}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{n!}{n!}\frac{\alpha^k}{k!}\, \frac{\beta^{n-k}}{(n-k)!}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{n!}{k!\,(n-k)!}\, \alpha^k\, \beta^{n-k}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} \alpha^k\, \beta^{n-k}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(\alpha+\beta)^n}{n!} && \text{by the \textit{Binomial Theorem}}\\
&= e^{\alpha+\beta} && \text{by Corollary F.1 page 183}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

F.5 Trigonometric Identities

Theorem F.7 (shift identities).

THM							
$\cos\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$=$	$-\sin x$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$	$\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$=$	$\cos x$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$
$\cos\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$=$	$\sin x$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$	$\sin\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$=$	$-\cos x$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \frac{e^{i\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)} + e^{-i\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}}{2} && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} && \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix}e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}} + e^{-ix}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}}}{2} && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.6 page 183)}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix}(i) + e^{-ix}(-i)}{2} && \text{by Proposition F.3 page 182}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix} - e^{-ix}}{-2i}\\
&= -\sin x && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} && \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}\\
\cos\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \frac{e^{i\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)} + e^{-i\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}}{2} && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} && \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}} + e^{-ix}e^{+i\frac{\pi}{2}}}{2} && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.6 page 183)}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix}(-i) + e^{-ix}(i)}{2} && \text{by Proposition F.3 page 182}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix} - e^{-ix}}{2i}\\
&= \sin x && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} && \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \cos\left(\left[x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right]-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \cos(x)\\
\sin\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= -\cos\left(\left[x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right]+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by previous result}\\
&= -\cos(x)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem F.8 (product identities).

THM	(A).	$\cos x\cos y$	$=$	$\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)$	$+$	$\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
	(B).	$\cos x\sin y$	$=$	$-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x-y)$	$+$	$\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
	(C).	$\sin x\cos y$	$=$	$\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x-y)$	$+$	$\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
	(D).	$\sin x\sin y$	$=$	$\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)$	$-$	$\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (A) using *Euler formulas* (Corollary F.2 page 183)
(algebraic method requiring *complex number system* $\mathbb{C}$):

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos x\cos y &= \left(\frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2}\right)\left(\frac{e^{iy}+e^{-iy}}{2}\right) && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} \quad \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}+e^{i(x-y)}+e^{i(-x+y)}+e^{i(-x-y)}}{4}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}+e^{-i(x+y)}}{4}+\frac{e^{i(x-y)}+e^{-i(x-y)}}{4}\\
&= \frac{2\cos(x+y)}{4}+\frac{2\cos(x-y)}{4} && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} \quad \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)+\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for (A) using *Volterra integral equation* (Theorem F.3 page 180)
(differential equation method requiring only *real number system* $\mathbb{R}$):

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)\\
\implies& \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}(x) = -\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x-y)-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x+y) && \text{by Theorem F.4 page 181}\\
\implies& \frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}(x) = -\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)-\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y) && \text{by Theorem F.4 page 181}\\
\implies& \frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}(x)+\mathsf{f}(x) = 0 && \text{by \textit{additive inverse} property}\\
\implies& \underbrace{\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)}_{\mathsf{f}(x)} = \underbrace{[\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(0-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(0+y)]}_{\mathsf{f}''(0)}\cos(x)+\underbrace{[-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(0-y)-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(0+y)]}_{\mathsf{f}'(0)}\sin(x)\\
\implies& \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y) = \cos y\cos x+0\sin(x)\\
\implies& \cos x\cos y = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for (B) using *Euler formulas* (Corollary F.2 page 183):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin x \sin y &= \left(\frac{e^{ix}-e^{-ix}}{2i}\right)\left(\frac{e^{iy}-e^{-iy}}{2i}\right) && \text{by Corollary F.2 page 183}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}-e^{i(x-y)}-e^{i(-x+y)}+e^{i(-x-y)}}{-4}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}+e^{-i(x+y)}-e^{i(x-y)}-e^{-i(x-y)}}{-4}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}+e^{-i(x+y)}}{-4}-\frac{e^{i(x-y)}+e^{-i(x-y)}}{-4}\\
&= \frac{2\cos(x-y)}{4}-\frac{2\cos(x+y)}{4} && \text{by Corollary F.2 page 183}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)-\frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proofs for (C) and (D) using (A) and (B):

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos x \sin y &= \cos(x)\cos\left(y-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by \textit{shift identities}} && \text{(Theorem F.7 page 184)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\cos\left(x+y-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)+\frac{1}{2}\cos\left(x-y+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by (A)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)-\frac{1}{2}\sin(x-y) && \text{by \textit{shift identities}} && \text{(Theorem F.7 page 184)}\\
\sin x \cos y &= \cos y \sin x\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sin(y+x)-\frac{1}{2}\sin(y-x) && \text{by (B)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)+\frac{1}{2}\sin(x-y) && \text{by Theorem F.2 page 179}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition F.4.

PRP						
	(A).	$\cos(\pi) = -1$	(C).	$\cos(2\pi) = 1$	(E).	$e^{i\pi} = -1$
	(B).	$\sin(\pi) = 0$	(D).	$\sin(2\pi) = 0$	(F).	$e^{i2\pi} = 0$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(\pi) &= -1+1+\cos(\pi)\\
&= -1+2[\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}-\tfrac{\pi}{2})+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}+\tfrac{\pi}{2})] && \text{by } \cos(0)=1 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.2 page 179)}\\
&= -1+2\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2})\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}) && \text{by \textit{product identities}} && \text{(Theorem F.8 page 185)}\\
&= -1+2(0)(0) && \text{by definition of } \pi && \text{(Definition F.4 page 177)}\\
&= -1\\
\sin(\pi) &= 0+\sin(\pi)\\
&= 2[-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2}-\tfrac{\pi}{2})+\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2}+\tfrac{\pi}{2})] && \text{by } \sin(0)=0 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.2 page 179)}\\
&= 2\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2})\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2}) && \text{by \textit{product identities}} && \text{(Theorem F.8 page 185)}\\
&= 2(0)\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2}) && \text{by definition of } \pi && \text{(Definition F.4 page 177)}\\
&= 0\\
\cos(2\pi) &= 1+\cos(2\pi)-1\\
&= 2[\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\pi-\pi)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\pi+\pi)]-1 && \text{by } \cos(0)=1 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.2 page 179)}\\
&= 2\cos(\pi)\cos(\pi)-1 && \text{by \textit{product identities}} && \text{(Theorem F.8 page 185)}\\
&= 2(-1)(-1)-1 && \text{by (A)}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sin(2\pi) &= 0 + \sin(2\pi) \\
&= 2[{}^1\!/\!_2\sin(\pi-\pi) + {}^1\!/\!_2\sin(\pi+\pi)] && \text{by } \sin(0)=0 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.2 page 179)} \\
&= 2\sin(\pi)\cos(\pi) && \text{by \textit{product identities}} && \text{(Theorem F.8 page 185)} \\
&= 2(0)(-1) && \text{by (A) and (B)} \\
&= 0 \\
e^{i\pi} &= \cos(\pi) + i\sin(\pi) && \text{by \textit{Euler's identity}} && \text{(Theorem F.5 page 182)} \\
&= -1 + 0 && \text{by (A) and (B)} \\
&= -1 \\
e^{i2\pi} &= \cos(2\pi) + i\sin(2\pi) && \text{by \textit{Euler's identity}} && \text{(Theorem F.5 page 182)} \\
&= 1 + 0 && \text{by (C) and (D)} \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

⇨

Theorem F.9 (double angle formulas). [21]

THM

(A).	$\cos(x+y)$	$=$	$\cos x\cos y - \sin x\sin y$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
(B).	$\sin(x+y)$	$=$	$\sin x\cos y + \cos x\sin y$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
(C).	$\tan(x+y)$	$=$	$\dfrac{\tan x + \tan y}{1 - \tan x\tan y}$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (A) using *product identities* (Theorem F.8 page 185).

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+y) &= \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y) + \frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)}_{\cos(x+y)} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y) - \frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)}_{0} \\
&= \left[\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y) + \frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)\right] - \left[\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y) - \frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)\right] \\
&= \cos x\cos y - \sin x\sin y && \text{by Theorem F.8 page 185}
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof for (A) using *Volterra integral equation* (Theorem F.3 page 180):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \cos(x+y) &\implies \frac{d}{dx}\mathsf{f}(x) = -\sin(x+y) && \text{by Theorem F.4 page 181} \\
&\implies \frac{d^2}{dx^2}\mathsf{f}(x) = -\cos(x+y) && \text{by Theorem F.4 page 181} \\
&\implies \frac{d^2}{dx^2}\mathsf{f}(x) + \mathsf{f}(x) = 0 && \text{by \textit{additive inverse} property} \\
&\implies \cos(x+y) = \cos y\cos x - \sin y\sin x && \text{by Theorem F.3 page 180} \\
&\implies \cos(x+y) = \cos x\cos y - \sin x\sin y && \text{by \textit{commutative} property}
\end{aligned}
$$

[21] Expressions for $\cos(\alpha+\beta)$, $\sin(\alpha+\beta)$, and $\sin^2 x$ appear in works as early as Ptolemy (circa 100AD). Reference: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_trigonometric_functions

3. Proof for (B) and (C) using (A):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+y) &= \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2} + y\right) && \text{by } \textit{shift identities} \text{ (Theorem F.7 page 184)}\\
&= \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\cos(y) - \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\sin(y) && \text{by (A)}\\
&= \sin(x)\cos(y) + \cos(x)\sin(y) && \text{by } \textit{shift identities} \text{ (Theorem F.7 page 184)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\tan(x+y) &= \frac{\sin(x+y)}{\cos(x+y)}\\
&= \frac{\sin x\cos y + \cos x\sin y}{\cos x\cos y - \sin x\sin y} && \text{by (A)}\\
&= \left(\frac{\sin x\cos y + \cos x\sin y}{\cos x\cos y - \sin x\sin y}\right)\left(\frac{\cos x\cos y}{\cos x\cos y}\right)\\
&= \frac{\frac{\sin x\cos y}{\cos x\cos y} + \frac{\cos x\sin y}{\cos x\cos y}}{\frac{\cos x\cos y}{\cos x\cos y} - \frac{\sin x\sin y}{\cos x\cos y}} = \frac{\frac{\sin x}{\cos x} + \frac{\sin y}{\cos y}}{1 - \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}\frac{\sin y}{\cos y}} = \frac{\tan x + \tan y}{1 - \tan x\tan y}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem F.10 (trigonometric periodicity).

THM

(A).	$\cos(x+M\pi) = (-1)^M\cos(x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},\ M\in\mathbb{Z}$	(D). $\cos(x+2M\pi) = \cos(x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},\ M\in\mathbb{Z}$
(B).	$\sin(x+M\pi) = (-1)^M\sin(x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},\ M\in\mathbb{Z}$	(E). $\sin(x+2M\pi) = \sin(x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},\ M\in\mathbb{Z}$
(C).	$e^{i(x+M\pi)} = (-1)^M e^{ix}$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},\ M\in\mathbb{Z}$	(F). $e^{i(x+2M\pi)} = e^{ix}$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},\ M\in\mathbb{Z}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (A):

   (a) $M=0$ case: $\cos(x+0\pi) = \cos(x) = (-1)^0\cos(x)$

   (b) Proof for $M>0$ cases (by induction):

      i. Base case $M=1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+\pi) &= \cos x\cos\pi - \sin x\sin\pi && \text{by } \textit{double angle formulas} \text{ (Theorem F.9 page 187)}\\
&= \cos x(-1) - \sin x(0) && \text{by } \cos\pi = -1 \text{ result (Proposition F.4 page 186)}\\
&= (-1)^1\cos x
\end{aligned}$$

      ii. Inductive step...Proof that M case $\implies$ $M+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+[M+1]\pi) &= \cos([x+\pi]+M\pi)\\
&= (-1)^M\cos(x+\pi) && \text{by induction hypothesis (} M \text{ case)}\\
&= (-1)^M(-1)\cos(x) && \text{by base case (item 1(b)i page 188)}\\
&= (-1)^{M+1}\cos(x)\\
&\implies M+1 \text{ case}
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Proof for $M < 0$ cases: Let $N \triangleq -M \ldots \implies N > 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+M\pi) &\triangleq \cos(x-N\pi) && \text{by definition of } N \\
&= \cos(x)\cos(-N\pi) - \sin(x)\sin(-N\pi) && \text{by \textit{double angle formulas}} && \text{(Theorem F.9 page 187)} \\
&= \cos(x)\cos(N\pi) + \sin(x)\sin(N\pi) && \text{by Theorem F.2 page 179} \\
&= \cos(x)\cos(0+N\pi) + \sin(x)\sin(0+N\pi) \\
&= \cos(x)(-1)^N\cos(0) + \sin(x)(-1)^N\sin(0) && \text{by } M \geq 0 \text{ results} && \text{(item (1b) page 188)} \\
&= (-1)^N\cos(x) && \text{by } \cos(0)=1,\ \sin(0)=0 \text{ results} && \text{(Theorem F.2 page 179)} \\
&\triangleq (-1)^{-M}\cos(x) && \text{by definition of } N \\
&= (-1)^M\cos(x)
\end{aligned}$$

(d) Proof using complex exponential:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+M\pi) &= \frac{e^{i(x+M\pi)} + e^{-i(x+M\pi)}}{2} && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} && \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)} \\
&= e^{iM\pi}\left[\frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2}\right] && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.6 page 183)} \\
&= \left(e^{i\pi}\right)^M \cos x && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} && \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)} \\
&= (-1)^M \cos x && \text{by } e^{i\pi} = -1 \text{ result} && \text{(Proposition F.4 page 186)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for (B):

(a) $M = 0$ case: $\sin(x+0\pi) = \sin(x) = (-1)^0\sin(x)$

(b) Proof for $M > 0$ cases (by induction):

i. Base case $M = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+\pi) &= \sin x\cos\pi + \cos x\sin\pi && \text{by \textit{double angle formulas}} && \text{(Theorem F.9 page 187)} \\
&= \sin x(-1) - \cos x(0) && \text{by } \sin\pi = 0 \text{ results} && \text{(Proposition F.4 page 186)} \\
&= (-1)^1\sin x
\end{aligned}$$

ii. Inductive step…Proof that M case $\implies M+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+[M+1]\pi) &= \sin([x+\pi]+M\pi) \\
&= (-1)^M\sin(x+\pi) && \text{by induction hypothesis } (M \text{ case}) \\
&= (-1)^M(-1)\sin(x) && \text{by base case (item (2(b)i) page 189)} \\
&= (-1)^{M+1}\sin(x) \\
&\implies M+1 \text{ case}
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Proof for $M < 0$ cases: Let $N \triangleq -M \ldots \implies N > 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+M\pi) &\triangleq \sin(x-N\pi) && \text{by definition of } N \\
&= \sin(x)\sin(-N\pi) - \sin(x)\sin(-N\pi) && \text{by \textit{double angle formulas}} && \text{(Theorem F.9 page 187)} \\
&= \sin(x)\sin(N\pi) + \sin(x)\sin(N\pi) && \text{by Theorem F.2 page 179} \\
&= \sin(x)\sin(0+N\pi) + \sin(x)\sin(0+N\pi) \\
&= \sin(x)(-1)^N\sin(0) + \sin(x)(-1)^N\sin(0) && \text{by } M \geq 0 \text{ results} && \text{(item (2b) page 189)} \\
&= (-1)^N\sin(x) && \text{by } \sin(0)=1,\ \sin(0)=0 \text{ results} && \text{(Theorem F.2 page 179)} \\
&\triangleq (-1)^{-M}\sin(x) && \text{by definition of } N \\
&= (-1)^M\sin(x)
\end{aligned}$$

(d) Proof using complex exponential:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+M\pi) &= \frac{e^{i(x+M\pi)} - e^{-i(x+M\pi)}}{2i} && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} && \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}\\
&= e^{iM\pi}\left[\frac{e^{ix}-e^{-ix}}{2i}\right] && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.6 page 183)}\\
&= \left(e^{i\pi}\right)^M \sin x && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} && \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}\\
&= (-1)^M \sin x && \text{by } e^{i\pi} = -1 \text{ result} && \text{(Proposition F.4 page 186)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for (C):

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{i(x+M\pi)} &= e^{iM\pi}e^{ix} && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.6 page 183)}\\
&= \left(e^{i\pi}\right)^M\left(e^{ix}\right)\\
&= (-1)^M e^{ix} && \text{by } e^{i\pi} = -1 \text{ result} && \text{(Proposition F.4 page 186)}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proofs for (D), (E), and (F):
$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(i(x+2M\pi)) &= (-1)^{2M}\cos(ix) &= \cos(ix) && \text{by (A)}\\
\sin(i(x+2M\pi)) &= (-1)^{2M}\sin(ix) &= \sin(ix) && \text{by (B)}\\
e^{i(x+2M\pi)} &= (-1)^{2M}e^{ix} &= e^{ix} && \text{by (C)}
\end{aligned}$$

⇰

Theorem F.11 (half-angle formulas/squared identities)**.**

THM

(A).	$\cos^2 x = \tfrac{1}{2}(1+\cos 2x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$	(C).	$\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1 \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$
(B).	$\sin^2 x = \tfrac{1}{2}(1-\cos 2x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$		

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos^2 x &\triangleq (\cos x)(\cos x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-x) + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+x) && \text{by } \textit{product identities} && \text{(Theorem F.8 page 185)}\\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}[1+\cos(2x)] && \text{by } \cos(0)=1 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.2 page 179)}\\
\sin^2 x &= (\sin x)(\sin x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-x) - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+x) && \text{by } \textit{product identities} && \text{(Theorem F.8 page 185)}\\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}[1-\cos(2x)] && \text{by } \cos(0)=1 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem F.2 page 179)}\\
\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x &= \tfrac{1}{2}[1+\cos(2x)] + \tfrac{1}{2}[1-\cos(2x)] = 1 && \text{by (A) and (B)}\\
& && \text{note: see also} && \text{Theorem F.4 page 181}
\end{aligned}$$

⇰

F.6 Planar Geometry

The harmonic functions $\cos(x)$ and $\sin(x)$ are *orthogonal* to each other in the sense

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \cos(x) \,|\, \sin(x)\rangle &= \int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \cos(x)\sin(x)\,dx\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \sin(x-x)\,dx + \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi}\sin(x+x)\,dx && \text{by Theorem F.8 page 185}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \sin(0)\,dx}_{0} + \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi}\sin(2x)\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

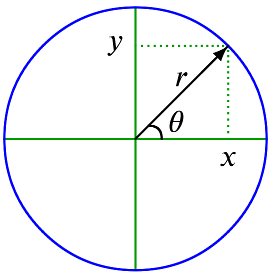
$$
\begin{aligned}
&= -\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\cos(2x)\Big|_{-\pi}^{+\pi}\cos(2x)\\
&= -\frac{1}{4}[\cos(2\pi)-\cos(-2\pi)]\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Because $\cos(x)$ are $\sin(x)$ are orthogonal, they can be conveniently represented by the x and y axes in a plane— because perpendicular axes in a plane are also orthogonal. Vectors in the plane can be represented by linear combinations of $\cos x$ and $\sin x$. Let $\tan x$ be defined as

$$\tan x \triangleq \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}.$$

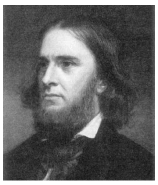
We can also define a value θ to represent the angle between such a vector and the x-axis such that

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}\right)$$



$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos\theta &\triangleq \frac{x}{r} & \sec\theta &\triangleq \frac{r}{x}\\
\sin\theta &\triangleq \frac{y}{r} & \csc\theta &\triangleq \frac{r}{y}\\
\tan\theta &\triangleq \frac{y}{x} & \cot\theta &\triangleq \frac{x}{y}
\end{aligned}
$$

F.7 The power of the exponential



❝*Gentlemen, that is surely true, it is absolutely paradoxical; we cannot understand it, and we don't know what it means. But we have proved it, and therefore we know it must be the truth.*❞
Benjamin Peirce (1809–1880), American Harvard University mathematician after proving $e^{i\pi} = -1$ in a lecture. [22]

❝*Young man, in mathematics you don't understand things. You just get used to them.*❞
John von Neumann (1903–1957), Hungarian-American mathematician, as allegedly told to Gary Zukav by Felix T. Smith, Head of Molecular Physics at Stanford Research Institute, about a "physicist friend". [23]

[22] quote: Kasner and Newman (1940), page 104
image: http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/history/PictDisplay/Peirce_Benjamin.html
[23] quote: Zukav (1980), page 208
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_von_Neumann
The quote appears in a footnote in Zukav (1980) that reads like this: Dr. Felix Smith, Head of Molecular Physics, Stanford Research Institute, once related to me the true story of a physicist friend who worked at Los Alamos after World War II. Seeking help on a difficult problem, he went to the great Hungarian mathematician, John von Neumann, who was at Los Alamos as a consultant. "Simple," said von Neumann. "This can be solved by using the method of characteristics." After the explanation the physicist said, "I'm afraid I don't understand the method of characteristics." "Young man," said von Neumann, "in mathematics you don't understand things, you just get used to them."

The following corollary presents one of the most amazing relations in all of mathematics. It shows a simple and compact relationship between the transcendental numbers π and e, the imaginary number i, and the additive and multiplicative identity elements 0 and 1. The fact that there is any relationship at all is somewhat amazing; but for there to be such an elegant one is truly one of the wonders of the world of numbers.

Corollary F.3. [24]

COR
$$e^{i\pi} + 1 = 0$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} e^{ix}\big|_{x=\pi} &= [\cos x + i\sin x]_{x=\pi} && \text{by Euler's identity (Theorem F.5 page 182)} \\ &= -1 + i\cdot 0 && \text{by Proposition F.4 page 186} \\ &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

⇰

There are many transforms available, several of them integral transforms $[\mathbf{A}\mathsf{f}](s) \triangleq \int_t \mathsf{f}(s)\kappa(t,s)\,\mathsf{d}s$ using different kernels $\kappa(t,s)$. But of all of them, two of the most often used themselves use an exponential kernel:

① The *Laplace Transform* with kernel $\kappa(t, s) \triangleq e^{st}$

② The *Fourier Transform* with kernel $\kappa(t, \omega) \triangleq e^{i\omega t}$.

Of course, the Fourier kernel is just a special case of the Laplace kernel with $s = i\omega$ ($i\omega$ is a unit circle in s if s is depicted as a plane with real and imaginary axes). What is so special about exponential kernels? Is it just that they were discovered sooner than other kernels with other transforms? The answer in general is "no". The exponential has two properties that makes it extremely special:

- The exponential is an eigenvalue of any *linear time invariant* (LTI) operator (Theorem F.12 page 192).
- The exponential generates a *continuous point spectrum* for the *differential operator*.

Theorem F.12. [25] *Let* $\mathbf{L}$ *be an operator with kernel* $\mathsf{h}(t,\omega)$ *and*
$\check{\mathsf{h}}(s) \triangleq \left\langle \mathsf{h}(t,\omega) \,|\, e^{st} \right\rangle$ (LAPLACE TRANSFORM).

THM
$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \mathbf{L} \text{ is LINEAR and} \\ 2. & \mathbf{L} \text{ is TIME-INVARIANT} \end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{ \mathbf{L}e^{st} = \underbrace{\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(-s)}_{\text{eigenvalue}} \; \underbrace{e^{st}}_{\text{eigenvector}} \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

[24] Euler (1748), Euler (1988) ⟨chapter 8?⟩, http://www.daviddarling.info/encyclopedia/E/Eulers_formula.html

[25] Mallat (1999), page 2, …page 2 online: http://www.cmap.polytechnique.fr/~mallat/WTintro.pdf

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\mathbf{L}e^{st}\right](s) &= \langle e^{su} \,|\, \mathsf{h}((t;u),s)\rangle && \text{by linear hypothesis}\\
&= \langle e^{su} \,|\, \mathsf{h}((t-u),s)\rangle && \text{by time-invariance hypothesis}\\
&= \left\langle e^{s(t-v)} \,|\, \mathsf{h}(v,s)\right\rangle && \text{let } v = t-u \implies u = t-v\\
&= e^{st}\ \langle e^{-sv} \,|\, \mathsf{h}(v,s)\rangle && \text{by additivity of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle\\
&= \langle \mathsf{h}(v,s) \,|\, e^{-sv}\rangle^*\ e^{st} && \text{by conjugate symmetry of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{h}(v,s) \,|\, e^{(-s)v}\right\rangle^*\ e^{st}\\
&= \check{\mathsf{h}}^*(-s)\, e^{st} && \text{by definition of } \check{\mathsf{h}}(s)
\end{aligned}$$

✎

APPENDIX G

FOURIER TRANSFORM

❝*The analytical equations ... extend to all general phenomena. There cannot be a language more universal and more simple, more free from errors and from obscurities, ... mathematical analysis is as extensive as nature itself; ... it preserves every principle which it has once acquired; it grows and strengthens itself incessantly in the midst of the many variations and errors of the human mind. Its chief attribute is clearness; it has no marks to express confused notions. It brings together phenomena the most diverse, and discovers the hidden analogies which unite them.*❞

Joseph Fourier (1768–1830) [1]

G.1 Definitions

This chapter deals with the *Fourier Transform* in the space of *Lebesgue square-integrable functions* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$, where $\mathbb{R}$ is the set of real numbers, $\mathscr{B}$ is the set of *Borel sets* on $\mathbb{R}$, μ is the standard *Borel measure* on , and

$$\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)} \triangleq \left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}} | \int_{\mathbb{R}} |\mathsf{f}|^2 \, \mathrm{d}\mu < \infty \right\}.$$

Furthermore, $\langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle$ is the *inner product* induced by the operator $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \, \mathrm{d}\mu$ such that

$$\langle \mathsf{f} \mid \mathsf{g} \rangle \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}^*(x) \, \mathrm{d}x,$$

and $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}, \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle\right)$ is a *Hilbert space*.

Definition G.1. *Let κ be a* FUNCTION *in* $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{R}^2}$.

DEF | *The function κ is the **Fourier kernel** if* $\quad \kappa(x,\omega) \triangleq e^{i\omega x} \qquad \forall x,\omega \in \mathbb{R}$

Definition G.2. [2] *Let $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$ be the space of all* LEBESGUE SQUARE-INTEGRABLE FUNCTIONS.

[1] quote: Fourier (1878), pages 7–8 ⟨Preliminary Discourse⟩
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Fourier2.jpg, public domain

[2] Bachman et al. (2000) page 363, Chorin and Hald (2009) page 13, Loomis and Bolker (1965), page 144, Knapp (2005b) pages 374–375, Fourier (1822), Fourier (1878) page 336?

DEF *The **Fourier Transform** operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is defined as*

$$\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}x \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$$

*This definition of the Fourier Transform is also called the **unitary Fourier Transform**.*

Remark G.1 (**Fourier transform scaling factor**). [3] If the Fourier transform operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ and inverse Fourier transform operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ are defined as

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{F}(\omega) \triangleq A\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq B\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{F}(\omega) e^{i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}\omega$$

then A and B can be any constants as long as $AB = \frac{1}{2\pi}$. The Fourier transform is often defined with the scaling factor A set equal to 1 such that $\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](\omega) \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}x$. In this case, the inverse Fourier transform operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ is either defined as

- $\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](f) \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{i2\pi f x}\, \mathrm{d}x$ (using oscillatory frequency free variable f) or
- $\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}x$ (using angular frequency free variable ω).

In short, the 2π has to show up somewhere, either in the argument of the exponential ($e^{-i2\pi f t}$) or in front of the integral ($\frac{1}{2\pi}\int\cdots$). One could argue that it is unnecessary to burden the exponential argument with the 2π factor ($e^{-i2\pi f t}$), and thus could further argue in favor of using the angular frequency variable ω thus giving the inverse operator definition $\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}x$. But this causes a new problem. In this case, the Fourier operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is not *unitary* (see Theorem G.2 page 196)—in particular, $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* \neq \mathbf{I}$, where $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*$ is the *adjoint* of $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$; but rather, $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left(\frac{1}{2\pi}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*\right) = \left(\frac{1}{2\pi}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*\right)\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{I}$. But if we define the operators $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ and $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ to both have the scaling factor $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}$, then $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ and $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ are inverses *and* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is *unitary*—that is, $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{I}$.

G.2 Operator properties

Theorem G.1 (Inverse Fourier transform). [4] *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Transform operator (Definition G.2 page 195). The inverse $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ of $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is*

THM

$$\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\right](x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) e^{i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \forall \tilde{\mathsf{f}} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$$

Theorem G.2. *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Transform operator with inverse $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ and adjoint $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*$.*

THM

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$$

✎ PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f} \mid \mathsf{g}\right\rangle &= \left\langle \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}x \mid \mathsf{g}(\omega)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ page 195}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\left\langle e^{-i\omega x} \mid \mathsf{g}(\omega)\right\rangle \mathrm{d}x && \text{by \textit{additive property} of } \langle\triangle\mid\nabla\rangle\\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\,\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left\langle \mathsf{g}(\omega) \mid e^{-i\omega x}\right\rangle^* \mathrm{d}x && \text{by \textit{conjugate symmetric property} of } \langle\triangle\mid\nabla\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

[3] Chorin and Hald (2009) page 13, Jeffrey and Dai (2008) pages xxxi–xxxii, Knapp (2005b) pages 374–375
[4] Chorin and Hald (2009) page 13

$$= \left\langle f(x) \,|\, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left\langle g(\omega) \,|\, e^{-i\omega x} \right\rangle \right\rangle \qquad \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla \rangle$$

$$= \left\langle f \,|\, \underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}}_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*} g \right\rangle \qquad \text{by Theorem G.1 page 196}$$

✎

The Fourier Transform operator has several nice properties:

- $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is *unitary* (Corollary G.1—next corollary).
- Because $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary, it automatically has several other nice properties (Theorem G.3 page 197).

Corollary G.1. *Let* $\mathbf{I}$ *be the identity operator and let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the Fourier Transform operator with adjoint* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*$ *and inverse* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$.

COR

$$\underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{I}}_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}} \qquad (\tilde{\mathbf{F}} \textit{ is unitary})$$

✎PROOF: This follows directly from the fact that $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ (Theorem G.2 page 196). ✎

Theorem G.3. *Let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the Fourier transform operator with adjoint* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*$ *and inverse* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$. *Let* $|||\cdot|||$ *be the operator norm with respect to the vector norm* $\|\cdot\|$ *with respect to the Hilbert space* $\left(\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{R}}, \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla \rangle\right)$. *Let* $\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{A})$ *be the range of an operator* $\mathbf{A}$.

THM

$$\begin{array}{rclcll}
\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{F}\tau) & = & \mathcal{R}(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}) & = & \mathcal{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} & \\
|||\tilde{\mathbf{F}}||| & = & |||\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}||| & = & 1 & (\text{UNITARY}) \\
\left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}f \,|\, \tilde{\mathbf{F}}g \right\rangle & = & \left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}f \,|\, \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}g \right\rangle & = & \langle f \,|\, g \rangle & (\text{PARSEVAL'S EQUATION}) \\
\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}f\| & = & \|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}f\| & = & \|f\| & (\text{PLANCHEREL'S FORMULA}) \\
\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}f - \tilde{\mathbf{F}}g\| & = & \|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}f - \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}g\| & = & \|f - g\| & (\text{ISOMETRIC})
\end{array}$$

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from the fact that $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary (Corollary G.1 page 197) and from the properties of unitary operators. ✎

Theorem G.4 (Shift relations). *Let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the Fourier transform operator.*

THM

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}[f(x-u)](\omega) & = & e^{-i\omega u}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}f(x)\right](\omega) \\
\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left(e^{ivx}g(x)\right)\right](\omega) & = & \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}g(x)\right](\omega - v)
\end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}[f(x-u)](\omega) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x-u)e^{-i\omega x}\, dx && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195))} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{v\in\mathbb{R}} f(v)e^{-i\omega(u+v)}\, dv && \text{where } v \triangleq x - u \implies t = u + v \\
&= e^{-i\omega u} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{v\in\mathbb{R}} f(v)e^{-i\omega v}\, dv \\
&= e^{-i\omega u} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)e^{-i\omega x}\, dx && \text{by change of variable } t = v \\
&= e^{-i\omega u}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}f(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195))} \\
\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left(e^{ivx}g(x)\right)\right](\omega) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{ivx}g(x)e^{-i\omega x}\, dx && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195))} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} g(x)e^{-i(\omega-v)x}\, dx \\
&= \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}g(x)\right](\omega - v) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195))}
\end{aligned}$$

Theorem G.5 (Complex conjugate). *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Transform operator and $*$ represent the complex conjugate operation on the set of complex numbers.*

THM

$$\begin{array}{rcll} \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}^*(-x) &=& -\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right]^* & \forall \mathsf{f}\in \mathbf{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)} \\ \mathsf{f} \text{ is real} \implies \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega) &=& \left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right]^* & \forall \omega\in\mathbb{R} \quad \text{REALITY CONDITION} \end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}^*(-x)\right](\omega) &\triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int \mathsf{f}^*(-x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int \mathsf{f}^*(u)e^{i\omega u}(-1)\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{where } u\triangleq -x \implies \mathrm{d}x = -\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= -\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\omega u}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]^*\\
&\triangleq -\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right]^* && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195)}\\
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega) &\triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i(-\omega)x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195)}\\
&= \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int \mathsf{f}^*(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]^*\\
&= \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]^* && \text{by } \mathsf{f} \text{ is real hypothesis}\\
&\triangleq \tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195)}
\end{aligned}$$

G.3 Convolution

Definition G.3. [5]

DEF

*The **convolution operation** is defined as*

$$\left[\mathsf{f}\star\mathsf{g}\right](x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x)\star\mathsf{g}(x) \triangleq \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)\mathsf{g}(x-u)\,\mathrm{d}u \qquad \forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in \mathbf{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$$

Theorem G.6 (next) demonstrates that multiplication in the "time domain" is equivalent to convolution in the "frequency domain" and vice-versa.

Theorem G.6 (convolution theorem). [6] *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Transform operator and $\star$ the convolution operator.*

THM

$$\begin{array}{rcll} \underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathsf{f}(x)\star\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega)}_{\text{convolution in "time domain"}} &=& \underbrace{\sqrt{2\pi}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](\omega)\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\right](\omega)}_{\text{multiplication in "frequency domain"}} & \forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in \mathbf{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)} \\ \underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega)}_{\text{multiplication in "time domain"}} &=& \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](\omega)\star\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\right](\omega)}_{\text{convolution in "frequency domain"}} & \forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in \mathbf{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}. \end{array}$$

[5] Bachman (1964), page 6, Bracewell (1978) page 108 ⟨Convolution theorem⟩
[6] Bracewell (1978) page 110

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathsf{f}(x)\star\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(u)\mathsf{g}(x-u)\,\mathrm{d}u\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \star \text{ (Definition G.3 page 198)}\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(u)\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x-u)\right](\omega)\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\omega u}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega)\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by Theorem G.4 page 197}\\
&= \sqrt{2\pi}\underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\omega u}\,\mathrm{d}u\right)}_{[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}](\omega)}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\right](\omega)\\
&= \sqrt{2\pi}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](\omega)\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ (Definition G.2 page 195)}\\
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}(x)](\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\left(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right)\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of operator inverse}\\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{v\in\mathbb{R}}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](v)e^{ivx}\,\mathrm{d}v\right)\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by Theorem G.1 page 196}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{v\in\mathbb{R}}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](v)\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left(e^{ivx}\mathsf{g}(x)\right)\right](\omega,v)\,\mathrm{d}v\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{v\in\mathbb{R}}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](v)\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega-v)\,\mathrm{d}v && \text{by Theorem G.4 page 197}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](\omega)\star\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \star \text{ (Definition G.3 page 198)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

G.4 Real valued functions

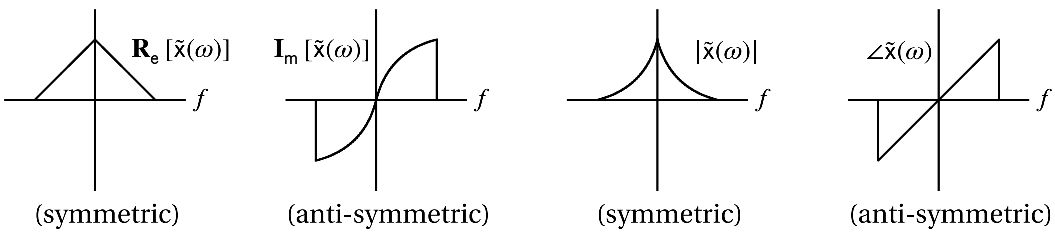


Figure G.1: Fourier transform components of real-valued signal

Theorem G.7. *Let* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be a function in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *and* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *of* $\mathsf{f}(x)$.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\mathsf{f}(x) \textit{ is REAL-VALUED}\\ (\mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}})\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{rcll}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &=& \tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(-\omega) & \text{(HERMITIAN SYMMETRIC)}\\ \mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right] &=& \mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)\right] & \text{(SYMMETRIC)}\\ \mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right] &=& -\mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)\right] & \text{(ANTI-SYMMETRIC)}\\ \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right| &=& \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)\right| & \text{(SYMMETRIC)}\\ \angle\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &=& \angle\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega) & \text{(ANTI-SYMMETRIC).}\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{array}{lllllll}
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) & \triangleq & [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)](\omega) & \triangleq & \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x)\,|\,e^{i\omega x}\right\rangle & = \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x)\,|\,e^{i(-\omega)x}\right\rangle^* & \triangleq\ \tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(-\omega)\\
\mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right] & = & \mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(-\omega)\right] & = & \mathbf{R_e}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)\right] & &\\
\mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right] & = & \mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(-\omega)\right] & = & -\mathbf{I_m}\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)\right] & &\\
\left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right| & = & \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(-\omega)\right| & = & \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)\right| & &\\
\angle\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) & = & \angle\tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(-\omega) & = & -\angle\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega) & &
\end{array}$$

✏

G.5 Moment properties

Definition G.4. [7]

DEF: *The quantity* M_n *is the* n**th moment** *of a function* $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *if*

$$\mathsf{M}_n \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} x^n \mathsf{f}(x)\, \mathrm{d}x \qquad \text{for } n \in \mathbb{W}.$$

Lemma G.1. [8] *Let* M_n *be the* nTH MOMENT (Definition G.4 page 200) *and* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}](\omega)$ *the* FOURIER TRANSFORM (Definition G.2 page 195) *of a function* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition ?? page ??).

LEM:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{M}_n &= \sqrt{2\pi}(i)^n \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\bigg|_{\omega=0} && \forall n\in\mathbb{W}, \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}\\
\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\bigg|_{\omega=0} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^n \mathsf{M}_n && \forall n\in\mathbb{W}, \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sqrt{2\pi}(i)^n \left[\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right]_{\omega=0} &= \sqrt{2\pi}(i)^n \left[\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}x\right]_{\omega=0} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ (Definition G.2 page 195)}\\
&= (i)^n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) \left[\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n e^{-i\omega x}\right] \mathrm{d}x\bigg|_{\omega=0}\\
&= (i)^n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) \left[(-i)^n x^n e^{-i\omega x}\right] \mathrm{d}x\bigg|_{\omega=0}\\
&= (-i^2)^n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) x^n\, \mathrm{d}x\\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) x^n\, \mathrm{d}x\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{M}_n && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_n \text{ (Definition G.4 page 200)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma G.2. [9] *Let* M_n *be the* nTH MOMENT (Definition G.4 page 200) *and* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}](\omega)$ *the* FOURIER TRANSFORM (Definition G.2 page 195) *of a function* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition ?? page ??).

LEM:

$$\mathsf{M}_n = 0 \quad\iff\quad \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\bigg|_{\omega=0} = 0 \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{W}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, x^n \rangle && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \sqrt{2\pi}(-i)^{-n} \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\bigg|_{\omega=0} && \text{by Lemma G.1 page 200}\\
\Longrightarrow \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\bigg|_{\omega=0} &= 0
\end{aligned}$$

[7] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), pages 16–17, Sweldens and Piessens (1993), page 2, Vidakovic (1999), page 83

[8] Goswami and Chan (1999), pages 38–39

[9] Vidakovic (1999), pages 82–83, Mallat (1999), pages 241–242

2. Proof for ($\Longleftarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&= \left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathsf{d}x\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) \left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathsf{d}x\Big|_{\omega=0} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) \left[(-i)^n x^n e^{-i\omega x}\right]\, \mathsf{d}x\Big|_{\omega=0} \\
&= (-i)^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) x^n\, \mathsf{d}x \\
&= (-i)^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, x^n \rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \cdot \,|\, \cdot \rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \text{ (Definition ?? page ??)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma G.3 (Strang-Fix condition). [10] *Let* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be a function in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *and* M_n *the* nTH MOMENT (Definition G.4 page 200) *of* $\mathsf{f}(x)$. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be the* TRANSLATION OPERATOR (Definition H.3 page 206).

LEM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^k x^n \mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{M}_n}_{\text{Strang-Fix condition in "time"}} \iff \underbrace{\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} (-i)^n \bar{\delta}_k \mathsf{M}_n}_{\text{Strang-Fix condition in "frequency"}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{i2\pi kx} \bar{\delta}_k \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathsf{d}x\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{i2\pi kx} \bar{\delta}_k && \text{by Definition G.2 page 195} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)(-ix)^n e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathsf{d}x\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{i2\pi kx} \bar{\delta}_k \\
&= (-i)^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} x^n \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathsf{d}x\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{i2\pi kx} \bar{\delta}_k \\
&= (-i)^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (x-k)^n \mathsf{f}(x-k) \bar{\delta}_k && \text{by } \textit{PSF} \text{ (Theorem H.2 page 214)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} (-i)^n \bar{\delta}_k \mathsf{M}_n && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for ($\Longleftarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} (-i)^n \mathsf{M}_n &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[(-i)^n \bar{\delta}_k \mathsf{M}_n\right] e^{-i2\pi kx} && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} \\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right]\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{-i2\pi kx} && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathsf{d}x\right]\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{-i2\pi kx}
\end{aligned}$$

[10] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), pages 16–17, Sweldens and Piessens (1993), page 2, Vidakovic (1999), page 83, Mallat (1999), pages 241–243, Fix and Strang (1969)

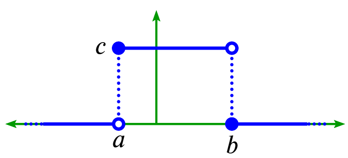
$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\left.\left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)(-ix)^n e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]\right|_{\omega=2\pi k}\right] e^{-i2\pi kx} \\
&= (-i)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\left.\left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} x^n \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]\right|_{\omega=2\pi k}\right] e^{-i2\pi kx} \\
&= (-i)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (x-k)^n \mathsf{f}(x-k) && \text{by } \textit{PSF} \quad \text{(Theorem H.2 page 214)}
\end{aligned}
$$

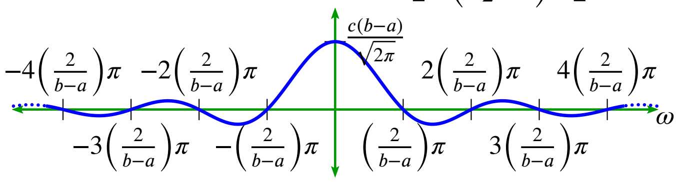
G.6 Examples

Example G.1 (rectangular pulse). Let $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ be the *Fourier transform* of a function $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

EX

$$
\mathsf{f}(x) = \begin{cases} c & \text{for } x \in [a:b) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}
\qquad
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \frac{c(b-a)}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}\right]
$$





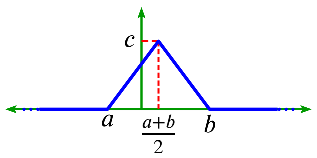
✎PROOF:

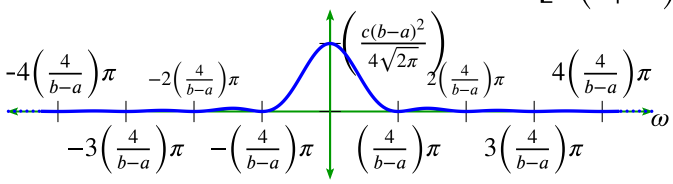
$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x)](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \\
&= e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathsf{f}\left(x-\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right](\omega) && \text{by \textit{shift relation}} \quad \text{(Theorem G.4 page 197)} \\
&= e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[c\mathbb{1}_{[a:b)}\left(x-\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\
&= e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[c\mathbb{1}_{\left[-\frac{b-a}{2}:\frac{b-a}{2}\right)}(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \quad \text{(Definition H.2 page 205)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \int_{\mathbb{R}} c\mathbb{1}_{\left[-\frac{b-a}{2}:\frac{b-a}{2}\right)}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Definition G.2 page 195)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \int_{-\frac{b-a}{2}}^{\frac{b-a}{2}} c e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \quad \text{(Definition H.2 page 205)} \\
&= \frac{c}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \frac{1}{-i\omega} e^{-i\omega x}\Big|_{-\frac{b-a}{2}}^{\frac{b-a}{2}} \\
&= \frac{2c}{\sqrt{2\pi}\omega} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \left[\frac{e^{i\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)} - e^{-i\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}}{2i}\right] \\
&= \frac{c(b-a)}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}\right] && \text{by \textit{Euler formulas}} \quad \text{(Corollary F.2 page 183)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Example G.2 (triangle). Let $\tilde{f}(\omega)$ be the *Fourier transform* of a function $f(x) \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

EX

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} c\left[1 - \frac{|2x-b-a|}{b-a}\right] & \text{for } x \in [a:b) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \qquad \tilde{f}(\omega) = \frac{c(b-a)^2}{4\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}\right]^2$$





✎PROOF:

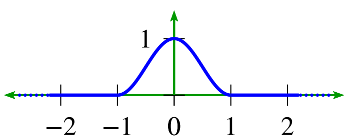
$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{f}(\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}[f(x)](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{f}(\omega) \\
&= e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[f\left(x - \frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right](\omega) && \text{by \textit{shift relation}} \quad \text{(Theorem G.4 page 197)} \\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[c\left(1 - \frac{|2x-b-a|}{b-a}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[a:b)}(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } f(x) \\
&= c\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}(x) \star \mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}(x)\right](\omega) \\
&= c\sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}\right]\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}\right] && \text{by \textit{convolution theorem}} \quad \text{(Theorem G.6 page 198)} \\
&= c\sqrt{2\pi}\left(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}\right]\right)^2 \\
&= c\sqrt{2\pi}\left(\frac{\left(\frac{b}{2}-\frac{a}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{4}\omega\right)}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}\right]\right)^2 && \text{by \textit{Rectangular pulse} ex.} \quad \text{Example G.1 page 202} \\
&= \frac{c(b-a)^2}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}\right]^2
\end{aligned}$$

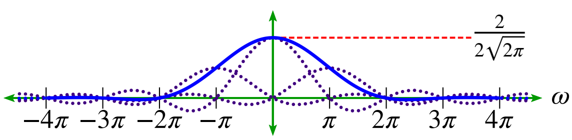
✏

Example G.3. Let a function f be defined in terms of the cosine function (Definition F.2 page 177) as follows:

EX

$$f(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) & \text{for } |x| \le 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \qquad \tilde{f}(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\underbrace{\frac{2\sin\omega}{\omega}}_{2\,\text{sinc}(\omega)} + \underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega+\pi)}{(\omega+\pi)}}_{\text{sinc}(\omega+\pi)} + \underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega-\pi)}{(\omega-\pi)}}_{\text{sinc}(\omega-\pi)}\right]$$





✎PROOF: Let $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition H.2 page 205) on a set A.

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{f}(\omega) &\triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,dx && \text{by definition of } \tilde{f}(\omega) \text{ (Definition G.2)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1]}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,dx && \text{by definition of } f(x) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-1}^{1} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)e^{-i\omega x}\,dx && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \text{ (Definition H.2)}
\end{aligned}$$

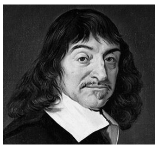
$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-1}^{1}\left[\frac{e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}x}+e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}x}}{2}\right]^2 e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by Corollary F.2 page 183}\\
&= \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-1}^{1}\left[2+e^{i\pi x}+e^{-i\pi x}\right]e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-1}^{1} 2e^{-i\omega x}+e^{-i(\omega+\pi)x}+e^{-i(\omega-\pi)x}\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[2\frac{e^{-i\omega x}}{-i\omega}+\frac{e^{-i(\omega+\pi)x}}{-i(\omega+\pi)}+\frac{e^{-i(\omega-\pi)x}}{-i(\omega-\pi)}\right]_{-1}^{1}\\
&= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[2\frac{e^{-i\omega}-e^{+i\omega}}{-2i\omega}+\frac{e^{-i(\omega+\pi)}-e^{+i(\omega+\pi)}}{-2i(\omega+\pi)}+\frac{e^{-i(\omega-\pi)}-e^{+i(\omega-\pi)}}{-2i(\omega-\pi)}\right]_{-1}^{1}\\
&= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\underbrace{\frac{2\sin\omega}{\omega}}_{2\,\mathrm{sinc}(\omega)}+\underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega+\pi)}{(\omega+\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega+\pi)}+\underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega-\pi)}{(\omega-\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega-\pi)}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

✏

APPENDIX H

TRANSVERSAL OPERATORS

❝*Je me plaisois surtout aux mathématiques, à cause de la certitude et de l'évidence de leurs raisons: mais je ne remarquois point encore leur vrai usage; et, pensant qu'elles ne servoient qu'aux arts mécaniques, je m'étonnois de ce que leurs fondements étant si fermes et si solides, on n'avoit rien bâti dessus de plus relevé:*❞



❝*I was especially delighted with the mathematics, on account of the certitude and evidence of their reasonings; but I had not as yet a precise knowledge of their true use; and thinking that they but contributed to the advancement of the mechanical arts, I was astonished that foundations, so strong and solid, should have had no loftier superstructure reared on them.*❞

René Descartes, philosopher and mathematician (1596–1650) [1]

H.1 Families of Functions

This text is largely set in the space of *Lebesgue square-integrable functions* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition **??** page **??**). The space $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is a subspace of the space $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$, the set of all functions with *domain* $\mathbb{R}$ (the set of real numbers) and *range* $\mathbb{R}$. The space $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$ is a subspace of the space $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$, the set of all functions with *domain* $\mathbb{C}$ (the set of complex numbers) and *range* $\mathbb{C}$. That is, $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}} \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$. In general, the notation Y^X represents the set of all functions with domain X and range Y (Definition H.1 page 205). Although this notation may seem curious, note that for finite X and finite Y, the number of functions (elements) in Y^X is $\left|Y^X\right| = |Y|^{|X|}$.

Definition H.1. *Let X and Y be sets.*

DEF *The space Y^X represents the set of all functions with* DOMAIN X *and* RANGE Y *such that*
$$Y^X \triangleq \{\mathsf{f}(x) | \mathsf{f}(x) : X \to Y\}$$

Definition H.2. [2] *Let X be a set.*

[1] quote: Descartes (1637a)
translation: Descartes (1637b) ⟨part I, paragraph 10⟩
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Frans_Hals_-_Portret_van_Ren%C3%A9_Descartes.jpg, public domain

[2] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998), page 126, Hausdorff (1937), page 22, de la Vallée-Poussin (1915) page 440

DEF *The **indicator function** $\mathbb{1} \in \{0,1\}^{2^X}$ is defined as*

$$\mathbb{1}_A(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x \in A \qquad \forall x \in X,\ A \in 2^X \\ 0 & \text{for } x \notin A \qquad \forall x \in X,\ A \in 2^X \end{cases}$$

*The indicator function $\mathbb{1}$ is also called the **characteristic function**.*

H.2 Definitions and algebraic properties

Much of the wavelet theory developed in this text is constructed using the **translation operator T** and the **dilation operator D** (next).

Definition H.3. [3]

DEF

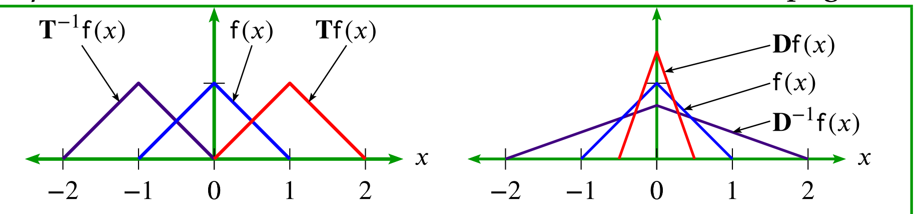
$\mathbf{T}_\tau$ *is a **translation operator** on $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ if* $\quad \mathbf{T}_\tau \mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x-\tau) \quad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$.

$\mathbf{D}_\alpha$ *is a **dilation operator** on $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ if* $\quad \mathbf{D}_\alpha \mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(\alpha x) \quad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$.

Moreover, $\mathbf{T} \triangleq \mathbf{T}_1$ *and* $\mathbf{D} \triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathbf{D}_2$.

Example H.1. Let **T** and **D** be defined as in Definition H.3 (page 206).

EX



Proposition H.1. *Let $\mathbf{T}_\tau$ be a* TRANSLATION OPERATOR *(Definition H.3 page 206).*

PRP

$$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x+\tau) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}} \qquad \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x) \text{ is PERIODIC with period } \tau\right)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x+\tau) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n\tau+\tau) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_\tau && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-m\tau) && \text{where } m \triangleq n-1 && \Longrightarrow \quad n = m+1 \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^m \mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_\tau && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}
\end{aligned}$$

⇒

In a linear space, every operator has an *inverse*. Although the inverse always exists as a *relation*, it may not exist as a *function* or as an *operator*. But in some cases the inverse of an operator is itself an operator. The inverses of the operators **T** and **D** both exist as operators, as demonstrated next.

Proposition H.2 (transversal operator inverses). *Let **T** and **D** be as defined in Definition H.3 page 206.*

[3] Walnut (2002) pages 79–80 ⟨Definition 3.39⟩, Christensen (2003) pages 41–42, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 18 ⟨Definitions 2.3,2.4⟩, Kammler (2008) page A-21, Bachman et al. (2000) page 473, Packer (2004) page 260, Benedetto and Zayed (2004) page , Heil (2011) page 250 ⟨Notation 9.4⟩, Casazza and Lammers (1998) page 74, Goodman et al. (1993a), page 639, Heil and Walnut (1989) page 633 ⟨Definition 1.3.1⟩, Dai and Lu (1996), page 81, Dai and Larson (1998) page 2

PRP

$\mathbf{T}$ *has an* INVERSE $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ *in* $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *expressed by the relation*

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(x+1) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}} \qquad \textit{(translation operator inverse).}$$

$\mathbf{D}$ *has an* INVERSE $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *in* $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *expressed by the relation*

$$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}} \qquad \textit{(dilation operator inverse).}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ is the inverse of $\mathbf{T}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x-1) && \text{by defintion of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
&= \mathsf{f}([x+1]-1)\\
&= \mathsf{f}(x)\\
&= \mathsf{f}([x-1]+1)\\
&= \mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}(x+1) && \text{by defintion of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
&= \mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\\
\implies \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{T} &= \mathbf{I} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^{-1}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ is the inverse of $\mathbf{D}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{D}^{-1}\sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) && \text{by defintion of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
&= \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)\sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}\left(2\left[\frac{1}{2}x\right]\right)\\
&= \mathsf{f}(x)\\
&= \sqrt{2}\left[\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}[2x]\right)\right]\\
&= \mathbf{D}\left[\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)\right] && \text{by defintion of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
&= \mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\\
\implies \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{D} &= \mathbf{I} = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^{-1}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition H.3. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as defined in Definition H.3 page 206.*
Let $\mathbf{D}^0 = \mathbf{T}^0 \triangleq \mathbf{I}$ *be the* IDENTITY OPERATOR.

PRP

$$\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) = 2^{j/2}\mathsf{f}\left(2^jx-n\right) \qquad \forall j,n\in\mathbb{Z}, \mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$$

H.3 Linear space properties

Proposition H.4. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition H.3 page 206.*

PRP

$$\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n[\mathsf{f}\mathsf{g}] = 2^{-j/2}\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}\right]\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{g}\right] \qquad \forall j,n\in\mathbb{Z}, \mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$$

✎PROOF:

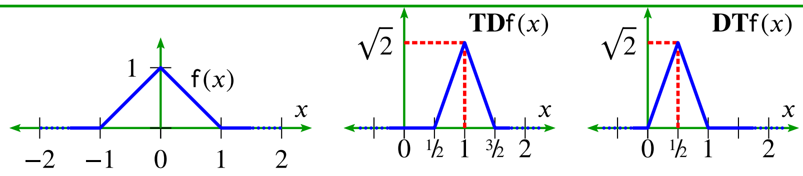
$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n[\mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}(x)] &= 2^{j/2}\mathsf{f}\left(2^jx-n\right)\mathsf{g}\left(2^jx-n\right) && \text{by Proposition H.3 page 207}\\
&= 2^{-j/2}\left[2^{j/2}\mathsf{f}\left(2^jx-n\right)\right]\left[2^{j/2}\mathsf{g}\left(2^jx-n\right)\right]\\
&= 2^{-j/2}\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x)\right]\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{g}(x)\right] && \text{by Proposition H.3 page 207}
\end{aligned}$$

In general the operators $\mathbf{T}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ are *noncommutative* ($\mathbf{TD} \neq \mathbf{DT}$), as demonstrated by Counterexample H.1 (next) and Proposition H.5 (page 208).

Counterexample H.1.

CNT

As illustrated to the right, it is **not** always true that $\mathbf{TD} = \mathbf{DT}$:



Proposition H.5 (commutator relation). [4] *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition H.3 page 206.*

PRP

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n &= \mathbf{T}^{2^{-j/2}n}\mathbf{D}^j && \forall j,n\in\mathbb{Z} \\ \mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}^j &= \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^{2^j n} && \forall n,j\in\mathbb{Z} \end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^{2^j n}\mathsf{f}(x) &= 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}(2^j x - 2^j n) && \text{by Proposition H.4 page 207} \\ &= 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^j[x-n]\right) && \text{by \textit{distributivity} of the field } (\mathbb{R},+,\cdot,0,1) && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)} \\ &= \mathbf{T}^n 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^j x\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \\ &= \mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}^j\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) &= 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}(2^j x - n) && \text{by Proposition H.4 page 207} \\ &= 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^j\left[x-2^{-j/2}n\right]\right) && \text{by \textit{distributivity} of the field } (\mathbb{R},+,\cdot,0,1) && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)} \\ &= \mathbf{T}^{2^{-j/2}n}2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^j x\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \\ &= \mathbf{T}^{2^{-j/2}n}\mathbf{D}^j\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \end{aligned}$$

H.4 Inner product space properties

In an inner product space, every operator has an *adjoint* and this adjoint is always itself an operator. In the case where the adjoint and inverse of an operator $\mathbf{U}$ coincide, then $\mathbf{U}$ is said to be *unitary*. And in this case, $\mathbf{U}$ has several nice properties (see Proposition H.9 and Theorem H.1 page 211). Proposition H.6 (next) gives the adjoints of $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{T}$, and Proposition H.7 (page 209) demonstrates that both $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{T}$ are unitary. Other examples of unitary operators include the *Fourier Transform operator* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ and the *rotation matrix operator*.

Proposition H.6. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be the* TRANSLATION OPERATOR (Definition H.3 page 206) *with* ADJOINT $\mathbf{T}^*$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *the* DILATION OPERATOR *with* ADJOINT $\mathbf{D}^*$.

PRP

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathsf{f}(x+1) && \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(TRANSLATION OPERATOR ADJOINT)} \\ \mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(x) &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) && \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(DILATION OPERATOR ADJOINT)} \end{aligned}$$

[4] Christensen (2003) page 42 ⟨equation (2.9)⟩, Dai and Larson (1998) page 21, Goodman et al. (1993a), page 641, Goodman et al. (1993b), page 110

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(x+1)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathsf{g}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(x)\rangle &= \langle \mathsf{g}(u) \,|\, \mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by change of variable } x \to u \\
&= \langle \mathbf{T}\mathsf{g}(u) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint } \mathbf{T}^* \\
&= \langle \mathsf{g}(u-1) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \\
&= \langle \mathsf{g}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(x+1)\rangle && \text{where } x \triangleq u-1 \implies u = x+1 \\
\implies \mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathsf{f}(x+1)
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathsf{g}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(x)\rangle &= \langle \mathsf{g}(u) \,|\, \mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by change of variable } x \to u \\
&= \langle \mathbf{D}\mathsf{g}(u) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D}^* \\
&= \left\langle \sqrt{2}\mathsf{g}(2u) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(u)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} \quad \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \sqrt{2}\mathsf{g}(2u)\mathsf{f}^*(u)\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle \\
&= \int_{x\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{g}(x)\left[\sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\frac{1}{2}\right]^*\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{where } x = 2u \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{g}(x) \,|\, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle \\
\implies \mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(x) &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition H.7. [5] *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition H.3 (page 206). Let* $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *be as in Proposition H.2 (page 206).*

PRP

$\mathbf{T}$ *is* UNITARY *in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ $(\mathbf{T}^{-1} = \mathbf{T}^*$ *in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}})$.
$\mathbf{D}$ *is* UNITARY *in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ $(\mathbf{D}^{-1} = \mathbf{D}^*$ *in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}})$.

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}^{-1} &= \mathbf{T}^* && \text{by Proposition H.2 page 206 and Proposition H.6 page 208} \\
&\implies \mathbf{T} \text{ is } \textit{unitary} && \text{by the definition of } \textit{unitary} \text{ operators}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^{-1} &= \mathbf{D}^* && \text{by Proposition H.2 page 206 and Proposition H.6 page 208} \\
&\implies \mathbf{D} \text{ is } \textit{unitary} && \text{by the definition of } \textit{unitary} \text{ operators}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

H.5 Normed linear space properties

Proposition H.8. *Let* $\mathbf{D}$ *be the* DILATION OPERATOR *(Definition H.3 page 206).*

PRP

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (1). & \mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) = \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(x) & \textit{and} \\ (2). & \mathsf{f}(x) \textit{ is } \text{CONTINUOUS} & \end{array}\right\} \iff \{\mathsf{f}(x) \textit{ is a } \text{CONSTANT}\} \qquad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

[5] Christensen (2003) page 41 ⟨Lemma 2.5.1⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 18 ⟨Lemma 2.5⟩

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\Longleftarrow$ *constant* property:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) &\triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\ &= \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by \textit{constant} hypothesis}\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (2) $\Longleftarrow$ *constant* property:

$$\begin{aligned}\|\mathsf{f}(x)-\mathsf{f}(x+h)\| &= \|\mathsf{f}(x)-\mathsf{f}(x)\| && \text{by \textit{constant} hypothesis}\\ &= \|0\|\\ &= 0 && \text{by \textit{nondegenerate} property of } \|\cdot\|\\ &\le \varepsilon\\ &\implies \forall h>0,\ \exists\varepsilon \quad \text{such that} \quad \|\mathsf{f}(x)-\mathsf{f}(x+h)\| < \varepsilon\\ &\stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \mathsf{f}(x) \text{ is \textit{continuous}}\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (1,2) $\implies$ *constant* property:

   (a) Suppose there exists $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\mathsf{f}(x) \neq \mathsf{f}(y)$.

   (b) Let $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence with limit x and $(\!(y_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ a sequence with limit y

   (c) Then

$$\begin{aligned}0 &< \|\mathsf{f}(x)-\mathsf{f}(y)\| && \text{by assumption in item (3a) page 210}\\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left\|\mathsf{f}(x_n)-\mathsf{f}(y_n)\right\| && \text{by (2) and definition of } (\!(x_n)\!) \text{ and } (\!(y_n)\!) \text{ in item (3b) page 210}\\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left\|\mathsf{f}(2^m x_n)-\mathsf{f}(2^\ell y_n)\right\| \quad \forall m,\ell\in\mathbb{Z} && \text{by (1)}\\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

   (d) But this is a *contradiction*, so $\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(y)$ for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$, and $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *constant*.

✏

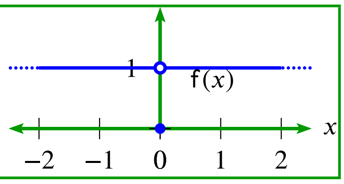
Remark H.1.

REM In Proposition H.8 page 209, it is not possible to remove the *continuous* constraint outright, as demonstrated by the next two counterexamples.

Counterexample H.2. Let $\mathsf{f}(x)$ be a function in $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$.

CNT Let $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } x=0\\ 1 & \text{otherwise.}\end{cases}$

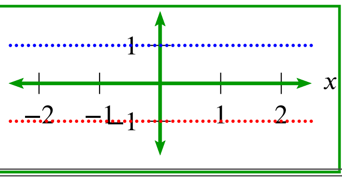
Then $\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) = \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(x)$, but $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *not constant*.



Counterexample H.3. Let $\mathsf{f}(x)$ be a function in $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$.
Let $\mathbb{Q}$ be the set of *rational numbers* and $\mathbb{R}\backslash\mathbb{Q}$ the set of *irrational numbers*.

CNT Let $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x\in\mathbb{Q}\\ -1 & \text{for } x\in\mathbb{R}\backslash\mathbb{Q}.\end{cases}$

Then $\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) = \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(x)$, but $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *not constant*.



Proposition H.9 (Operator norm). *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition H.3 page 206. Let* $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *be as in Proposition H.2 page 206. Let* $\mathbf{T}^{*}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}^{*}$ *be as in Proposition H.6 page 208. Let* $\|\cdot\|$ *and* $\langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle$ *be as in Definition ?? page ??. Let* $|||\cdot|||$ *be the operator norm induced by* $\|\cdot\|$.

PRP
$$|||\mathbf{T}||| = |||\mathbf{D}||| = \left|\left|\left|\mathbf{T}^{*}\right|\right|\right| = \left|\left|\left|\mathbf{D}^{*}\right|\right|\right| = \left|\left|\left|\mathbf{T}^{-1}\right|\right|\right| = \left|\left|\left|\mathbf{D}^{-1}\right|\right|\right| = 1$$

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from the fact that $\mathbf{T}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ are *unitary* and from properties of unitary operators. ⇒

Theorem H.1. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition H.3 page 206.*
Let $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *be as in Proposition H.2 page 206. Let* $\|\cdot\|$ *and* $\langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle$ *be as in Definition ?? page ??.*

THM

1.	$\|\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}\|$	$=$	$\|\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}\|$	$=$	$\|\mathsf{f}\|$	$\forall\mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(ISOMETRIC IN LENGTH)
2.	$\|\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}-\mathbf{T}\mathsf{g}\|$	$=$	$\|\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}-\mathbf{D}\mathsf{g}\|$	$=$	$\|\mathsf{f}-\mathsf{g}\|$	$\forall\mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(ISOMETRIC IN DISTANCE)
3.	$\left\|\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}-\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\|$	$=$	$\left\|\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}-\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\|$	$=$	$\|\mathsf{f}-\mathsf{g}\|$	$\forall\mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(ISOMETRIC IN DISTANCE)
4.	$\langle\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}\,|\,\mathbf{T}\mathsf{g}\rangle$	$=$	$\langle\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}\,|\,\mathbf{D}\mathsf{g}\rangle$	$=$	$\langle\mathsf{f}\,|\,\mathsf{g}\rangle$	$\forall\mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(SURJECTIVE)
5.	$\left\langle\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}\,|\,\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\rangle$	$=$	$\left\langle\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}\,|\,\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\rangle$	$=$	$\langle\mathsf{f}\,|\,\mathsf{g}\rangle$	$\forall\mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(SURJECTIVE)

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from the fact that $\mathbf{T}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ are *unitary* (Proposition H.7 page 209) and from properties of unitary operators. ⇒

Proposition H.10. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be as in Definition H.3 page 206. Let* $\mathbf{A}^{*}$ *be the* ADJOINT *of an operator* $\mathbf{A}$.

PRP
$$\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right) = \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right)^{*} \qquad \left(\text{The operator } \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right] \text{ is SELF-ADJOINT}\right)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\langle\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right)\mathsf{f}(x)\,\middle|\,\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle &= \left\langle\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{f}(x-n)\,\middle|\,\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
&= \left\langle\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{f}(x+n)\,\middle|\,\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{commutative} \text{ property} && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\langle\mathsf{f}(x+n)\,|\,\mathsf{g}(x)\rangle && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\langle\mathsf{f}(u)\,|\,\mathsf{g}(u-n)\rangle && \text{where } u \triangleq x+n\\
&= \left\langle\mathsf{f}(u)\,\middle|\,\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{g}(u-n)\right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle\\
&= \left\langle\mathsf{f}(x)\,\middle|\,\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{g}(x-n)\right\rangle && \text{by change of variable: } u\to x\\
&= \left\langle\mathsf{f}(x)\,\middle|\,\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
\iff \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right) &= \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right)^{*} && \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint}\\
\iff \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right) &\text{ is } \textit{self-adjoint} && \text{by definition of } \textit{self-adjoint}
\end{aligned}$$

⇒

H.6 Fourier transform properties

Proposition H.11. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition H.3 page 206.*
Let $\mathbf{B}$ *be the* TWO-SIDED LAPLACE TRANSFORM *defined as* $[\mathbf{B}\mathsf{f}](s) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-sx}\,\mathrm{d}x$.

PRP

1.	$\mathbf{B}\mathbf{T}^n$	$=$	$e^{-sn}\mathbf{B}$			$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$
2.	$\mathbf{B}\mathbf{D}^j$	$=$	$\mathbf{D}^{-j}\mathbf{B}$			$\forall j\in\mathbb{Z}$
3.	$\mathbf{D}\mathbf{B}$	$=$	$\mathbf{B}\mathbf{D}^{-1}$			$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$
4.	$\mathbf{B}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^{-1}$	$=$	$\mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{B}$	$=$	$\mathbf{D}$	$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$ ($\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *is* SIMILAR *to* $\mathbf{D}$)
5.	$\mathbf{D}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{D}$	$=$	$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{D}^{-1}$	$=$	$\mathbf{B}$	$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{B}\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{B}\mathsf{f}(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)e^{-sx}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-s(u+n)}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{where } u \triangleq x-n\\
&= e^{-sn}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-su}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]\\
&= e^{-sn}\,\mathbf{B}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{B}\mathbf{D}^j\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{B}\left[2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^jx\right)\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^jx\right)\right]e^{-sx}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}(u)\right]e^{-s2^{-j}}2^{-j}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{let } u \triangleq 2^jx \implies x = 2^{-j}u\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-s2^{-j}u}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \mathbf{D}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-su}\,\mathrm{d}u\right] && \text{by Proposition H.6 page 208 and} && \text{Proposition H.7 page 209}\\
&= \mathbf{D}^{-j}\,\mathbf{B}\,\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}\mathbf{B}\,\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{D}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-sx}\,\mathrm{d}x\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-2sx}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}\left(\frac{u}{2}\right)e^{-su}\frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{let } u \triangleq 2x \implies x = \tfrac{1}{2}u\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{u}{2}\right)\right]e^{-su}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}\right](u)\,e^{-su}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by Proposition H.6 page 208 and} && \text{Proposition H.7 page 209}\\
&= \mathbf{B}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{B} &= \mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{D} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \mathbf{D} && \text{by definition of operator inverse}\\
\mathbf{B}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^{-1} &= \mathbf{D}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{B}^{-1} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \mathbf{D} && \text{by definition of operator inverse}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{DBD} &= \mathbf{DD}^{-1}\mathbf{B} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \mathbf{B} && \text{by definition of operator inverse}\\
\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{BD}^{-1} &= \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{DB} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \mathbf{B} && \text{by definition of operator inverse}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Corollary H.1. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition H.3 page 206. Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM (Definition G.2 page 195) *of some function* $\mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition ?? page ??).

COR

1. $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n = e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$
2. $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^j = \mathbf{D}^{-j}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$
3. $\mathbf{D}\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^{-1}$
4. $\mathbf{D} = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$
5. $\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{D}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^{-1}$

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from Proposition H.11 page 211 with $\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{B}|_{s=i\omega}$. ✏

Proposition H.12. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition H.3 page 206. Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM (Definition G.2 page 195) *of some function* $\mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition ?? page ??).

PRP

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{2^{j/2}}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2^j}n}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^j}\right)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{D}^{-j}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by Corollary H.1 page 213 (3)}\\
&= \mathbf{D}^{-j}e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by Corollary H.1 page 213 (3)}\\
&= \mathbf{D}^{-j}e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\\
&= 2^{-j/2}e^{-i2^{-j}\omega n}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(2^{-j}\omega\right) && \text{by Proposition H.2 page 206}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition H.13. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be the translation operator* (Definition H.3 page 206). *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM (Definition G.2 page 195) *of a function* $\mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFT (Definition ?? page ??) *of a sequence* $(\!(a_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \boldsymbol{\ell}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition ?? page ??).

PRP

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) = \breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega) \qquad \forall (\!(a_n)\!)\in\boldsymbol{\ell}^2_{\mathbb{R}},\ \phi(x)\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi(x) && \text{by Corollary H.1 page 213}\\
&= \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}\right]\tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\\
&= \breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by definition of } \textit{DTFT} \text{ (Definition ?? page ??)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Definition H.4. *Let* $L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$ *be the* SPACE OF LEBESGUE SQUARE-INTEGRABLE FUNCTIONS *(Definition* **??** *page* **??**). *Let* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *be the* SPACE OF ALL ABSOLUTELY SQUARE SUMMABLE SEQUENCES OVER $\mathbb{R}$ *(Definition* **??** *page* **??**).

DEF

$\mathbf{S}$ *is the* ***sampling operator*** *in* $\ell^{2\,L^2_{\mathbb{R}}}_{\mathbb{R}}$ *if* $\quad [\mathbf{S}\mathsf{f}(x)](n) \triangleq \mathsf{f}\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)},\ \tau\in\mathbb{R}^+$

Theorem H.2 (Poisson Summation Formula—PSF). [6] *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition G.2 page 195) of a function* $\mathsf{f}(x) \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\mathbf{S}$ *be the* SAMPLING OPERATOR *(Definition H.4 page 213).*

THM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n_\tau \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)}_{\text{summation in "time"}} = \underbrace{\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x)]}_{\text{operator notation}} = \underbrace{\frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{\tau}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}}_{\text{summation in "frequency"}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: If $\mathsf{h}(x) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)$ then $\mathsf{h} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}$. Proof:

   Note that $\mathsf{h}(x)$ is *periodic* with period τ. Because h is periodic, it is in the domain of $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ and thus $\mathsf{h} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}$.

2. Proof of PSF (this theorem—Theorem H.2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau) &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau) && \text{by (1) lemma page 214}\\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\int_0^\tau \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)\right)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}kx}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]}_{\hat{\mathbf{F}}[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)]} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Definition ?? page ??)}\\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_0^\tau \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}kx}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]\\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{u=n\tau}^{u=(n+1)\tau} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}k(u-n\tau)}\,\mathrm{d}u\right] && \text{where } u \triangleq x+n\tau \implies x = u-n\tau\\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\cancelto{1}{e^{i2\pi kn}}\int_{u=n\tau}^{u=(n+1)\tau} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}ku}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]\\
&= \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}k\right)u}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]}_{[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}]\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}k\right)} && \text{by evaluation of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \quad \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}\\
&= \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)]\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}k\right)\right] && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Definition G.2 page 195)}\\
&= \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} \quad \text{(Definition H.4 page 213)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{\tau}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx} && \text{by evaluation of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \quad \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[6] Andrews et al. (2001), page 624, Knapp (2005b) page 389, Lasser (1996), page 254, Rudin (1987), pages 194–195, Folland (1992), page 337

Theorem H.3 (Inverse Poisson Summation Formula—IPSF). [7]
Let $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition G.2 page 195) of a function* $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

THM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n_{2\pi/\tau}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega - \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)}_{\text{summation in "frequency"}} = \underbrace{\frac{\tau}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(n\tau)e^{-i\omega n\tau}}_{\text{summation in "time"}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: If $\mathsf{h}(\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)$, then $\mathsf{h} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}$. Proof:
   Note that $\mathsf{h}(\omega)$ is periodic with period $2\pi/T$:
   $$\mathsf{h}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}\right) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau} + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + (n+1)\frac{2\pi}{\tau}\right) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) \triangleq \mathsf{h}(\omega)$$
   Because h is periodic, it is in the domain of $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ and is equivalent to $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}$.

2. Proof of IPSF (this theorem—Theorem H.3):

$$\begin{aligned}
&\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) \\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) && \text{by (1) lemma page 215} \\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\int_0^{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)e^{-i\omega\frac{2\pi}{2\pi/\tau}k}\,\mathrm{d}\omega\right]}_{\hat{\mathbf{F}}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega+\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)\right]} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)} \\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_0^{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)e^{-i\omega Tk}\,\mathrm{d}\omega\right] \\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{u=\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n}^{u=\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(n+1)} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u)e^{-i\left(u-\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)Tk}\,\mathrm{d}u\right] && \text{where } u \triangleq \omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n \implies \omega = u - \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n \\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\cancelto{1}{e^{i2\pi nk}}\int_{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n}^{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(n+1)} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u)e^{-iu\tau k}\,\mathrm{d}u\right] \\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u)e^{-iu\tau k}\,\mathrm{d}u\right] \\
&= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u)e^{iu(-\tau k)}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]}_{[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}](-k\tau)} \\
&= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}](-k\tau)\right] && \text{by value of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} && \text{(Theorem G.1 page 196)} \\
&= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\,\tilde{\mathsf{f}} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} && \text{(Definition H.4 page 213)} \\
&= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition G.2 page 195)} \\
&= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(-k\tau) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} && \text{(Definition H.4 page 213)} \\
&= \sqrt{\tau}\,\frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(-k\tau)e^{i2\pi\frac{1}{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}k\omega} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} && \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}
\end{aligned}$$

[7] Gauss (1900), page 88

$$= \frac{\tau}{\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(-k\tau)e^{ik\tau\omega} \qquad \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \quad \text{(Theorem ?? page ??)}$$

$$= \frac{\tau}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(m\tau)e^{-i\omega m\tau} \qquad \text{let } m \triangleq -k$$

⇰

Remark H.2. The left hand side of the *Poisson Summation Formula* (Theorem H.2 page 214) is very similar to the *Zak Transform* $\mathbf{Z}$: [8]

$$(\mathbf{Z}\mathsf{f})(t,\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)e^{i2\pi n\omega}$$

Remark H.3. A generalization of the *Poisson Summation Formula* (Theorem H.2 page 214) is the **Selberg Trace Formula**.[9]

H.7 Examples

Example H.2 (linear functions). [10] Let $\mathbf{T}$ be the *translation operator* (Definition H.3 page 206). Let $\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{C},\mathbb{C})$ be the set of all *linear* functions in $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

EX		
1.	$\{x,\ \mathbf{T}x\}$ is a *basis* for $\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{C},\mathbb{C})$	and
2.	$\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(1)x - \mathsf{f}(0)\mathbf{T}x$	$\forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbb{C},\mathbb{C})$

✎PROOF: By left hypothesis, f is *linear*; so let $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq ax+b$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{f}(1)x - \mathsf{f}(0)\mathbf{T}x &= \mathsf{f}(1)x - \mathsf{f}(0)(x-1) && \text{by Definition H.3 page 206}\\
&= (ax+b)|_{x=1}\, x - (ax+b)|_{x=0}\,(x-1) && \text{by left hypothesis and definition of f}\\
&= (a+b)x - b(x-1)\\
&= ax + bx - bx + b\\
&= ax + b\\
&= \mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by left hypothesis and definition of f}
\end{aligned}$$

⇰

Example H.3 (Cardinal Series). Let $\mathbf{T}$ be the *translation operator* (Definition H.3 page 206). The *Paley-Wiener* class of functions $\boldsymbol{PW}^2_\sigma$ are those functions which are "*bandlimited*" with respect to their Fourier transform. The cardinal series forms an orthogonal basis for such a space. The *Fourier coefficients* for a projection of a function f onto the Cardinal series basis elements is particularly simple—these coefficients are samples of $\mathsf{f}(x)$ taken at regular intervals. In fact, one could represent the coefficients using inner product notation with the *Dirac delta distribution* δ as follows:

$$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\delta(x)\rangle \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\delta(x-n)\,\mathsf{d}x \triangleq \mathsf{f}(n)$$

EX		
1.	$\left\{ \mathbf{T}^n \frac{\sin(\pi x)}{\pi x} \,\middle|\, n\in\mathbb{N} \right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{PW}^2_\sigma$	and
2.	$\mathsf{f}(x) = \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{f}(n)\mathbf{T}^n \frac{\sin(\pi x)}{\pi x}}_{\text{Cardinal series}}$	$\forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{PW}^2_\sigma,\ \sigma \le \frac{1}{2}$

[8] Janssen (1988), page 24, Zayed (1996), page 482
[9] Lax (2002), page 349, Selberg (1956), Terras (1999)
[10] Higgins (1996) page 2

Example H.4 (Fourier Series).

EX

1. $\left\{\mathbf{D}_n e^{ix} \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}(0:2\pi)$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_n \mathbf{D}_n e^{ix} \quad \forall x\in(0:2\pi), \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}(0:2\pi)$ where
3. $\alpha_n \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_0^{2\pi} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathbf{D}_n e^{-ix}\,\mathrm{d}x \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}(0:2\pi)$

✎PROOF: See Theorem ?? page ??. ✏

Example H.5 (Fourier Transform). [11]

EX

1. $\left\{\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{ix} \middle| \omega\in\mathbb{R}\right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\mathbf{D}_x e^{i\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ where
3. $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{-ix}\,\mathrm{d}x \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$

Example H.6 (Gabor Transform). [12]

EX

1. $\left\{\left(\mathbf{T}_\tau e^{-\pi x^2}\right)\left(\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{ix}\right) \middle| \tau,\omega\in\mathbb{R}\right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{G}(\tau,\omega)\,\mathbf{D}_x e^{i\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}, \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ where
3. $\mathsf{G}(\tau,\omega) \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\left(\mathbf{T}_\tau e^{-\pi x^2}\right)\left(\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{-ix}\right)\mathrm{d}x \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}, \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$

Example H.7 (wavelets). Let $\psi(x)$ be a *wavelet*.

EX

1. $\left\{\mathbf{D}^k\mathbf{T}^n\psi(x) \middle| k,n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_{k,n}\mathbf{D}^k\mathbf{T}^n\psi(x) \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ where
3. $\alpha_n \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathbf{D}^k\mathbf{T}^n\psi^*(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$

[11] cross reference: Definition G.2 page 195

[12] Gabor (1946), Qian and Chen (1996) ⟨Chapter 3⟩, Forster and Massopust (2009) page 32 ⟨Definition 1.69⟩

APPENDIX I

OPERATORS ON LINEAR SPACES

❝*And I am not afraid to say that there is a way to advance algebra as far beyond what Vieta and Descartes have left us as Vieta and Descartes carried it beyond the ancients.…we need still another analysis which is distinctly geometrical or linear, and which will express situation directly as algebra expresses magnitude directly.*❞

Gottfried Leibniz (1646–1716), German mathematician, in a September 8, 1679 letter to Christian Huygens. [1]

I.1 Operators on linear spaces

I.1.1 Operator Algebra

An operator is simply a function that maps from a linear space to another linear space (or to the same linear space).

Definition I.1. [2] *Let* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ *be a* FIELD. *Let* X *be a set, let* $+$ *be an* OPERATOR *(Definition I.2 page 220) in* X^{X^2}*, and let* $\otimes$ *be an operator in* $X^{\mathbb{F}\times X}$.

[1] quote: Leibniz (1679) pages 248–249
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gottfried_Wilhelm_von_Leibniz.jpg, public domain

[2] Kubrusly (2001) pages 40–41 ⟨Definition 2.1 and following remarks⟩, Haaser and Sullivan (1991), page 41, Halmos (1948), pages 1–2, Peano (1888a) ⟨Chapter IX⟩, Peano (1888b), pages 119–120, Banach (1922) pages 134–135

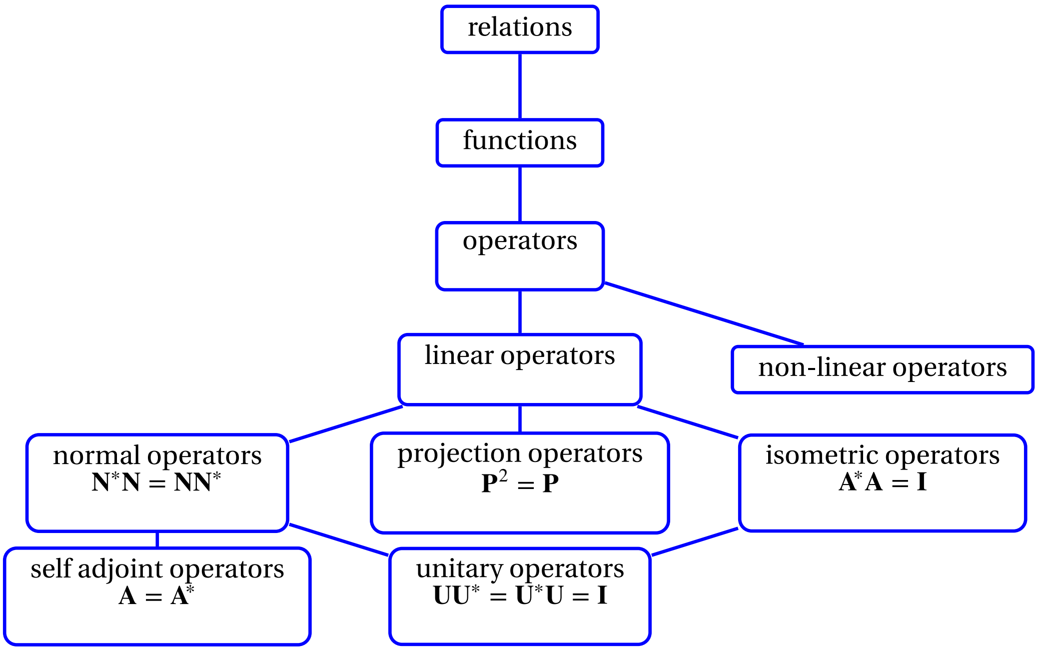


Figure I.1: Some operator types

DEF *The structure* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\right)$ *is a* ***linear space*** *over* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ *if*

1.	$\exists \mathbb{0} \in X$ such that	$\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbb{0}$	$=$	$\boldsymbol{x}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	(+ IDENTITY)	*
2.	$\exists \boldsymbol{y} \in X$ such that	$\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}$	$=$	$\mathbb{0}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	(+ INVERSE)	
3.		$(\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}) + \boldsymbol{z}$	$=$	$\boldsymbol{x} + (\boldsymbol{y} + \boldsymbol{z})$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z} \in X$	(+ *is* ASSOCIATIVE)	
4.		$\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}$	$=$	$\boldsymbol{y} + \boldsymbol{x}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X$	(+ *is* COMMUTATIVE)	
5.		$1 \cdot \boldsymbol{x}$	$=$	$\boldsymbol{x}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	($\cdot$ IDENTITY)	
6.		$\alpha \cdot (\beta \cdot \boldsymbol{x})$	$=$	$(\alpha \cdot \beta) \cdot \boldsymbol{x}$	$\forall \alpha, \beta \in S$ *and* $\boldsymbol{x} \in X$	($\cdot$ ASSOCIATES *with* $\cdot$)	
7.		$\alpha \cdot (\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y})$	$=$	$(\alpha \cdot \boldsymbol{x}) + (\alpha \cdot \boldsymbol{y})$	$\forall \alpha \in S$ *and* $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X$	($\cdot$ DISTRIBUTES *over* +)	
8.		$(\alpha + \beta) \cdot \boldsymbol{x}$	$=$	$(\alpha \cdot \boldsymbol{x}) + (\beta \cdot \boldsymbol{x})$	$\forall \alpha, \beta \in S$ *and* $\boldsymbol{x} \in X$	($\cdot$ PSEUDO-DISTRIBUTES *over* +)	

The set X is called the ***underlying set****. The elements of X are called* ***vectors****. The elements of $\mathbb{F}$ are called* ***scalars****. A linear space is also called a* ***vector space****. If $\mathbb{F} \triangleq \mathbb{R}$, then $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ is a* ***real linear space****. If $\mathbb{F} \triangleq \mathbb{C}$, then $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ is a* ***complex linear space****.*

Definition I.2. [3]

DEF *A function* $\mathbf{A}$ *in* $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *is an* ***operator*** *in* $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *if* $\boldsymbol{X}$ *and* $\boldsymbol{Y}$ *are both* LINEAR SPACES *(Definition I.1 page 219).*

Two operators $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ are **equal** if $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}$ for all $\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}$. The inverse relation of an operator $\mathbf{A}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ always exists as a *relation* in $2^{\boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{Y}}$, but may not always be a *function* (may not always be an operator) in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$.

The operator $\mathbf{I} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ is the *identity* operator if $\mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{I}$ for all $\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}$.

Definition I.3. [4] *Let* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *be the set of all operators with from a* LINEAR SPACE $\boldsymbol{X}$ *to* $\boldsymbol{X}$*. Let* $\mathbf{I}$ *be an operator in* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$*. Let* $①(\boldsymbol{X})$ *be the* IDENTITY ELEMENT *in* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$*.*

DEF $\mathbf{I}$ *is the* ***identity operator*** *in* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *if* $\quad \mathbf{I} = ①(\boldsymbol{X})$.

[3] Heil (2011) page 42
[4] Michel and Hergert (1993) page 411

I.1.2 Linear operators

Definition I.4. [5] *Let* $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}))$ *and* $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq (Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}))$ *be linear spaces.*

DEF

An operator $\mathbf{L} \in \boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ ***is linear*** *if*

$$\begin{array}{llcll} 1. & \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}) & = & \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}+\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} & \forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y}\in\boldsymbol{X} \quad (\text{ADDITIVE}) \quad \textit{and} \\ 2. & \mathbf{L}(\alpha\boldsymbol{x}) & = & \alpha\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} & \forall \boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X},\ \forall\alpha\in\mathbb{F} \quad (\text{HOMOGENEOUS}). \end{array}$$

The set of all linear operators from $\boldsymbol{X}$ *to* $\boldsymbol{Y}$ *is denoted* $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ *such that*

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}) \triangleq \{\mathbf{L} \in \boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}} | \mathbf{L} \text{ is linear}\}.$$

Theorem I.1. [6] *Let* $\mathbf{L}$ *be an operator from a linear space* $\boldsymbol{X}$ *to a linear space* $\boldsymbol{Y}$*, both over a field* $\mathbb{F}$.

THM

$$\{\mathbf{L} \text{ is LINEAR}\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{llcll} 1. & \mathbf{L}\mathbb{0} & = & \mathbb{0} & & \textit{and} \\ 2. & \mathbf{L}(-\boldsymbol{x}) & = & -(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}) & \forall\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X} & \textit{and} \\ 3. & \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}) & = & \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}-\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} & \forall\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y}\in\boldsymbol{X} & \textit{and} \\ 4. & \mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) & = & \sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\left(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) & \boldsymbol{x}_n\in\boldsymbol{X}, \alpha_n\in\mathbb{F} & \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{L}\mathbb{0} = \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}\mathbb{0} &= \mathbf{L}(0\cdot\mathbb{0}) && \text{by additive identity property} \\ &= 0\cdot(\mathbf{L}\mathbb{0}) && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \mathbf{L} \quad \text{(Definition I.4 page 221)} \\ &= \mathbb{0} && \text{by } \textit{additive identity} \text{ property} \end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{L}(-\boldsymbol{x}) = -(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x})$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}(-\boldsymbol{x}) &= \mathbf{L}(-1\cdot\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by } \textit{additive inverse} \text{ property} \\ &= -1\cdot(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \mathbf{L} \quad \text{(Definition I.4 page 221)} \\ &= -(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by } \textit{additive inverse} \text{ property} \end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}) = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}-\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}) &= \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}+(-\boldsymbol{y})) && \text{by } \textit{additive inverse} \text{ property} \\ &= \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x})+\mathbf{L}(-\boldsymbol{y}) && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ property of } \mathbf{L} \quad \text{(Definition I.4 page 221)} \\ &= \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}-\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} && \text{by item (2)} \end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) = \sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\left(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_n\right)$:

   (a) Proof for $N=1$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) &= \mathbf{L}\left(\alpha_1\boldsymbol{x}_1\right) && \text{by } N=1 \text{ hypothesis} \\ &= \alpha_1\left(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_1\right) && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \mathbf{L} \quad \text{(Definition I.4 page 221)} \end{aligned}$$

[5] Kubrusly (2001) page 55, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 224, Hilbert et al. (1927) page 6, Stone (1932) page 33

[6] Berberian (1961) page 79 ⟨Theorem IV.1.1⟩

(b) Proof that N case $\implies$ $N+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N+1}\alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right) &= \mathbf{L}\left(\alpha_{N+1}\boldsymbol{x}_{N+1} + \sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right)\\
&= \mathbf{L}(\alpha_{N+1}\boldsymbol{x}_{N+1}) + \mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right) && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ property of } \mathbf{L} \quad \text{(Definition I.4 page 221)}\\
&= \alpha_{N+1}\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}_{N+1}) + \sum_{n=1}^{N}\mathbf{L}(\alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n) && \text{by left } N+1 \text{ hypothesis}\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N+1}\mathbf{L}(\alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem I.2. [7] *Let $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the set of all linear operators from a linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$ to a linear space $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$.*

THM			
$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	*is a linear space*		*(space of linear transforms)*
$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$	*is a linear subspace of $\boldsymbol{X}$*	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$	
$\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$	*is a linear subspace of $\boldsymbol{Y}$*	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$	

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ is a linear subspace of $\boldsymbol{X}$:
   (a) $\mathbb{0}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})\neq\emptyset$
   (b) $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) \triangleq \{\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X} | \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbb{0}\} \subseteq \boldsymbol{X}$
   (c) $\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \mathbb{0}=\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y})=\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{y}+\boldsymbol{x}) \implies \boldsymbol{y}+\boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$
   (d) $\alpha\in\mathbb{F},\ \boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X} \implies \mathbb{0}=\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} \implies \mathbb{0}=\alpha\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} \implies \mathbb{0}=\mathbf{L}(\alpha\boldsymbol{x}) \implies \alpha\boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$
2. Proof that $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$ is a linear subspace of $\boldsymbol{Y}$:
   (a) $\mathbb{0}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})\neq\emptyset$
   (b) $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) \triangleq \{\boldsymbol{y}\in\boldsymbol{Y} | \exists\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X}$ such that $\boldsymbol{y}=\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\} \subseteq \boldsymbol{Y}$
   (c) $\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \exists\boldsymbol{v}\in\boldsymbol{X}$ such that $\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{v}=\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}=\boldsymbol{y}+\boldsymbol{x} \implies \boldsymbol{y}+\boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$
   (d) $\alpha\in\mathbb{F},\ \boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \exists\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X}$ such that $\boldsymbol{y}=\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} \implies \alpha\boldsymbol{y}=\alpha\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbf{L}(\alpha\boldsymbol{x}) \implies \alpha\boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$

✏

Example I.1. [8] Let $C([a:b],\mathbb{R})$ be the set of all *continuous* functions from the closed real interval $[a:b]$ to $\mathbb{R}$.

EX
$C([a:b],\mathbb{R})$ is a linear space.

Theorem I.3. [9] *Let $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the set of linear operators from a linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$ to a linear space $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of a linear operator $\mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$.*

THM		
$\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}$	$\iff$	$\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$
$\mathbf{L}$ *is* INJECTIVE	$\iff$	$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})=\{\mathbb{0}\}$

[7] Michel and Herget (1993) pages 98–104, Berberian (1961) pages 80–85 ⟨Theorem IV.1.4 and Theorem IV.3.1⟩
[8] Eidelman et al. (2004) page 3
[9] Berberian (1961) page 88 ⟨Theorem IV.1.4⟩

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{L}x = \mathbf{L}y \implies x - y \in \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L}(x-y) &= \mathbf{L}x - \mathbf{L}y && \text{by Theorem I.1 page 221}\\
&= \mathbb{0} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&\implies \quad x - y \in \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{null space}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{L}x = \mathbf{L}y \impliedby x - y \in \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L}y &= \mathbf{L}y + \mathbb{0} && \text{by definition of linear space (Definition I.1 page 219)}\\
&= \mathbf{L}y + \mathbf{L}(x-y) && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \mathbf{L}y + (\mathbf{L}x - \mathbf{L}y) && \text{by Theorem I.1 page 221}\\
&= (\mathbf{L}y - \mathbf{L}y) + \mathbf{L}x && \text{by \textit{associative} and \textit{commutative} properties (Definition I.1 page 219)}\\
&= \mathbf{L}x
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\mathbf{L}$ is *injective* $\iff \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) = \{\mathbb{0}\}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L} \text{ is \textit{injective}} &\iff \{(\mathbf{L}x = \mathbf{L}y \iff x = y) \quad \forall x, y \in X\}\\
&\iff \left\{\left[\mathbf{L}x - \mathbf{L}y = \mathbb{0} \iff (x-y) = \mathbb{0}\right] \quad \forall x, y \in X\right\}\\
&\iff \left\{\left[\mathbf{L}(x-y) = \mathbb{0} \iff (x-y) = \mathbb{0}\right] \quad \forall x, y \in X\right\}\\
&\iff \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) = \{\mathbb{0}\}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem I.4. [10] *Let W, X, Y, and Z be linear spaces over a field $\mathbb{F}$.*

THM 1.	$\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{MN})$	$=$	$(\mathbf{LM})\mathbf{N}$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(Z,W), \mathbf{M}\in\mathcal{L}(Y,Z), \mathbf{N}\in\mathcal{L}(X,Y)$	(ASSOCIATIVE)
2.	$\mathbf{L}\left(\mathbf{M} \dotplus \mathbf{N}\right)$	$=$	$(\mathbf{LM}) \dotplus (\mathbf{LN})$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(Y,Z), \mathbf{M}\in\mathcal{L}(X,Y), \mathbf{N}\in\mathcal{L}(X,Y)$	(LEFT DISTRIBUTIVE)
3.	$\left(\mathbf{L} \dotplus \mathbf{M}\right)\mathbf{N}$	$=$	$(\mathbf{LN}) \dotplus (\mathbf{MN})$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(Y,Z), \mathbf{M}\in\mathcal{L}(Y,Z), \mathbf{N}\in\mathcal{L}(X,Y)$	(RIGHT DISTRIBUTIVE)
4.	$\alpha(\mathbf{LM})$	$=$	$(\alpha\mathbf{L})\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{L}(\alpha\mathbf{M})$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(Y,Z), \mathbf{M}\in\mathcal{L}(X,Y), \alpha\in\mathbb{F}$	(HOMOGENEOUS)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{MN}) = (\mathbf{LM})\mathbf{N}$: Follows directly from property of *associative* operators.

2. Proof that $\mathbf{L}\left(\mathbf{M} \dotplus \mathbf{N}\right) = (\mathbf{LM}) \dotplus (\mathbf{LN})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\mathbf{L}\left(\mathbf{M} \dotplus \mathbf{N}\right)\right]x &= \mathbf{L}\left[\left(\mathbf{M} \dotplus \mathbf{N}\right)x\right]\\
&= \mathbf{L}\left[(\mathbf{M}x) \dotplus (\mathbf{N}x)\right]\\
&= [\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{M}x)] \dotplus [\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{N}x)] && \text{by \textit{additive} property Definition I.4 page 221}\\
&= [(\mathbf{LM})x] \dotplus [(\mathbf{LN})x]
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\left(\mathbf{L} \dotplus \mathbf{M}\right)\mathbf{N} = (\mathbf{LN}) \dotplus (\mathbf{MN})$: Follows directly from property of *associative* operators.

4. Proof that $\alpha(\mathbf{LM}) = (\alpha\mathbf{L})\mathbf{M}$: Follows directly from *associative* property of linear operators.

5. Proof that $\alpha(\mathbf{LM}) = \mathbf{L}(\alpha\mathbf{M})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
[\alpha(\mathbf{LM})]x &= \alpha[(\mathbf{LM})x]\\
&= \mathbf{L}[\alpha(\mathbf{M}x)] && \text{by \textit{homogeneous} property Definition I.4 page 221}\\
&= \mathbf{L}[(\alpha\mathbf{M})x]\\
&= [\mathbf{L}(\alpha\mathbf{M})]x
\end{aligned}$$

[10] Berberian (1961) page 88 ⟨Theorem IV.5.1⟩

Theorem I.5 (Fundamental theorem of linear equations). Michel and Herget (1993) page 99 *Let $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be the set of all operators from a linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$ to a linear space $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator* $\mathbf{L}$ *in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$ the* IMAGE SET *of* $\mathbf{L}$ *in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ (Definition ?? page ??).*

THM

$$\dim \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) + \dim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) = \dim \boldsymbol{X} \qquad \forall \mathbf{L} \in \boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$$

PROOF: Let $\{\psi_k | k = 1, 2, \ldots, p\}$ be a basis for $\boldsymbol{X}$ constructed such that $\{\psi_{p-n+1}, \psi_{p-n+2}, \ldots, \psi_p\}$ is a basis for $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$.

Let $p \triangleq \dim \boldsymbol{X}$.
Let $n \triangleq \dim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\dim \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) &= \dim \{\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X} \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\} \\
&= \dim \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_p) \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \mathbf{L} \sum_{k=1}^{p} \alpha_k \psi_k \right\} \\
&= \dim \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_p) \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \sum_{k=1}^{p} \alpha_k \mathbf{L} \psi_k \right\} \\
&= \dim \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_p) \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \sum_{k=1}^{p-n} \alpha_k \mathbf{L} \psi_k + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \alpha_k \mathbf{L} \psi_k \right\} \\
&= \dim \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_p) \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \sum_{k=1}^{p-n} \alpha_k \mathbf{L} \psi_k + \mathbb{0} \right\} \\
&= p - n \\
&= \dim \boldsymbol{X} - \dim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})
\end{aligned}$$

Note: This “proof” may be missing some necessary detail.

I.2 Operators on Normed linear spaces

I.2.1 Operator norm

Definition I.5. [11] *Let $\boldsymbol{V} = (X, \mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \cdot)$ be a linear space and $\mathbb{F}$ be a field with absolute value function $|\cdot| \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{F}}$.*

DEF

*A **norm** is any functional $\|\cdot\|$ in $\mathbb{R}^X$ that satisfies*

1.	$\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \geq 0$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	(STRICTLY POSITIVE)	*and*
2.	$\|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 0 \iff \boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	(NONDEGENERATE)	*and*
3.	$\|a\boldsymbol{x}\| = \lvert a \rvert \, \|\boldsymbol{x}\|$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X, a \in \mathbb{C}$	(HOMOGENEOUS)	*and*
4.	$\|\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}\| \leq \|\boldsymbol{x}\| + \|\boldsymbol{y}\|$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X$	(SUBADDITIVE/*triangle inquality*).	

*A **normed linear space** is the pair $(\boldsymbol{V}, \|\cdot\|)$.*

[11] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) pages 217–218, Banach (1932a) page 53, Banach (1932b) page 33, Banach (1922) page 135

Definition I.6. [12] *Let $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of linear operators over normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$.* [13]

DEF

*The **operator norm** $|||\cdot|||$ is defined as*

$$|||\mathbf{A}||| \triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} \qquad \forall \mathbf{A} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$$

*The pair $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ is the **normed space of linear operators** on $(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

Proposition I.1 (next) shows that the functional defined in Definition I.6 (previous) is a *norm* (Definition I.5 page 224).

Proposition I.1. [14] *Let $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ be the normed space of linear operators over the normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\right)$ and $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq \left(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\right)$.*

PRP

*The functional $|||\cdot|||$ is a **norm** on $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$. In particular,*

1.	$\|\|\|\mathbf{A}\|\|\| \ge 0$	$\forall \mathbf{A}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(NON-NEGATIVE)	and
2.	$\|\|\|\mathbf{A}\|\|\| = 0 \iff \mathbf{A} \mathrel{\dot{=}} \mathbb{0}$	$\forall \mathbf{A}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(NONDEGENERATE)	and
3.	$\|\|\|\alpha\mathbf{A}\|\|\| = \|\alpha\|\;\|\|\|\mathbf{A}\|\|\|$	$\forall \mathbf{A}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), \alpha\in\mathbb{F}$	(HOMOGENEOUS)	and
4.	$\|\|\|\mathbf{A} \mathring{+} \mathbf{B}\|\|\| \le \|\|\|\mathbf{A}\|\|\| + \|\|\|\mathbf{B}\|\|\|$	$\forall \mathbf{A}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(SUBADDITIVE).	

*Moreover, $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ is a **normed linear space**.*

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $|||\mathbf{A}||| > 0$ for $\mathbf{A} \ne \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{A}||| &\triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)}\\
&> 0
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $|||\mathbf{A}||| = 0$ for $\mathbf{A} \mathrel{\dot{=}} \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{A}||| &\triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)}\\
&= \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbb{0}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\}\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $|||\alpha\mathbf{A}||| = |\alpha|\;|||\mathbf{A}|||$:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\alpha\mathbf{A}||| &\triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\alpha\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)}\\
&= \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{|\alpha|\;\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)}\\
&= |\alpha| \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of sup}\\
&= |\alpha|\;\;|||\mathbf{A}||| && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)}
\end{aligned}$$

---

[12] Rudin (1991) page 92, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 225

[13] The operator norm notation $|||\cdot|||$ is introduced (as a Matrix norm) in Horn and Johnson (1990), page 290

[14] Rudin (1991) page 93

4. Proof that $\lVert\lVert\mathbf{A} \mathring{+} \mathbf{B}\rVert\rVert \le \lVert\lVert\mathbf{A}\rVert\rVert + \lVert\lVert\mathbf{B}\rVert\rVert$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lVert\lVert\mathbf{A} \mathring{+} \mathbf{B}\rVert\rVert &\triangleq \sup_{x\in X}\left\{\left\lVert(\mathbf{A} \mathring{+} \mathbf{B})x\right\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\} && \text{by definition of } \lVert\lVert\cdot\rVert\rVert \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)}\\
&= \sup_{x\in X}\left\{\lVert\mathbf{A}x + \mathbf{B}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\}\\
&\le \sup_{x\in X}\left\{\lVert\mathbf{A}x\rVert + \lVert\mathbf{B}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\} && \text{by definition of } \lVert\lVert\cdot\rVert\rVert \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)}\\
&\le \sup_{x\in X}\left\{\lVert\mathbf{A}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\} + \sup_{x\in X}\left\{\lVert\mathbf{B}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\}\\
&\triangleq \lVert\lVert\mathbf{A}\rVert\rVert + \lVert\lVert\mathbf{B}\rVert\rVert && \text{by definition of } \lVert\lVert\cdot\rVert\rVert \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Lemma I.1. *Let* $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), \lVert\lVert\cdot\rVert\rVert)$ *be the normed space of linear operators over normed linear spaces* $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \lVert\cdot\rVert\right)$ *and* $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq \left(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \lVert\cdot\rVert\right)$.

LEM
$$\lVert\lVert\mathbf{L}\rVert\rVert = \sup_{x}\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert = 1\right\} \qquad \forall x \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$$

✎PROOF: [15]

1. Proof that $\sup_x\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\} \ge \sup_x\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert = 1\right\}$:

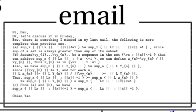
$$\sup_x\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\} \ge \sup_x\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert = 1\right\} \qquad \text{because } A \subseteq B \implies \sup A \le \sup B$$

2. Let the subset $Y \subsetneq X$ be defined as

$$Y \triangleq \left\{ y \in X \,\middle|\, \begin{array}{ll} 1. & \lVert\mathbf{L}y\rVert = \sup_{x\in X}\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\} \text{ and}\\ 2. & 0 < \lVert y\rVert \le 1 \end{array} \right\}$$

3. Proof that $\sup_x\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\} \le \sup_x\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert = 1\right\}$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sup_{x\in X}\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert \le 1\right\} &= \lVert\mathbf{L}y\rVert && \text{by definition of set } Y\\
&= \frac{\lVert y\rVert}{\lVert y\rVert}\lVert\mathbf{L}y\rVert\\
&= \lVert y\rVert\left\lVert\frac{1}{\lVert y\rVert}\mathbf{L}y\right\rVert && \text{by homogeneous property (page 224)}\\
&= \lVert y\rVert\left\lVert\mathbf{L}\frac{y}{\lVert y\rVert}\right\rVert && \text{by homogeneous property (page 221)}\\
&\le \lVert y\rVert\sup_{y\in Y}\left\{\left\lVert\mathbf{L}\frac{y}{\lVert y\rVert}\right\rVert\right\} && \text{by definition of supremum}\\
&= \lVert y\rVert\sup_{y\in Y}\left\{\left\lVert\mathbf{L}\frac{y}{\lVert y\rVert}\right\rVert \,\middle|\, \left\lVert\frac{y}{\lVert y\rVert}\right\rVert = 1\right\} && \text{because } \left\lVert\frac{y}{\lVert y\rVert}\right\rVert = 1 \text{ for all } y \in Y\\
&\le \sup_{y\in Y}\left\{\left\lVert\mathbf{L}\frac{y}{\lVert y\rVert}\right\rVert \,\middle|\, \left\lVert\frac{y}{\lVert y\rVert}\right\rVert = 1\right\} && \text{because } 0 < \lVert y\rVert \le 1\\
&\le \sup_{x\in X}\left\{\lVert\mathbf{L}x\rVert \mid \lVert x\rVert = 1\right\} && \text{because } \frac{y}{\lVert y\rVert} \in X \quad \forall y \in Y
\end{aligned}
$$

[15] email  Many many thanks to former NCTU Ph.D. student Chien Yao (Chinese: 姚建; PinYin: Yáo Jiàn) for his brilliant help with this proof. (If you are viewing this text as a pdf file, zoom in on the figure to the left to see text from Chien Yao's 2007 April 16 email.)

4. By (1) and (3),

$$\sup_{x \in X} \{ \|\mathbf{L}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1 \} = \sup_{x \in X} \{ \|\mathbf{L}x\| \mid \|x\| = 1 \}$$

✏

Proposition I.2. [16] *Let* $\mathbf{I}$ *be the identity operator in the normed space of linear operators* $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X}), |||\cdot|||)$.

PRP: $|||\mathbf{I}||| = 1$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{I}||| &\triangleq \sup \{ \|\mathbf{I}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1 \} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition I.6 page 224)} \\
&= \sup \{ \|x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1 \} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{I} \text{ (Definition I.3 page 220)} \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem I.6. [17] *Let* $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ *be the normed space of linear operators over normed linear spaces* $\boldsymbol{X}$ *and* $\boldsymbol{Y}$.

THM:

$$\begin{array}{rcll}
\|\mathbf{L}x\| & \le & |||\mathbf{L}||| \;\; \|x\| & \forall \mathbf{L} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}),\ x \in \boldsymbol{X} \\
|||\mathbf{KL}||| & \le & |||\mathbf{K}||| \;\; |||\mathbf{L}||| & \forall \mathbf{K}, \mathbf{L} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})
\end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\|\mathbf{L}x\| \le |||\mathbf{L}||| \;\; \|x\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{L}x\| &= \frac{\|x\|}{\|x\|} \|\mathbf{L}x\| \\
&= \|x\| \left\| \frac{1}{\|x\|} \mathbf{L}x \right\| && \text{by property of norms} \\
&= \|x\| \left\| \mathbf{L} \frac{x}{\|x\|} \right\| && \text{by property of linear operators} \\
&\triangleq \|x\| \, \|\mathbf{L}y\| && \text{where } y \triangleq \frac{x}{\|x\|} \\
&\le \|x\| \sup_y \|\mathbf{L}y\| && \text{by definition of supremum} \\
&= \|x\| \sup_y \{ \|\mathbf{L}y\| \mid \|y\| = 1 \} && \text{because } \|y\| = \left\| \frac{x}{\|x\|} \right\| = \frac{\|x\|}{\|x\|} = 1 \\
&\triangleq \|x\| \, \|\mathbf{L}\| && \text{by definition of operator norm}
\end{aligned}$$

[16] Michel and Herget (1993) page 410

[17] Rudin (1991) page 103, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 225

2. Proof that $|||\mathbf{KL}||| \le |||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}|||$:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{KL}||| &\triangleq \sup_{x\in X}\{\|(\mathbf{KL})x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by Definition I.6 page 224 } (|||\cdot|||)\\
&= \sup_{x\in X}\{\|\mathbf{K}(\mathbf{L}x)\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\}\\
&\le \sup_{x\in X}\{|||\mathbf{K}|||\ \|\mathbf{L}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by 1.}\\
&\le \sup_{x\in X}\{|||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}|||\ \|x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by 1.}\\
&= \sup_{x\in X}\{|||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}|||\ 1 \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of sup}\\
&= |||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}||| && \text{by definition of sup}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

I.2.2 Bounded linear operators

Definition I.7. [18] *Let $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ be a normed space of linear operators.*

DEF

*An operator $\mathbf{B}$ is **bounded** if $|||\mathbf{B}||| < \infty$.*
*The quantity $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ is the set of all **bounded linear operators** on $(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ such that*

$$\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}) \triangleq \{\mathbf{L} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}) \mid |||\mathbf{L}||| < \infty\}.$$

Theorem I.7. [19] *Let $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ be the set of linear operators over normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|)$ and $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq (Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|)$.*

THM

The following conditions are all EQUIVALENT:

1. $\mathbf{L}$ *is continuous at* A SINGLE POINT $x_0 \in X$ $\quad \forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ $\iff$
2. $\mathbf{L}$ *is* CONTINUOUS *(at every point $x \in X$)* $\quad \forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ $\iff$
3. $|||\mathbf{L}||| < \infty$ *($\mathbf{L}$ is* BOUNDED*)* $\quad \forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ $\iff$
4. $\exists M \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\|\mathbf{L}x\| \le M\,\|x\|$ $\quad \forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), x\in X$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $1 \implies 2$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\epsilon &> \left\|\mathbf{L}x - \mathbf{L}x_0\right\| && \text{by hypothesis 1}\\
&= \left\|\mathbf{L}(x - x_0)\right\| && \text{by linearity (Definition I.4 page 221)}\\
&= \left\|\mathbf{L}(x + y - x_0 - y)\right\|\\
&= \left\|\mathbf{L}(x + y) - \mathbf{L}(x_0 + y)\right\| && \text{by linearity (Definition I.4 page 221)}\\
&\implies \mathbf{L} \text{ is continuous at point } x + y\\
&\implies \mathbf{L} \text{ is continuous at every point in } X && \text{(hypothesis 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $2 \implies 1$: obvious:

[18] Rudin (1991) pages 92–93
[19] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 227

3. Proof that $4 \implies 2$:[20]

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{L}x||| \le M\,\|x\| &\implies |||\mathbf{L}(x-y)||| \le M\,\|x-y\| && \text{by hypothesis 4}\\
&\implies |||\mathbf{L}x-\mathbf{L}y||| \le M\,\|x-y\| && \text{by linearity of } \mathbf{L} \text{ (Definition I.4 page 221)}\\
&\implies |||\mathbf{L}x-\mathbf{L}y||| \le \epsilon \text{ whenever } M\,\|x-y\| < \epsilon\\
&\implies |||\mathbf{L}x-\mathbf{L}y||| \le \epsilon \text{ whenever } \|x-y\| < \frac{\epsilon}{M} && \text{(hypothesis 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $3 \implies 4$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{L}x\| &\le \underbrace{|||\mathbf{L}|||}_{M}\ \|x\| && \text{by Theorem I.6 page 227}\\
&= M\ \|x\| && \text{where } M \triangleq |||\mathbf{L}||| < \infty \text{ (by hypothesis 1)}
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof that $1 \implies 3$:[21]

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{L}||| = \infty &\implies \{\|\mathbf{L}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} = \infty\\
&\implies \exists\,(x_n) \quad \text{such that} \quad \|x_n\| = 1 \text{ and } |||\mathbf{L}||| = \left\{\|\mathbf{L}x_n\| \mid \|x_n\| \le 1\right\} = \infty\\
&\implies \|x_n\| = 1 \text{ and } \infty = |||\mathbf{L}||| = \|\mathbf{L}x_n\|\\
&\implies \|x_n\| = 1 \text{ and } \|\mathbf{L}x_n\| \ge n\\
&\implies \frac{1}{n}\|x_n\| = \frac{1}{n} \text{ and } \frac{1}{n}\|\mathbf{L}x_n\| \ge 1\\
&\implies \left\|\frac{x_n}{n}\right\| = \frac{1}{n} \text{ and } \left\|\mathbf{L}\frac{x_n}{n}\right\| \ge 1\\
&\implies \lim_{n\to\infty}\left\|\frac{x_n}{n}\right\| = 0 \text{ and } \lim_{n\to\infty}\left\|\mathbf{L}\frac{x_n}{n}\right\| \ge 1\\
&\implies \mathbf{L} \text{ is not continuous at } 0
\end{aligned}$$

But by hypothesis, $\mathbf{L}$ *is* continuous. So the statement $|||\mathbf{L}||| = \infty$ must be *false* and thus $|||\mathbf{L}||| < \infty$ ($\mathbf{L}$ is *bounded*).

✎

I.2.3 Adjoints on normed linear spaces

Definition I.8. *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\boldsymbol{X}^*$ be the* TOPOLOGICAL DUAL SPACE *of $\boldsymbol{X}$.*

DEF: $\mathbf{B}^*$ *is the* ***adjoint*** *of an operator $\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ if*

$$\mathsf{f}(\mathbf{B}x) = \left[\mathbf{B}^*\mathsf{f}\right](x) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{X}^*,\ x \in \boldsymbol{X}$$

Theorem I.8. [22] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on* NORMED LINEAR SPACES *$\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$.*

THM:

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{A} \dot{+} \mathbf{B})^* &= \mathbf{A}^* \dot{+} \mathbf{B}^* && \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})\\
(\lambda\mathbf{A})^* &= \lambda\mathbf{A}^* && \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})\\
(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{B})^* &= \mathbf{B}^*\mathbf{A}^* && \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})
\end{aligned}$$

[20] Bollobás (1999), page 29
[21] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998), page 227
[22] Bollobás (1999), page 156

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\mathbf{A} \mathring{+} \mathbf{B}\right]^* \mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) &= \mathsf{f}\left(\left[\mathbf{A} \mathring{+} \mathbf{B}\right]\boldsymbol{x}\right) && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)}\\
&= \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of linear operators} && \text{(Definition I.4 page 221)}\\
&= \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}) + \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{linear functional}}\\
&= \mathbf{A}^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) + \mathbf{B}^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{adjoint}} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)}\\
&= \left[\mathbf{A}^* + \mathbf{B}^*\right]\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{linear functional}}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\lambda\mathbf{A}]^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) &= \mathsf{f}([\lambda\mathbf{A}]\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{adjoint}} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)}\\
&= \lambda\mathsf{f}(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{linear functional}}\\
&= \left[\lambda\mathbf{A}^*\right]\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{adjoint}} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{A}\mathbf{B}]^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) &= \mathsf{f}([\mathbf{A}\mathbf{B}]\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{adjoint}} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)}\\
&= \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{A}[\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}]) && \text{by definition of \textit{linear operators}} && \text{(Definition I.4 page 221)}\\
&= \left[\mathbf{A}^*\mathsf{f}\right](\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{adjoint}} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)}\\
&= \mathbf{B}^*\left[\mathbf{A}^*\mathsf{f}\right](\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{adjoint}} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)}\\
&= \left[\mathbf{B}^*\mathbf{A}^*\right]\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of \textit{adjoint}} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)}
\end{aligned}$$

⇨

Theorem I.9. [23] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{B}^*$ be the adjoint of an operator $\mathbf{B}$.*

THM

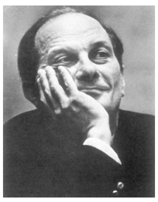
$$|||\mathbf{B}||| = \left|\left|\left|\mathbf{B}^*\right|\right|\right| \qquad \forall \mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{B}||| &\triangleq \sup\left\{\|\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\right\} && \text{by Definition I.6 page 224}\\
&\stackrel{?}{=} \sup\left\{|\mathsf{g}(\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x};\boldsymbol{y}^*)| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1,\ \left\|\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \le 1\right\}\\
&= \sup\left\{|\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x};\mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y}^*)| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1,\ \left\|\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \le 1\right\}\\
&\triangleq \sup\left\{\left\|\mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1,\ \left\|\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \le 1\right\}\\
&= \sup\left\{\left\|\mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \mid \left\|\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \le 1\right\}\\
&\triangleq \left|\left|\left|\mathbf{B}^*\right|\right|\right| && \text{by Definition I.6 page 224}
\end{aligned}$$

⇨

I.2.4 More properties



❝*Beginning with the third year of studies, most of my mathematical work was really started in conversations with Mazur and Banach. And according to Banach some of my own contributions were characterized by a certain "strangeness" in the formulation of problems and in the outline of possible proofs. As he told me once some years later, he was surprised how often these "strange" approaches really worked.*❞

Stanislaus M. Ulam (1909–1984), Polish mathematician [24]

[23] Rudin (1991) page 98

Theorem I.10 (Mazur-Ulam theorem). [25] *Let $\phi \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be a function on normed linear spaces $(\boldsymbol{X}, \|\cdot\|_{\boldsymbol{X}})$ and $(\boldsymbol{Y}, \|\cdot\|_{\boldsymbol{Y}})$. Let $\mathbf{I} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X})$ be the identity operator on $(\boldsymbol{X}, \|\cdot\|_{\boldsymbol{X}})$.*

T H M

$$\left.\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \underbrace{\phi^{-1}\phi = \phi\phi^{-1} = \mathbf{I}}_{\text{bijective}} \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & \underbrace{\|\phi\boldsymbol{x} - \phi\boldsymbol{y}\|_{\boldsymbol{Y}} = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\|_{\boldsymbol{X}} \quad \forall x,y \in \boldsymbol{X}}_{\text{isometric}} \end{array}\right\} \implies \underbrace{\phi([1-\lambda]\boldsymbol{x} + \lambda\boldsymbol{y}) = [1-\lambda]\phi\boldsymbol{x} + \lambda\phi\boldsymbol{y} \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{R}}_{\text{affine}}$$

✎PROOF: Proof not yet complete.

1. Let ψ be the *reflection* of z in $\boldsymbol{X}$ such that $\psi\boldsymbol{x} = 2z - \boldsymbol{x}$
   (a) $\|\psi\boldsymbol{x} - z\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - z\|$
2. Let $\lambda \triangleq \sup_{g} \{\|gz - z\|\}$
3. Proof that $g \in W \implies g^{-1} \in W$:

   Let $\hat{x} \triangleq g^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\hat{y} \triangleq g^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|g^{-1}\boldsymbol{x} - g^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}\right\| &= \|\hat{x} - \hat{y}\| && \text{by definition of } \hat{x} \text{ and } \hat{y}\\
&= \|g\hat{x} - g\hat{y}\| && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \left\|gg^{-1}\boldsymbol{x} - gg^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}\right\| && \text{by definition of } \hat{x} \text{ and } \hat{y}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| && \text{by definition of } g^{-1}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $gz = z$:

$$\begin{aligned}
2\lambda &= 2\sup\{\|gz - z\|\} && \text{by definition of } \lambda \text{ item (2)}\\
&\le 2\|gz - z\| && \text{by definition of sup}\\
&= \|2z - 2gz\| \\
&= \|\psi gz - gz\| && \text{by definition of } \psi \text{ item (1)}\\
&= \left\|g^{-1}\psi gz - g^{-1}gz\right\| && \text{by item (3)}\\
&= \left\|g^{-1}\psi gz - z\right\| && \text{by definition of } g^{-1}\\
&= \left\|\psi g^{-1}\psi gz - z\right\| \\
&= \left\|g^{*}z - z\right\| \\
&\le \lambda && \text{by definition of } \lambda \text{ item (2)}\\
&\implies 2\lambda \le \lambda \\
&\implies \lambda = 0 \\
&\implies gz = z
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof that $\phi\left(\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{x} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{y}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\phi\boldsymbol{x} + \frac{1}{2}\phi\boldsymbol{y}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi\left(\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{x} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{y}\right) &= \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\phi\boldsymbol{x} + \frac{1}{2}\phi\boldsymbol{y}
\end{aligned}$$

[24] quote: Ulam (1991), page 33
image: http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/Biographies/Ulam.html

[25] Oikhberg and Rosenthal (2007), page 598, Väisälä (2003), page 634, Giles (2000), page 11, Dunford and Schwartz (1957), page 91, Mazur and Ulam (1932)

6. Proof that $\phi([1-\lambda]\boldsymbol{x}+\lambda\boldsymbol{y}) = [1-\lambda]\phi\boldsymbol{x}+\lambda\phi\boldsymbol{y}$:

$$\begin{aligned}\phi([1-\lambda]\boldsymbol{x}+\lambda\boldsymbol{y}) &= \\ &= [1-\lambda]\phi\boldsymbol{x}+\lambda\phi\boldsymbol{y}\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem I.11 (Neumann Expansion Theorem). [26] *Let* $\mathbf{A} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *be an operator on a linear space* $\boldsymbol{X}$. *Let* $\mathbf{A}^0 \triangleq \mathbf{I}$.

THM

$$\left.\begin{array}{ll}1. & \mathbf{A} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X}) \quad (\mathbf{A}\text{ is bounded})\\ 2. & |||\mathbf{A}||| < 1\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{llll}1. & (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{A})^{-1} & & \text{exists}\\ 2. & |||(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{A})^{-1}||| & \le & \dfrac{1}{1-|||\mathbf{A}|||}\\ 3. & (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{A})^{-1} & = & \displaystyle\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\mathbf{A}^n\\ & \multicolumn{3}{l}{\text{with uniform convergence}}\end{array}\right.$$

I.3 Operators on Inner product spaces

I.3.1 General Results

Definition I.9. [27] *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\right)$ *be a linear space.*

DEF

A function $\langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle \in \mathbb{F}^{X\times X}$ *is an* ***inner product*** *on* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *if*

1.	$\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle \ge 0$	$\forall x \in X$	*(non-negative)*	*and*
2.	$\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle = 0 \iff \boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}$	$\forall x \in X$	*(nondegenerate)*	*and*
3.	$\langle \alpha\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle = \alpha\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle$	$\forall x,y \in X,\ \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{C}$	*(homogeneous)*	*and*
4.	$\langle \boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{u}\rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{u}\rangle + \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{u}\rangle$	$\forall x,y,u \in X$	*(additive)*	*and*
5.	$\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle^*$	$\forall x,y \in X$	*(conjugate symmetric).*	

An inner product is also called a ***scalar product****.*
An ***inner product space*** *is the pair* $(\boldsymbol{\Omega}, \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle)$.

Theorem I.12. [28] *Let* $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X})$ *be* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on an inner product space* $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle\right)$.

THM

$$\begin{array}{lllcll}\langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle = 0 & \forall x \in X & \iff & \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0} & \forall x \in X\\ \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle = \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle & \forall x \in X & \iff & \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B} & \end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

[26] Michel and Herget (1993) page 415
[27] Haaser and Sullivan (1991), page 277, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 276, Peano (1888b) page 72
[28] Rudin (1991) page 310 ⟨Theorem 12.7, Corollary⟩

1. Proof that $\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle = 0 \implies \mathbf{B}x = \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \langle \mathbf{B}(x+\mathbf{B}x) \mid (x+\mathbf{B}x)\rangle + i\,\langle \mathbf{B}(x+i\mathbf{B}x) \mid (x+i\mathbf{B}x)\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \left\{\left\langle \mathbf{B}x+\mathbf{B}^2x) \mid x+\mathbf{B}x\right\rangle\right\} + i\left\{\left\langle \mathbf{B}x+i\mathbf{B}^2x) \mid x+i\mathbf{B}x\right\rangle\right\} && \text{by Definition I.4 page 221}\\
&= \left\{\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle + \langle \mathbf{B}x \mid \mathbf{B}x\rangle + \left\langle \mathbf{B}^2x \mid x\right\rangle + \left\langle \mathbf{B}^2x \mid \mathbf{B}x\right\rangle\right\} && \text{by Definition I.9 page 232}\\
&\quad + i\left\{\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle - i\,\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid \mathbf{B}x\rangle + i\left\langle \mathbf{B}^2x \mid x\right\rangle - i^2\left\langle \mathbf{B}^2x \mid \mathbf{B}x\right\rangle\right\}\\
&= \left\{0 + \langle \mathbf{B}x \mid \mathbf{B}x\rangle + \left\langle \mathbf{B}^2x \mid x\right\rangle + 0\right\} + i\left\{0 - i\,\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid \mathbf{B}x\rangle + i\left\langle \mathbf{B}^2x \mid x\right\rangle - i^2 0\right\} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \left\{\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid \mathbf{B}x\rangle + \left\langle \mathbf{B}^2x \mid x\right\rangle\right\} + \left\{\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid \mathbf{B}x\rangle - \left\langle \mathbf{B}^2x \mid x\right\rangle\right\}\\
&= 2\,\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid \mathbf{B}x\rangle\\
&= 2\,\|\mathbf{B}x\|^2\\
&\implies \mathbf{B}x = \mathbb{0} && \text{by Definition I.5 page 224}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle = 0 \impliedby \mathbf{B}x = \mathbb{0}$: by property of inner products.

3. Proof that $\langle \mathbf{A}x \mid x\rangle = \langle \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle \implies \mathbf{A} \doteq \mathbf{B}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \langle \mathbf{A}x \mid x\rangle - \langle \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}x - \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle && \text{by } \textit{additivity} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \mid \nabla\rangle \text{ (Definition I.9 page 232)}\\
&= \langle (\mathbf{A}-\mathbf{B})x \mid x\rangle && \text{by definition of operator addition}\\
\implies (\mathbf{A}-\mathbf{B})x &= \mathbb{0} && \text{by item 1}\\
\implies \mathbf{A} &= \mathbf{B} && \text{by definition of operator subtraction}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\langle \mathbf{A}x \mid x\rangle = \langle \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle \impliedby \mathbf{A} \doteq \mathbf{B}$:

$$\langle \mathbf{A}x \mid x\rangle = \langle \mathbf{B}x \mid x\rangle \qquad \text{by } \mathbf{A} \doteq \mathbf{B} \text{ hypothesis}$$

✏

I.3.2 Operator adjoint

A fundamental concept of operators on inner product spaces is the *operator adjoint* (Proposition I.3 page 233). The adjoint of an operator is a kind of generalization of the conjugate of a complex number in that

- Both are *star-algebras* (Theorem I.13 page 233).
- Both support decomposition into "real" and "imaginary" parts (Theorem **??** page **??**).

Structurally, the operator adjoint provides a convenient symmetric relationship between the *range space* and *null space* of an operator (Theorem I.14 page 234).

Proposition I.3. [29] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *(Definition I.7 page 227) on a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H}$.

PRP: *An operator $\mathbf{B}^*$ is the **adjoint** of $\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ if*
$$\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid y\rangle = \langle x \mid \mathbf{B}^* y\rangle \qquad \forall x,y \in \boldsymbol{H}.$$

✎PROOF:

[29] Michel and Herget (1993) page 220, Rudin (1991) page 311, Giles (2000), page 182, von Neumann (1929) page 49, Stone (1932) page 41

1. For fixed y, $f(x) \triangleq \langle x \mid y \rangle$ is a *functional* in $\mathbb{F}^X$.
2. $\mathbf{B}^*$ is the *adjoint* of $\mathbf{B}$ because

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{B}x \mid y \rangle &\triangleq f(\mathbf{B}x) \\
&\triangleq \mathbf{B}^* f(x) && \text{by definition of \textit{operator adjoint}} && \text{(Definition I.8 page 229)} \\
&= \langle x \mid \mathbf{B}^* y \rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

⇨

Example I.2.

EX

In matrix algebra ("linear algebra")

- The inner product operation $\langle x \mid y \rangle$ is represented by $y^H x$.
- The linear operator is represented as a matrix A.
- The operation of A on a vector x is represented as Ax.
- The adjoint of matrix A is the Hermitian matrix A^H.

✎PROOF:

$$\langle Ax \mid y \rangle \triangleq y^H Ax = [(Ax)^H y]^H = [x^H A^H y]^H = (A^H y)^H x \triangleq \left\langle x \mid A^H y \right\rangle$$

⇨

Structures that satisfy the four conditions of the next theorem are known as **-algebras* ("*star-algebras*" (Definition ?? page ??). Other structures which are *-algebras include the *field of complex numbers* $\mathbb{C}$ and any *ring of complex square $n \times n$ matrices*.[30]

Theorem I.13 (operator star-algebra). [31] *Let H be a* HILBERT SPACE *with operators $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(H, H)$ and with adjoints $\mathbf{A}^*, \mathbf{B}^* \in \mathcal{B}(H, H)$. Let $\bar{\alpha}$ be the complex conjugate of some $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$.*

THM

The pair $(H, *)$ is a *-ALGEBRA (STAR-ALGEBRA). *In particular,*

1.	$(\mathbf{A} \stackrel{\circ}{+} \mathbf{B})^*$	$=$	$\mathbf{A}^* + \mathbf{B}^*$	$\forall \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in H$	(DISTRIBUTIVE)	*and*
2.	$(\alpha \mathbf{A})^*$	$=$	$\bar{\alpha} \mathbf{A}^*$	$\forall \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in H$	(CONJUGATE LINEAR)	*and*
3.	$(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{B})^*$	$=$	$\mathbf{B}^* \mathbf{A}^*$	$\forall \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in H$	(ANTIAUTOMORPHIC)	*and*
4.	$\mathbf{A}^{**}$	$=$	$\mathbf{A}$	$\forall \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in H$	(INVOLUTARY)	

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle x \mid (\mathbf{A} \stackrel{\circ}{+} \mathbf{B})^* y \right\rangle &= \left\langle (\mathbf{A} \stackrel{\circ}{+} \mathbf{B}) x \mid y \right\rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}x \mid y \rangle + \langle \mathbf{B}x \mid y \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)} \\
&= \langle x \mid \mathbf{A}^* y \rangle + \langle x \mid \mathbf{B}^* y \rangle && \text{by definition of operator addition} \\
&= \langle x \mid \mathbf{A}^* y + \mathbf{B}^* y \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)} \\
&= \langle x \mid (\mathbf{A}^* + \mathbf{B}^*) y \rangle && \text{by definition of operator addition}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle x \mid (\alpha \mathbf{A})^* y \rangle &= \langle (\alpha \mathbf{A}) x \mid y \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \langle \alpha (\mathbf{A}x) \mid y \rangle && \text{by definition of scalar multiplication} \\
&= \alpha \langle \mathbf{A}x \mid y \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)} \\
&= \alpha \langle x \mid \mathbf{A}^* y \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \langle x \mid \alpha^* \mathbf{A}^* y \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)}
\end{aligned}
$$

[30] Sakai (1998) page 1

[31] Halmos (1998), pages 39–40, Rudin (1991) page 311

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, (\mathbf{AB})^* \boldsymbol{y} \rangle &= \langle (\mathbf{AB})\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of operator multiplication} \\
&= \langle (\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \,|\, \mathbf{A}^* \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{B}^* \mathbf{A}^* \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^{**} \boldsymbol{y} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{A}^* \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^* \boldsymbol{x} \rangle^* && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)} \\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x} \rangle^* && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition I.9 page 232)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem I.14. [32] *Let $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be the set of all operators from a linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$ to a linear space $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$.*

THM
$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}) &= \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A}^*)^{\perp} \\
\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}^*) &= \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A})^{\perp}
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A}^*)^{\perp} &= \left\{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{u} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall u \in \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A}^*) \right\} \\
&= \left\{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^* \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H} \right\} \\
&= \{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H} \} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{A}^* && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{y} = 0 \} \\
&= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}) && \text{by definition of } \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A})
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A})^{\perp} &= \{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{u} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall u \in \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A}) \} \\
&= \{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H} \} && \text{by definition of } \mathcal{I} \\
&= \left\{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \langle \mathbf{A}^* \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H} \right\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{A}^* && \text{(Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \left\{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \mathbf{A}^* \boldsymbol{y} = 0 \right\} \\
&= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}^*) && \text{by definition of } \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A})
\end{aligned}$$

✏

I.4 Special Classes of Operators

I.4.1 Projection operators

Definition I.10. [33] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{P}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

DEF
$\mathbf{P}$ *is a **projection** operator if* $\quad \mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P}$.

[32] Rudin (1991) page 312

[33] Rudin (1991) page 133 ⟨5.15 Projections⟩, Kubrusly (2001) page 70, Bachman and Narici (1966) page 6, Halmos (1958) page 73 ⟨§41. Projections⟩

Theorem I.15. [34] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{P}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ with* NULL SPACE $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P})$ *and* IMAGE SET $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P})$.

THM

$$\left.\begin{array}{lrcll} 1. & \mathbf{P}^2 &=& \mathbf{P} & (\mathbf{P} \text{ is a projection operator}) \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & \boldsymbol{\Omega} &=& \boldsymbol{X} \dotplus \boldsymbol{Y} & (\boldsymbol{Y} \text{ compliments } \boldsymbol{X} \text{ in } \boldsymbol{\Omega}) \quad \text{and} \\ 3. & \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\Omega} &=& \boldsymbol{X} & (\mathbf{P} \text{ projects onto } \boldsymbol{X}) \end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{lrcll} 1. & \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P}) &=& \boldsymbol{X} & \text{and} \\ 2. & \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P}) &=& \boldsymbol{Y} & \text{and} \\ 3. & \boldsymbol{\Omega} &=& \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P}) \dotplus \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P}) & \end{array}\right.$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P}) &= \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\Omega} \\ &= \mathbf{P}(\boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 + \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2) \\ &= \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 + \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_2 \\ &= \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 + \{\mathbb{0}\} \\ &= \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P}) &= \{\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{\Omega} | \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}\} \\ &= \left\{\boldsymbol{x} \in (\boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 + \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2) | \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}\right\} \\ &= \left\{\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 | \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}\right\} + \left\{\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2 | \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}\right\} \\ &= \{\mathbb{0}\} + \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2 \\ &= \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2 \end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem I.16. [35] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{P}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

THM

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P}}_{\mathbf{P} \text{ is a projection operator}} \iff \underbrace{(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})^2 = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})}_{(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P}) \text{ is a projection operator}}$$

✎PROOF:

Proof that $\mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P} \implies (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})^2 = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})$:

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})^2 &= (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P}) \\ &= \mathbf{I}(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P}) + (-\mathbf{P})(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P}) \\ &= \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P}\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{P}^2 \\ &= \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P} && \text{by left hypothesis} \\ &= \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P} \end{aligned}$$

Proof that $\mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P} \impliedby (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})^2 = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}^2 &= \underbrace{\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P}^2}_{(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})^2} - (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P}) \\ &= (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})^2 - (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P}) \\ &= (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P}) - (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{P}) && \text{by right hypothesis} \\ &= \mathbf{P} \end{aligned}$$

✏

[34] Michel and Herget (1993) pages 120–121
[35] Michel and Herget (1993) page 121

Theorem I.17. [36] *Let $\boldsymbol{H}$ be a* HILBERT SPACE *and* $\mathbf{P}$ *an operator in* $\boldsymbol{H}^{\boldsymbol{H}}$ *with adjoint* $\mathbf{P}^*$, NULL SPACE $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P})$, *and* IMAGE SET $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P})$.

THM

If $\mathbf{P}$ *is a* PROJECTION OPERATOR, *then the following are equivalent:*

1.	$\mathbf{P}^* = \mathbf{P}$	($\mathbf{P}$ *is* SELF-ADJOINT)	$\iff$
2.	$\mathbf{P}^*\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{P}\mathbf{P}^*$	($\mathbf{P}$ *is* NORMAL)	$\iff$
3.	$\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P})^\perp$		$\iff$
4.	$\langle \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle = \|\mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \quad \forall x \in X$		

✎PROOF: This proof is incomplete at this time.

Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{P}^*\mathbf{P} &= \mathbf{P}^{**}\mathbf{P}^* && \text{by (1)}\\ &= \mathbf{P}\mathbf{P}^* && \text{by Theorem I.13 page 233}\end{aligned}$$

Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (3):

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P}) &= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P}^*)^\perp && \text{by Theorem I.14 page 234}\\ &= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P})^\perp && \text{by (1)}\end{aligned}$$

Proof that (3) $\Longrightarrow$ (4):

Proof that (4) $\Longrightarrow$ (1):

✏

I.4.2 Self Adjoint Operators

Definition I.11. [37] *Let* $\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ *be a* BOUNDED *operator with adjoint* $\mathbf{B}^*$ *on a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H}$.

DEF

The operator $\mathbf{B}$ *is said to be* ***self-adjoint*** *or* ***hermitian*** *if* $\mathbf{B} \stackrel{\circ}{=} \mathbf{B}^*$.

Example I.3 (Autocorrelation operator). Let $\mathsf{x}(t)$ be a random process with autocorrelation

$$\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u) \triangleq \underbrace{\mathsf{E}[\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(u)]}_{\text{expectation}}.$$

Let an autocorrelation operator $\mathbf{R}$ be defined as $[\mathbf{R}\mathsf{f}](t) \triangleq \displaystyle\int_{\mathbb{R}} \underbrace{\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)}_{\text{kernel}}\mathsf{f}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u$.

EX

$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}^*$ (The auto-correlation operator $\mathbf{R}$ is *self-adjoint*)

Theorem I.18. [38] *Let* $\mathbf{S} : \boldsymbol{H} \to \boldsymbol{H}$ *be an operator over a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H}$ *with eigenvalues* $\{\lambda_n\}$ *and eigenfunctions* $\{\psi_n\}$ *such that* $\mathbf{S}\psi_n = \lambda_n\psi_n$ *and let* $\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle}$.

THM

$$\left\{\underbrace{\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^*}_{\mathbf{S}\text{ is self adjoint}}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & \langle \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle \in \mathbb{R} & \text{(the hermitian quadratic form of } \mathbf{S} \text{ is REAL-VALUED)}\\ 2. & \lambda_n \in \mathbb{R} & \text{(eigenvalues of } \mathbf{S} \text{ are REAL-VALUED)}\\ 3. & \lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \Longrightarrow \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle = 0 & \text{(eigenvectors are ORTHOGONAL)}\end{array}\right\}$$

[36] Rudin (1991) page 314

[37] Historical works regarding self-adjoint operators: von Neumann (1929), page 49, "linearer Operator R selbstadjungiert oder Hermitesch", Stone (1932), page 50 ⟨"self-adjoint transformations"⟩

[38] Lax (2002), pages 315–316, Keener (1988), pages 114–119, Bachman and Narici (1966) page 24 ⟨Theorem 2.1⟩,
Bertero and Boccacci (1998) page 225 ⟨§"9.2 SVD of a matrix …If all eigenvectors are normalized…"⟩

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^* \implies \langle \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle^* && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \text{ Definition I.9 page 232}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^* \implies \lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lambda_n \|\psi_n\|^2 &= \lambda_n \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition} \\
&= \langle \lambda_n \psi_n \mid \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \text{ Definition I.9 page 232} \\
&= \langle \mathbf{S}\psi_n \mid \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs} \\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \mathbf{S}\psi_n \rangle && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \lambda_n \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs} \\
&= \lambda_n^* \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_n \rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \text{ Definition I.9 page 232} \\
&= \lambda_n^* \|\psi_n\|^2 && \text{by definition}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^* \implies [\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \implies \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle = 0]$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lambda_n \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle &= \langle \lambda_n \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \text{ Definition I.9 page 232} \\
&= \langle \mathbf{S}\psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs} \\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \mathbf{S}\psi_m \rangle && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \lambda_m \psi_m \rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs} \\
&= \lambda_m^* \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \text{ Definition I.9 page 232} \\
&= \lambda_m \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle && \text{because } \lambda_m \text{ is real}
\end{aligned}$$

This implies for $\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \neq 0$, $\langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle = 0$.

✎

I.4.3 Normal Operators

Definition I.12. [39] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{N}^*$ be the adjoint of an operator $\mathbf{N} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

DEF: $\mathbf{N}$ ***is normal*** *if* $\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*$.

Theorem I.19. [40] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on a* HILBERT SPACE *$\boldsymbol{H}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator $\mathbf{N}$ in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{N})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{N}$ in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$.*

THM:
$$\underbrace{\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*}_{\mathbf{N} \text{ is normal}} \iff \|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\| \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H}$$

[39] Rudin (1991) page 312, Michel and Herget (1993) page 431, Dieudonné (1969), page 167, Frobenius (1878), Frobenius (1968), page 391

[40] Rudin (1991) pages 312–313

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^* \implies \|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 &= \langle \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by definition}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Proposition I.3 page 233 (definition of } \mathbf{N}^*)\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis (} \mathbf{N} \text{ is normal)}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Proposition I.3 page 233 (definition of } \mathbf{N}^*)\\
&= \|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by definition}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^* \impliedby \|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle &= \langle \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}^{**}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Proposition I.3 page 233 (definition of } \mathbf{N}^*)\\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Theorem I.13 page 233 (property of adjoint)}\\
&= \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by definition}\\
&= \|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by right hypothesis (} \|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|)\\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by definition}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Proposition I.3 page 233 (definition of } \mathbf{N}^*)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem I.20. [41] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H}$. *Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator* $\mathbf{N}$ *in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{N})$ the* IMAGE SET *of* $\mathbf{N}$ *in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$.*

THM
$$\underbrace{\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*}_{\mathbf{N} \text{ is normal}} \implies \underbrace{\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}^*) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N})}_{\mathbf{N} \text{ and } \mathbf{N}^* \text{ have the same null space}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}^*) &= \left\{\boldsymbol{x} | \mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}\right\} && \text{(definition of } \mathcal{N})\\
&= \left\{\boldsymbol{x} | \|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\| = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}\right\} && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \text{ (Definition I.5 page 224)}\\
&= \left\{\boldsymbol{x} | \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\| = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}\right\}\\
&= \left\{\boldsymbol{x} | \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}\right\} && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \text{ (Definition I.5 page 224)}\\
&= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}) && \text{(definition of } \mathcal{N})
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem I.21. [42] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H}$. *Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator* $\mathbf{N}$ *in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{N})$ the* IMAGE SET *of* $\mathbf{N}$ *in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$.*

THM
$$\left\{\underbrace{\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*}_{\mathbf{N} \text{ is normal}}\right\} \implies \left\{\underbrace{\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \implies \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle = 0}_{\text{eigenfunctions associated with distinct eigenvalues are orthogonal}}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: The proof in (1) is flawed. This implies that (2) is also flawed. [Rudin] claims both to be true.(Rudin, 1991)313

[41] Rudin (1991) pages 312–313
[42] Rudin (1991) pages 312–313

1. Proof that $\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^* \implies \mathbf{N}^*\psi = \lambda^*\psi$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\mathbf{N}\psi = \lambda\psi \\
&\Longleftarrow \\
&\quad 0 = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N} - \lambda\mathbf{I}) \\
&\quad\;\; = \mathcal{N}([\mathbf{N} - \lambda\mathbf{I}]^*) && \text{by } \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}^*) \\
&\quad\;\; = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}^* - [\lambda\mathbf{I}]^*) && \text{by Theorem I.13 page 233} \\
&\quad\;\; = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}^* - \lambda^*\mathbf{I}^*) && \text{by Theorem I.13 page 233} \\
&\quad\;\; = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}^* - \lambda^*\mathbf{I}) \\
&\Longrightarrow \\
&(\mathbf{N}^* - \lambda^*\mathbf{I})\psi = 0 \\
&\iff \mathbf{N}^*\psi = \lambda^*\psi
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^* \implies [\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \implies \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle = 0]$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda_n \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle &= \langle \lambda_n\psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle \text{ Definition I.9 page 232} \\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}\psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs} \\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \mathbf{N}^*\psi_m \rangle && \text{by Proposition I.3 page 233 (definition of adjoint)} \\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \lambda_m^*\psi_m \rangle && \text{by (4.)} \\
&= \lambda_m \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle \text{ Definition I.9 page 232}
\end{aligned}
$$

This implies for $\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \neq 0$, $\langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle = 0$.

✑

I.4.4 Isometric operators

An operator on a pair of normed linear spaces is *isometric* (next definition) if it is an *isometry*.

Definition I.13. *Let* $(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|)$ *and* $(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|)$ *be* NORMED LINEAR SPACES *(Definition I.5 page 224).*

DEF: *An operator* $\mathbf{M} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ *is* ***isometric*** *if*
$$\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \qquad \forall x \in X.$$

Theorem I.22. [43] *Let* $(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|)$ *and* $(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|)$ *be* NORMED LINEAR SPACES. *Let* $\mathbf{M}$ *be a linear operator in* $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.

THM:
$$\underbrace{\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \quad \forall x \in X}_{\text{isometric in length}} \iff \underbrace{\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| \quad \forall x, y \in X}_{\text{isometric in distance}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \implies \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\|$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\| &= \|\mathbf{M}(\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y})\| && \text{by definition of linear operators (Definition I.4 page 221)} \\
&= \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{u}\| && \text{let } \boldsymbol{u} \triangleq \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y} \\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}
$$

[43] Kubrusly (2001) page 239 ⟨Proposition 4.37⟩, Berberian (1961) page 27 ⟨Theorem IV.7.5⟩

2. Proof that $\|\mathbf{M}x\| = \|x\| \impliedby \|\mathbf{M}x - \mathbf{M}y\| = \|x - y\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{M}x\| &= \|\mathbf{M}(x - \mathbb{0})\| \\
&= \|\mathbf{M}x - \mathbf{M}\mathbb{0})\| && \text{by definition of linear operators (Definition I.4 page 221)} \\
&= \|x - \mathbb{0}\| && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&= \|x\|
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Isometric operators have already been defined (Definition I.13 page 240) in the more general normed linear spaces, while Theorem I.22 (page 240) demonstrated that in a normed linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$, $\|\mathbf{M}x\| = \|x\| \iff \|\mathbf{M}x - \mathbf{M}y\| = \|x - y\|$ for all $x, y \in \boldsymbol{X}$. Here in the more specialized inner product spaces, Theorem I.23 (next) demonstrates two additional equivalent properties.

Theorem I.23. [44] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on a normed linear space $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|)$. Let $\mathbf{N}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X})$, and $\mathbf{I}$ the identity operator in $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X})$. Let $\|x\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle x \,|\, x\rangle}$.*

THM

The following conditions are all ***equivalent***:

1.	$\mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M}$	$=$	$\mathbf{I}$			$\iff$
2.	$\langle \mathbf{M}x \,\|\, \mathbf{M}y\rangle$	$=$	$\langle x \,\|\, y\rangle$	$\forall x,y \in X$	*($\mathbf{M}$ is surjective)*	$\iff$
3.	$\|\mathbf{M}x - \mathbf{M}y\|$	$=$	$\|x - y\|$	$\forall x,y \in X$	*(isometric in distance)*	$\iff$
4.	$\|\mathbf{M}x\|$	$=$	$\|x\|$	$\forall x \in X$	*(isometric in length)*	

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\implies$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{M}x \,|\, \mathbf{M}y\rangle &= \langle x \,|\, \mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M}y\rangle && \text{by Proposition I.3 page 233 (definition of adjoint)} \\
&= \langle x \,|\, \mathbf{I}y\rangle && \text{by (1)} \\
&= \langle x \,|\, y\rangle && \text{by Definition I.3 page 220 (definition of } \mathbf{I})
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (2) $\implies$ (4):

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{M}x\| &= \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{M}x \,|\, \mathbf{M}x\rangle} && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \\
&= \sqrt{\langle x \,|\, x\rangle} && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&= \|x\| && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\|
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (2) $\impliedby$ (4):

$$\begin{aligned}
4\langle \mathbf{M}x \,|\, \mathbf{M}y\rangle &= \|\mathbf{M}x + \mathbf{M}y\|^2 - \|\mathbf{M}x - \mathbf{M}y\|^2 + i\,\|\mathbf{M}x + i\mathbf{M}y\|^2 - i\,\|\mathbf{M}x - i\mathbf{M}y\|^2 && \text{by polarization id.} \\
&= \|\mathbf{M}(x + y)\|^2 - \|\mathbf{M}(x - y)\|^2 + i\,\|\mathbf{M}(x + iy)\|^2 - i\,\|\mathbf{M}(x - iy)\|^2 && \text{by Definition I.4} \\
&= \|x + y\|^2 - \|x - y\|^2 + i\,\|x + iy\|^2 - i\,\|x - iy\|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that (3) $\iff$ (4): by Theorem I.22 page 240

[44] Michel and Herget (1993) page 432 ⟨Theorem 7.5.8⟩, Kubrusly (2001) page 391 ⟨Proposition 5.72⟩

5. Proof that (4) $\implies$ (1):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle &= \langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}^{**}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Proposition I.3 page 233 (definition of adjoint)}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Theorem I.13 page 233 (property of adjoint)}\\
&= \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by definition}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis with } y=0\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by definition}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Definition I.3 page 220 (definition of } \mathbf{I})\\
\implies \quad \mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M} &= \mathbf{I} && \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem I.24. [45] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{M}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$, and $\mathbf{I}$ the identity operator in $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X})$. Let Λ be the set of eigenvalues of $\mathbf{M}$. Let $\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle}$.*

T H M

$$
\underbrace{\mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{I}}_{\mathbf{M}\textit{ is isometric}} \implies \left\{ \begin{array}{rcll} |||\mathbf{M}||| &=& 1 & (\text{UNIT LENGTH}) \quad \textit{and} \\ |\lambda| &=& 1 & \forall \lambda \in \Lambda \end{array} \right.
$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{I} \implies |||\mathbf{M}||| = 1$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{M}||| &= \sup_{x\in X} \{\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\} && \text{by Definition I.6 page 224}\\
&= \sup_{x\in X} \{\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\} && \text{by Theorem I.23 page 240}\\
&= \sup_{x\in X} \{1\}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof that $|\lambda| = 1$: Let $(\boldsymbol{x}, \lambda)$ be an eigenvector-eigenvalue pair.

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 &= \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|} \|\boldsymbol{x}\|\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|} \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{by Theorem I.23 page 240}\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|} \|\lambda\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{by definition of } \lambda\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|} |\lambda| \; \|\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{by homogeneous property of } \|\cdot\|\\
&= |\lambda|
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Example I.4 (One sided shift operator). [46] Let $\boldsymbol{X}$ be the set of all sequences with range $\mathbb{W}$ $(0, 1, 2, \ldots)$ and shift operators defined as

$$
\begin{array}{llcll}
1. & \mathbf{S}_r \left(\!\left(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots\right)\!\right) & \triangleq & \left(\!\left(0, x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots\right)\!\right) & \text{(right shift operator)}\\
2. & \mathbf{S}_l \left(\!\left(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots\right)\!\right) & \triangleq & \left(\!\left(x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots\right)\!\right) & \text{(left shift operator)}
\end{array}
$$

E X

1. $\mathbf{S}_r$ is an isometric operator.
2. $\mathbf{S}_r^* = \mathbf{S}_l$

[45] Michel and Hergert (1993) page 432
[46] Michel and Hergert (1993) page 441

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{S}_r^* = \mathbf{S}_l$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{S}_r \, (\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \,|\, (\!(y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots)\!) \rangle &= \langle (\!(0, x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \,|\, (\!(y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots)\!) \rangle \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_{n-1} \; y_n^* \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n \; y_{n+1}^* \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n \; y_{n+1}^* \\
&= \langle (\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \,|\, (\!(y_1, y_2, y_3, \ldots)\!) \rangle \\
&= \left\langle (\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \,\middle|\, \underbrace{\mathbf{S}_l}_{\mathbf{S}_r^*} (\!(y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots)\!) \right\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{S}_r$ is isometric ($\mathbf{S}_r^*\mathbf{S}_r = \mathbf{I}$):

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}_r^*\mathbf{S}_r &= \mathbf{S}_l\mathbf{S}_r && \text{by 1.} \\
&= \mathbf{I}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

I.4.5 Unitary operators

Definition I.14. [47] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{U}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$, and $\boldsymbol{I}$ the identity operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X})$.*

DEF: *The operator $\mathbf{U}$ is **unitary** if* $\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} \;=\; \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I}$.

Proposition I.4. *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{U}$ and $\mathbf{V}$ be* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

PRP: $$\left.\begin{array}{ll}\mathbf{U} \text{ is UNITARY} & \text{and} \\ \mathbf{V} \text{ is UNITARY} & \end{array}\right\} \implies (\mathbf{UV}) \text{ is UNITARY.}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{UV})(\mathbf{UV})^* &= (\mathbf{UV})\big(\mathbf{V}^*\mathbf{U}^*\big) && \text{by Theorem I.8 page 229} \\
&= \mathbf{U}\big(\mathbf{VV}^*\big)\mathbf{U}^* && \text{by associative property} \\
&= \mathbf{UIU}^* && \text{by definition of unitary operators—Definition I.14 page 242} \\
&= \mathbf{I} && \text{by definition of unitary operators—Definition I.14 page 242}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{UV})^*(\mathbf{UV}) &= \big(\mathbf{V}^*\mathbf{U}^*\big)(\mathbf{UV}) && \text{by Theorem I.8 page 229} \\
&= \mathbf{V}^*\big(\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U}\big)\mathbf{V} && \text{by associative property} \\
&= \mathbf{V}^*\mathbf{IV} && \text{by definition of unitary operators—Definition I.14 page 242} \\
&= \mathbf{I} && \text{by definition of unitary operators—Definition I.14 page 242}
\end{aligned}$$

[47] Rudin (1991) page 312, Michel and Herget (1993) page 431, Autonne (1901) page 209, Autonne (1902), Schur (1909), Steen (1973)

Theorem I.25. [48] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H}$. *Let $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U})$ be the* IMAGE SET *of* $\mathbf{U}$.

THM *If* $\mathbf{U}$ *is a* ***bounded linear operator*** $(\mathbf{U} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H}))$, *then the following conditions are* ***equivalent***:

1. $\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}$ (UNITARY) $\iff$
2. $\langle \mathbf{U}x \mid \mathbf{U}y\rangle = \langle \mathbf{U}^*x \mid \mathbf{U}^*y\rangle = \langle x \mid y\rangle$ *and* $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = X$ (SURJECTIVE) $\iff$
3. $\|\mathbf{U}x - \mathbf{U}y\| = \|\mathbf{U}^*x - \mathbf{U}^*y\| = \|x-y\|$ *and* $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = X$ (ISOMETRIC IN DISTANCE) $\iff$
4. $\|\mathbf{U}x\| = \|x\|$ *and* $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = X$ (ISOMETRIC IN LENGTH)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\implies$ (2):
   (a) $\langle \mathbf{U}x \mid \mathbf{U}y\rangle = \langle \mathbf{U}^*x \mid \mathbf{U}^*y\rangle = \langle x \mid y\rangle$ by Theorem I.23 (page 240).
   (b) Proof that $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = X$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
X &\supseteq \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) && \text{because } \mathbf{U} \in X^X \\
&\supseteq \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^*) \\
&= \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{I}) && \text{by left hypothesis } (\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I}) \\
&= X && \text{by Definition I.3 page 220 (definition of } \mathbf{I})
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof that (2) $\iff$ (3) $\iff$ (4): by Theorem I.23 page 240.
3. Proof that (3) $\implies$ (1):
   (a) Proof that $\|\mathbf{U}x - \mathbf{U}y\| = \|x-y\| \implies \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}$: by Theorem I.23 page 240
   (b) Proof that $\|\mathbf{U}^*x - \mathbf{U}^*y\| = \|x-y\| \implies \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I}$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{U}^*x - \mathbf{U}^*y\| = \|x-y\| \implies \quad & \mathbf{U}^{**}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I} && \text{by Theorem I.23 page 240} \\
& \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I} && \text{by Theorem I.13 page 233}
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem I.26. *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of* BOUNDED LINEAR OPERATORS *on a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H}$. *Let* $\mathbf{U}$ *be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$, $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U})$ the* NULL SPACE *of* $\mathbf{U}$, *and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U})$ the* IMAGE SET *of* $\mathbf{U}$.

THM

$$
\underbrace{\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}}_{\mathbf{U}\text{ is } \textit{unitary}} \implies
\left\{
\begin{array}{rclcll}
\mathbf{U}^{-1} &=& \mathbf{U}^* & & & \text{and} \\
\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) &=& \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}^*) &=& X & \text{and} \\
\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}) &=& \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}^*) &=& \{\mathbb{0}\} & \text{and} \\
|||\mathbf{U}||| &=& |||\mathbf{U}^*||| &=& 1 & \text{(UNIT LENGTH)}
\end{array}
\right\}
$$

✎PROOF:

1. Note that $\mathbf{U}$, $\mathbf{U}^*$, and $\mathbf{U}^{-1}$ are all both *isometric* and *normal*:

$$
\begin{array}{lclcll}
\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} & & &=& \mathbf{I} & \implies \mathbf{U} \text{ is } \textit{isometric} \\
\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* &=& \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} &=& \mathbf{I} & \implies \mathbf{U}^* \text{ is } \textit{isometric} \\
\mathbf{U}^{-1} &=& \mathbf{U}^* & & & \implies \mathbf{U}^{-1} \text{ is } \textit{isometric} \\
\\
\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} &=& \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* &=& & \implies \mathbf{U} \text{ is } \textit{normal} \\
\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* &=& \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} &=& & \implies \mathbf{U}^* \text{ is } \textit{normal} \\
\mathbf{U}^{-1} &=& \mathbf{U}^* & & & \implies \mathbf{U}^{-1} \text{ is } \textit{normal}
\end{array}
$$

[48] Rudin (1991) pages 313–314 ⟨Theorem 12.13⟩, Knapp (2005a) page 45 ⟨Proposition 2.6⟩

2. Proof that $\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I} \implies \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}^*) = \boldsymbol{H}$: by Theorem I.25 page 243.

3. Proof that $\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I} \implies \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}^*) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}^{-1})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}^*) &= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}) && \text{because } \mathbf{U} \text{ and } \mathbf{U}^* \text{ are both } \textit{normal} \text{ and by Theorem I.21 page 239}\\
&= \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U})^\perp && \text{by Theorem I.14 page 234}\\
&= X^\perp && \text{by above result}\\
&= \{\mathbb{0}\}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I} \implies \left\|\mathbf{U}^{-1}\right\| = \left\|\mathbf{U}^*\right\| = \|\mathbf{U}\| = 1$:
Because $\mathbf{U}$, $\mathbf{U}^*$, and $\mathbf{U}^{-1}$ are all isometric and by Theorem I.24 page 241.

✏

Example I.5. Examples of *Fredholm integral operators* include

EX					
1.	**Fourier Transform**	$[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x}](f)$	$= \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}t$	$\kappa(t,f)$	$= e^{-i2\pi ft}$
2.	**Inverse Fourier Transform**	$[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}](t)$	$= \int_{f\in\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f$	$\kappa(f,t)$	$= e^{i2\pi ft}$
3.	**Laplace operator**	$[\mathbf{L}\mathsf{x}](s)$	$= \int_{t\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{x}(t)e^{-st}\,\mathrm{d}t$	$\kappa(t,s)$	$= e^{-st}$

Example I.6 (Translation operator). Let $\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and $\mathbf{T} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be defined as

$$\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x-1) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \qquad \text{(translation operator)}$$

EX			
1.	$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(x+1)$	$\forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(inverse translation operator)
2.	$\mathbf{T}^* = \mathbf{T}^{-1}$		($\mathbf{T}$ is invertible)
3.	$\mathbf{T}^*\mathbf{T} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^* = \mathbf{I}$		($\mathbf{T}$ is unitary)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(x+1)$:

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{T} = \mathbf{I}$$
$$\mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^{-1} = \mathbf{I}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{T}$ is unitary:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x)\rangle &= \langle \mathsf{f}(x-1) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}\\
&= \int_x \mathsf{f}(x-1)\mathsf{g}^*(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \int_x \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}^*(x+1)\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x+1)\rangle\\
&= \Big\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,\Big|\, \underbrace{\mathbf{T}^{-1}}_{\mathbf{T}^*}\mathsf{g}(x)\Big\rangle && \text{by 1.}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example I.7 (Dilation operator). Let $\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and $\mathbf{T} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be defined as

$$\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \qquad \text{(dilation operator)}$$

EX			
1.	$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$	$\forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(inverse dilation operator)
2.	$\mathbf{D}^* = \mathbf{D}^{-1}$		($\mathbf{D}$ is invertible)
3.	$\mathbf{D}^*\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^* = \mathbf{I}$		($\mathbf{D}$ is unitary)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$:

$$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{I}$$
$$\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^{-1} = \mathbf{I}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{D}$ is unitary:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x)\rangle &= \left\langle \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D}\\
&= \int_x \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x)\mathsf{g}^*(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(u)\mathsf{g}^*\left(\frac{1}{2}u\right)\frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{let } u \triangleq 2x \implies \mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathsf{g}\left(\frac{1}{2}u\right)\right]^*\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathsf{g}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \underbrace{\mathbf{D}^{-1}}_{\mathbf{D}^*}\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle && \text{by 1.}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example I.8 (Delay operator). Let $\boldsymbol{X}$ be the set of all sequences and $\mathbf{D} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be a delay operator.

EX The delay operator $\mathbf{D}\,(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \triangleq (\!(x_{n-1})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is unitary.

✎PROOF: The inverse $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ of the delay operator $\mathbf{D}$ is

$$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\,(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \triangleq (\!(x_{n+1})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{D}\,(\!(x_n)\!) \,|\, (\!(y_n)\!)\rangle &= \langle (\!(x_{n-1})\!) \,|\, (\!(y_n)\!)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D}\\
&= \sum_n x_{n-1}\, y_n^*\\
&= \sum_n x_n\, y_{n+1}^*\\
&= \left\langle (\!(x_n)\!) \,|\, (\!(y_{n+1})\!)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle (\!(x_n)\!) \,|\, \underbrace{\mathbf{D}^{-1}}_{\mathbf{D}^*}(\!(y_n)\!)\right\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $\mathbf{D}^* = \mathbf{D}^{-1}$. This implies that $\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^* = \mathbf{D}^*\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{I}$ which implies that $\mathbf{D}$ is unitary. ✏

Example I.9 (Fourier transform). Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the *Fourier Transform* and $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ the *inverse Fourier Transform* operator

$$[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x}](f) \triangleq \int_t \mathsf{x}(t)\underbrace{e^{-i2\pi f t}}_{\kappa(t,f)}\,\mathrm{d}t \qquad \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}\right](t) \triangleq \int_f \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(f)\underbrace{e^{i2\pi f t}}_{\kappa^*(t,f)}\,\mathrm{d}f.$$

EX $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ (the Fourier Transform operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary)

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x} \,|\, \tilde{\mathsf{y}} \right\rangle &= \left\langle \int_t \mathsf{x}(t) e^{-i2\pi f t}\, \mathrm{d}t \,|\, \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(f) \right\rangle \\
&= \int_t \mathsf{x}(t) \left\langle e^{-i2\pi f t} \,|\, \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(f) \right\rangle \mathrm{d}t \\
&= \int_t \mathsf{x}(t) \int_f e^{-i2\pi f t} \tilde{\mathsf{y}}^*(f)\, \mathrm{d}f\, \mathrm{d}t \\
&= \int_t \mathsf{x}(t) \left[\int_f e^{i2\pi f t} \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(f)\, \mathrm{d}f \right]^* \mathrm{d}t \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{x}(t) \,|\, \int_f \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(f) e^{i2\pi f t}\, \mathrm{d}f \right\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{x} \,|\, \underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}}_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*} \tilde{\mathsf{y}} \right\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

This implies that $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary ($\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$). ✏

Example I.10 (Rotation matrix). [49] Let the rotation matrix $\mathbf{R}_\theta : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be defined as

$$\mathbf{R}_\theta \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

EX
1. $\mathbf{R}^{-1}{}_\theta = \mathbf{R}_{-\theta}$
2. $\mathbf{R}^*{}_\theta = \mathbf{R}^{-1}{}_\theta$ ($\mathbf{R}$ is unitary)

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{R}^* &= \mathbf{R}^H \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}^H && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta \\ -\sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix} && \text{by definition of Hermetian transpose operator } H \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(-\theta) & -\sin(-\theta) \\ \sin(-\theta) & \cos(-\theta) \end{bmatrix} && \text{by Theorem F.2 page 179} \\
&= \mathbf{R}_{-\theta} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \\
&= \mathbf{R}^{-1} && \text{by 1.}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

I.5 Operator order

Definition I.15. [50] *Let* $\mathbf{P} \in \boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *be an operator.*

DEF
$\mathbf{P}$ *is **positive** if* $\langle \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x} \rangle \geq 0\ \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}$.
This condition is denoted $\mathbf{P} \geq 0$.

[49] Noble and Daniel (1988), page 311
[50] Michel and Herget (1993) page 429 ⟨Definition 7.4.12⟩

Theorem I.27. [51]

THM

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{P} \geq 0 \text{ and } \mathbf{Q} \geq 0}_{\mathbf{P} \text{ and } \mathbf{Q} \text{ are both positive}} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{lllll} (\mathbf{P}+\mathbf{Q}) & \geq & 0 & & ((\mathbf{P}+\mathbf{Q}) \text{ is positive}) \\ \mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} & \geq & 0 & \forall \mathbf{A} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X}) & (\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} \text{ is positive}) \\ \mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{A} & \geq & 0 & \forall \mathbf{A} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X}) & (\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{A} \text{ is positive}) \end{array}\right.$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle(\mathbf{P}+\mathbf{Q})\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle &= \langle\mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle + \langle\mathbf{Q}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by additive property of } \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle \text{ (Definition I.9 page 232)} \\
&\geq \langle\mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&\geq 0 && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
\langle\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle &= \langle\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint (Proposition I.3 page 233)} \\
&= \langle\mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle && \text{where } \boldsymbol{y} \triangleq \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \\
&\geq 0 && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
\langle\mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle &= \langle\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{I} \text{ (Definition I.3 page 220)} \\
&\geq 0 && \text{by non-negative property of } \langle \triangle \mid \nabla \rangle \text{ (Definition I.9 page 232)} \\
&\implies \mathbf{I} \text{ is positive} \\
\langle\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle &= \langle\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{I}\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{I} \text{ (Definition I.3 page 220)} \\
&\geq 0 && \text{by two previous results}
\end{aligned}$$

✑

Definition I.16. [52] *Let* $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ *be* BOUNDED *operators.*

DEF

$\mathbf{A} \geq \mathbf{B}$ *("*$\mathbf{A}$ *is greater than or equal to* $\mathbf{B}$*") if*
$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \geq 0$ *("*$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})$ *is positive")*

[51] Michel and Herget (1993) page 429
[52] Michel and Herget (1993) page 429

APPENDIX J

PARTITION OF UNITY

J.1 Definition and motivation

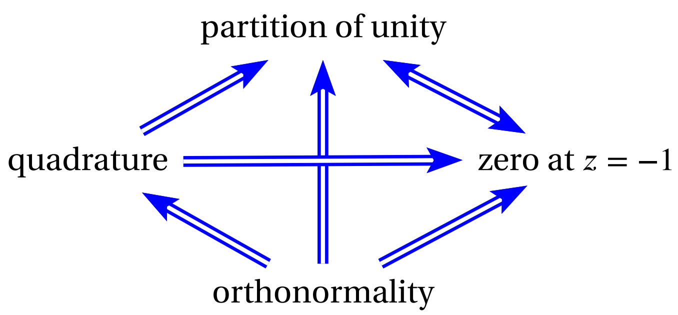


Figure J.1: Implications of scaling function properties

A very common property of scaling functions (Definition **??** page **??**) is the *partition of unity* property (Definition J.1 page 250). The partition of unity is a kind of generalization of *orthonormality*; that is, *all* orthonormal scaling functions form a partition of unity. But the partition of unity property is not just a consequence of orthonormality, but also a generalization of orthonormality, in that if you remove the orthonormality constraint, the partition of unity is still a reasonable constraint in and of itself.

There are two reasons why the partition of unity property is a reasonable constraint on its own:

- Without a partition of unity, it is difficult to represent a function as simple as a constant.[1]
- For a multiresolution system $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$, the partition of unity property is equivalent to $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^n h_n = 0$ (Theorem **??** page **??**). As viewed from the perspective of discrete time signal processing (Appendix **??** page **??**), this implies that the scaling coefficients form a "*lowpass filter*"; lowpass filters provide a kind of "coarse approximation" of a function. And that is what the scaling function is "supposed" to do—to provide a coarse approximation at some resolution or "scale" (Definition **??** page **??**).

[1] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994) page 8

Definition J.1. [2]

DEF

A function $\mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$ *forms a* ***partition of unity*** *if*

$$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) = 1 \qquad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

J.2 Results

Theorem J.1. [3] *Let* $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(V_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ *be a multiresolution system* (Definition ?? page ??). *Let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(\omega)$ *be the* Fourier transform (Definition G.2 page 195) *of a function* $\mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\bar{\delta}_n$ *be the* Kronecker delta function.

THM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f} = c}_{\text{partition of unity in “time”}} \qquad \iff \qquad \underbrace{\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](2\pi n) = \bar{\delta}_n}_{\text{partition of unity in “frequency”}}$$

✎Proof: Let $\mathbb{Z}_e$ be the set of even integers and $\mathbb{Z}_o$ the set of odd integers.

1. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
c &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^m \mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-m) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \\
&= \sqrt{2\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi m) e^{i2\pi m x} && \text{by } PSF \quad \text{(Theorem H.2 page 214)} \\
&= \underbrace{\sqrt{2\pi}\, \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) e^{i2\pi n x}}_{\text{real and constant for } n=0} + \underbrace{\sqrt{2\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}\setminus n} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi m) e^{i2\pi m x}}_{\text{complex and non-constant}} \\
\Longrightarrow \sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) &= c\bar{\delta}_n && \text{because } c \text{ is real and constant for all } x
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for ($\Longleftarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition H.3 page 206)} \\
&= \sqrt{2\pi} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) e^{-i2\pi n x} && \text{by } PSF \quad \text{(Theorem H.2 page 214)} \\
&= \sqrt{2\pi} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \frac{c}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \bar{\delta}_n e^{-i2\pi n x} && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&= \sqrt{2\pi} \frac{c}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i2\pi 0 x} && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta}_n \quad \text{(Definition ?? page ??)} \\
&= c
\end{aligned}$$

⇨

[2] Kelley (1955) page 171, Munkres (2000) page 225, Jänich (1984) page 116, Willard (1970), page 152 ⟨item 20C⟩, Willard (2004) page 152 ⟨item 20C⟩

[3] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994) page 8

Corollary J.1.

COR
$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\exists \mathsf{g} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \textit{ such that}\\ \mathsf{f}(x) = \mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x) \star \mathsf{g}(x)\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{l}\mathsf{f}(x) \textit{ generates}\\ \textit{a } \text{PARTITION OF UNITY}\end{array}\right\}$$

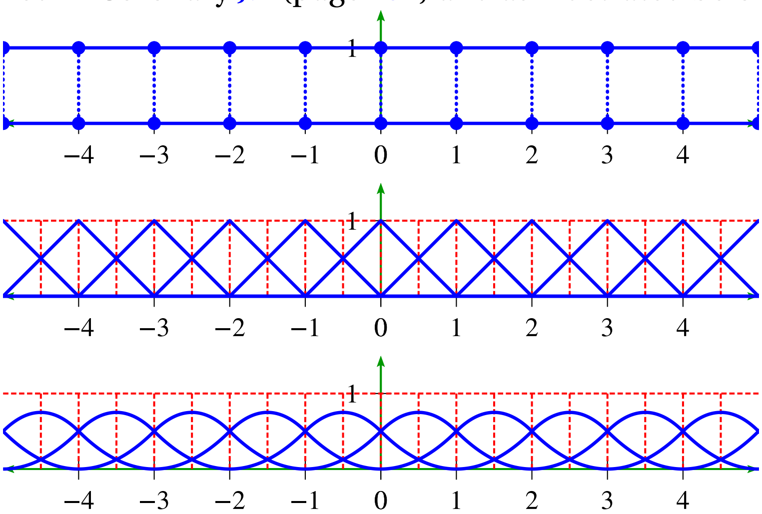
✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x) \star \mathsf{g}(x) &\implies \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}\right](\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega) && \text{by } \textit{convolution theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem G.6 page 198)}\\
&\iff \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\frac{\sin(\omega)}{\omega}\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega) && \text{by } \textit{rectangular pulse} \text{ ex.} \quad \text{(Example G.1 page 202)}\\
&\implies \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) = 0\\
&\iff \mathsf{f}(x) \text{ generates a } \textit{partition of unity} && \text{by Theorem J.1 page 250}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

J.3 Examples

Example J.1. All *B-splines* (Definition 6.3 page 66) form a partition of unity (Theorem ?? page ??). All B-splines of order $n = 1$ or greater can be generated by convolution with a *pulse* function, similar to that specified in Corollary J.1 (page 251) and as illustrated below:



(Example ?? page ??)

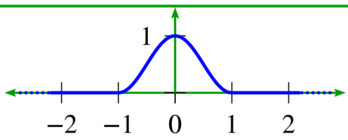
(Example ?? page ??)

(Example ?? page ??)

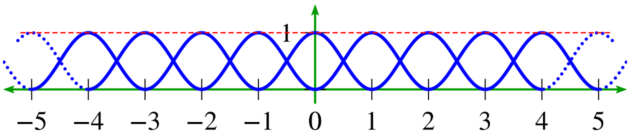
Example J.2. Let a function f be defined in terms of the cosine function (Definition F.2 page 177) as follows:

EX

$$\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) & \text{for } |x| \le 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

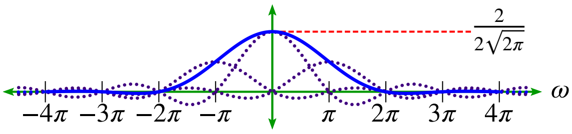


Then f induces a *partition of unity*:



Note that $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\underbrace{\frac{2\sin\omega}{\omega}}_{2\,\mathrm{sinc}(\omega)} + \underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega-\pi)}{(\omega-\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega-\pi)} + \underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega+\pi)}{(\omega+\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega+\pi)}\right]$

and so $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\bar{\delta}_n$:



✎PROOF: Let $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition H.2 page 205) on a set A.

1. Proof that $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f} = 1$ (time domain proof):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \cos^2(x)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1]}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \cos^2(x)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x) && \text{because } \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x\right) = 0 \text{ when } x = 1 \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}(x-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ (Definition H.3 page 206)} \\
&= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o} \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}(x-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-n)}_{\text{odd part}} + \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e} \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}(x-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-n)}_{\text{even part}} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}(x-2n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}(x-2n-1)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x - n\pi\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x - n\pi - \tfrac{\pi}{2}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{2n}\cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{2n}\cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x - \tfrac{\pi}{2}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \sin^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) && \text{by Theorem F.11 page 190} \\
&= \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x\right)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sin^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x\right)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) \\
&= \cos^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x\right)\cdot 1 + \sin^2\left(\tfrac{\pi}{2}x\right)\cdot 1 \\
&= 1 && \text{by } \textit{square identity} \text{ (Theorem F.11 page 190)}
\end{aligned}$$

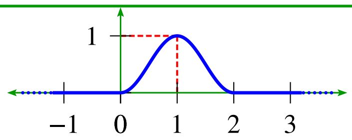
2. Proof that $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \cdots$: by Example G.3 page 203

✎

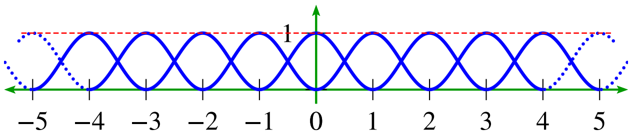
Example J.3. Let a function f be defined in terms of the sine function (Definition F.3 page 177) as follows:

CNT

$$\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) & \text{for } x \in [0:2] \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$



Then $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, \mathrm{d}x = 1$ and f induces a *partition of unity*



✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, \mathrm{d}x = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, \mathrm{d}x &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(x)\, \mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\
&= \int_0^2 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_{A(x)} \text{ (Definition H.2 page 205)} \\
&= \int_0^2 \frac{1}{2}[1-\cos(\pi x)]\, \mathrm{d}x && \text{by Theorem F.11 page 190} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[x - \frac{1}{\pi}\sin(\pi x)\right]_0^2 \\
&= \frac{1}{2}[2-0-0-0] \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathsf{f}(x)$ forms a *partition of unity*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2)}(x) && \text{because } \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) = 0 \text{ when } x = 2 \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^{m-1} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2)}(x) && \text{where } m \triangleq n+1 \implies n = m-1 \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-m+1)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2)}(x-m+1) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ (Definition H.3 page 206)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-m)+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-m) \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-m)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-m) && \text{by Theorem F.11 page 190} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^m \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ (Definition H.3 page 206)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^m \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1]}(x) && \text{because } \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) = 0 \text{ when } x = 1 \\
&= 1 && \text{by Example J.2 page 251}
\end{aligned}$$

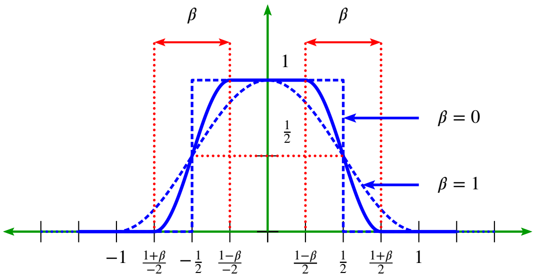
✎

Example J.4 (raised cosine). [4] Let a function f be defined in terms of the cosine function (Definition F.2 page 177) as follows:

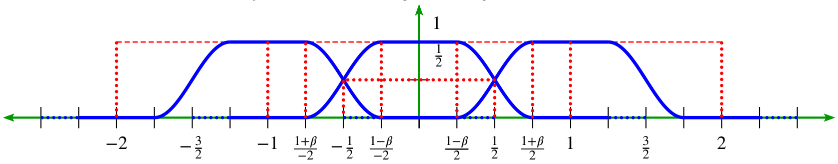
[4] Proakis (2001) pages 560–561

EX

Let $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 0 \le |x| < \frac{1-\beta}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2}\left\{1 + \cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(|x| - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} & \text{for } \frac{1-\beta}{2} \le |x| < \frac{1+\beta}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$



Then f induces a *partition of unity*:



✎PROOF:

1. definition: Let $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition H.2 page 205) on a set A.
   Let $A \triangleq \left[\frac{1+\beta}{-2} : \frac{1-\beta}{-2}\right)$, $\quad B \triangleq \left[\frac{1-\beta}{-2} : \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)$, and $\quad C \triangleq \left[\frac{1-\beta}{2} : \frac{1+\beta}{2}\right)$

2. lemma: $\mathbb{1}_A(x-1) = \mathbb{1}_C(x)$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{1}_A(x-1) &\triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } -\frac{1+\beta}{2} \le x-1 < -\frac{1-\beta}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \text{ (Definition H.2 page 205) and } A \text{ ((2) lemma page 254)} \\
&= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 1-\frac{1+\beta}{2} \le x < 1-\frac{1-\beta}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\
&= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \frac{1-\beta}{2} \le x < \frac{1+\beta}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\
&\triangleq \mathbb{1}_C(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \text{ (Definition H.2 page 205) and } C \text{ ((2) lemma page 254)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. lemma: $-1 + \frac{1-\beta}{2} = -\beta - \frac{1-\beta}{2}$. Proof:

$$-1 + \frac{1-\beta}{2} = \frac{-2+1-\beta}{2} \quad = \frac{-1-\beta}{2} = (-\beta+\beta) - \left(\frac{1+\beta}{2}\right) \quad = -\beta + \frac{2\beta-1-\beta}{2} = -\beta - \frac{1-\beta}{2}$$

4. Proof that $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f} = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n) && \text{by Definition H.3} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_A(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by definition 1 page 254} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_C(x-n) \\
&\quad + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n-1)\mathbb{1}_A(x-n-1) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by Proposition H.1} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n-1)\mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by (2) lemma page 254}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(|x-n| - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(|x-n-1| - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left((x-n) - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(-(x-n-1) - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by def. of } \mathbb{1}_C(x) \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-1 + \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_B(x-n) \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-\beta - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by (3) lemma page 254} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n - \frac{1-\beta}{2} - \frac{\pi\beta}{\beta}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_B(x-n) \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\{1-\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_B(x-n) \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_B(x-n) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_{B\cup C}(x-n) \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

✏

APPENDIX K

MATRIX CALCULUS

Optimization problems often require finding the value of some parameter which results in some measure reaching a minimum or maximum value. Often this optimal parameter value can be found by solving the single equation generated by the partial derivative of the measure with respect to the parameter. When there are several parameters, optimization often requires several simultaneous equations generated by the partial derivatives of the measure with respect to each parameter. The need for several partial derivatives and several simultaneous equations leads to a natual union of two branches of mathematics— partial differential equations and linear algebra. In general, we would like to not only be able to take the partial derivative of a scalar with respect to another scalar, but to be able to take the partial derivative of a vector with respect to another vector. This generalization is the problem addressed in this section. Other references are also available.[1]

K.1 First derivative of a vector with respect to a vector

Definition K.1.

DEF

$\boldsymbol{x}$ *is a vector with the following properties:*

1. $$\boldsymbol{x} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{(n element column vector)}$$

2. $$\frac{\partial}{\partial x_k} x_j = \bar{\delta}_{kj} \qquad ((x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) \text{ are mutually independent})$$

Definition K.2 (Jacobian matrix). [2] *The* ***gradient of y with respect to x****, as well as the* ***gradient of*** $\boldsymbol{y}^T$ ***with respect to x****, is defined as*

[1] Graham (1981) ⟨Chapter 4⟩, Haykin (2001) ⟨Appendix B⟩, Moon and Stirling (2000) ⟨Appendix E⟩, Scharf (1991), pages 274–276, Trees (2002) ⟨Section A.7⟩, Felippa (1999)

[2] Graham (1981), page 52, Graham (2018), page 529780486824178§"4.2 The Derivatives of Vectors", Scharf (1991), page 274, Trees (2002), page 1398, Anderson (1984) page 13 ⟨§"2.2.5 Transformation of Variables"⟩, Anderson (1958), page 11 ⟨§"2.2.5 Transformation of Variables"⟩

DEF

$$\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \triangleq \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}^T}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \triangleq \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_2} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_n} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}}_{n \times m \text{ matrix}} \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{y} \in \mathbb{C}^m$$

Remark K.1. Depending on whether $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ are scalars or vectors, $\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}$ takes on the following forms:[3]

	y scalar	$\boldsymbol{y}$ vector
x scalar	$\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}$	$\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}{\partial x} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x} \end{bmatrix}$
$\boldsymbol{x}$ vector	$\frac{\partial y}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}$	$\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_2} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_n} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}$

Lemma K.1. *Let $\boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ be a vector. Then*

LEM

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x_k} x_i x_j = \bar{\delta}_{ik} x_j + \bar{\delta}_{jk} x_i = \begin{cases} 2x_k & \text{for } i = j = k \\ x_j & \text{for } i = k \text{ and } j \neq k \\ x_i & \text{for } i \neq k \text{ and } j = k \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Lemma K.2.

LEM

$$\left(\boldsymbol{x}^H \mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{x}\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} x_i^* x_j \qquad \forall \quad \begin{array}{lll} \mathbf{A} \in (\mathbb{C}^n \times \mathbb{C}^n) & (n \times n \text{ array}) & \text{and} \\ \boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{C}^n & (n \text{ element column vector}) & \end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{x}^H \mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{x} &\triangleq \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \end{bmatrix}^* \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} && \text{by definitions of } \mathbf{A} \text{ and } \boldsymbol{x} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \end{bmatrix}^* \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} \\ a_{2i} \\ \vdots \\ a_{ni} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \end{bmatrix}^* \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} \\ a_{2i} \\ \vdots \\ a_{ni} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ji} x_j^* \end{aligned}$$

[3] For the generalization of the partial derivative of a matrix with respect to a matrix, see Graham (1981) ⟨chapter 6⟩. Graham uses *kronecker products* to handle the additional dimensions(?)

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} x_i^* x_j$$

✎

Lemma K.3.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}[\mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\,\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})] = \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})\right] + \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\right]\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x}) \qquad \underbrace{\forall \mathsf{a}, \mathsf{b} : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}}_{\mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x}),\, \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x}) \text{ are functions from a vector } \boldsymbol{x} \text{ to a scalar in } \mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}[\mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\,\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})] &= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}[\mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\,\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})] \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2}[\mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\,\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})] \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_n}[\mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\,\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})] \end{bmatrix} && \text{by definition of } \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} && \text{(Definition K.2 page 257)} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_1} + \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_1} \\ \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_2} + \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots \\ \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_n} + \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix} && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_1} \\ \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_2} \\ \\ \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\frac{\partial \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_1}\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x}) \\ \frac{\partial \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_2}\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x}) \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_n}\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x}) \end{bmatrix} && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \textit{vector addition} \\
&= \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})\left[\frac{\partial \mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\right] + \left[\frac{\partial \mathsf{a}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\right]\mathsf{b}(\boldsymbol{x})
\end{aligned}$$

✎

Theorem K.1. [4]

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{I} \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{x} &= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial x_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial x_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial x_n}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial x_1}{\partial x_2} & \frac{\partial x_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial x_n}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial x_1}{\partial x_n} & \frac{\partial x_2}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \frac{\partial x_n}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix} && \text{by Definition K.2 page 257} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \bar{\delta}_{11} & \bar{\delta}_{21} & \cdots & \bar{\delta}_{n1} \\ \bar{\delta}_{12} & \bar{\delta}_{22} & \cdots & \bar{\delta}_{n2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \bar{\delta}_{1n} & \bar{\delta}_{2n} & \cdots & \bar{\delta}_{nn} \end{bmatrix} && \text{by Definition K.1 page 257 (mutual independence property)}
\end{aligned}$$

[4] Scharf (1991), page 274, Trees (2002), page 1398

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{by definition of kronecker delta function } \bar{\delta}$$

$$= \mathbf{I} \qquad \text{by definition of identity operator } \mathbf{I}$$

✏

Theorem K.2.

THM
$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}) = \mathbf{A}^T + \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} & a_{2i} & \cdots & a_{mi} \end{bmatrix} \right) x_i \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n,\ \mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{C}^m \times \mathbb{C}^n$$

✎PROOF: Let

$$\boldsymbol{x} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{A} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \left(\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} \right) \qquad \text{by definition of } A \text{ and } \boldsymbol{x}$$

$$= \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{1i} x_i \\ \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{2i} x_i \\ \vdots \\ \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{mi} x_i \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{by matrix multiplication}$$

$$= \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} x_i \\ a_{2i} x_i \\ \vdots \\ a_{mi} x_i \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} x_i \\ a_{2i} x_i \\ \vdots \\ a_{mi} x_i \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial a_{1i} x_i}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial a_{2i} x_i}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial a_{mi} x_i}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial a_{1i} x_i}{\partial x_2} & \frac{\partial a_{2i} x_i}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial a_{mi} x_i}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial a_{1i} x_i}{\partial x_n} & \frac{\partial a_{2i} x_i}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \frac{\partial a_{mi} x_i}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{by Definition K.2 page 257}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial a_{1i}}{\partial x_1} x_i & a_{2i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial a_{2i}}{\partial x_1} x_i & \cdots & a_{mi}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial a_{mi}}{\partial x_1} x_i \\ a_{1i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial a_{1i}}{\partial x_2} x_i & a_{2i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial a_{2i}}{\partial x_2} x_i & \cdots & a_{mi}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial a_{mi}}{\partial x_2} x_i \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{1i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_n} + \frac{\partial a_{1i}}{\partial x_n} x_i & a_{2i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_n} + \frac{\partial a_{2i}}{\partial x_n} x_i & \cdots & a_{mi}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_n} + \frac{\partial a_{mi}}{\partial x_n} x_i \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{by Lemma K.3 page 259}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_1} & a_{2i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & a_{mi}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_1} \\ a_{1i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_2} & a_{2i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & a_{mi}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{1i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_n} & a_{2i}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & a_{mi}\frac{\partial x_i}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix} + \sum_{i=1}^{n} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial a_{1i}}{\partial x_1}x_i & \frac{\partial a_{2i}}{\partial x_1}x_i & \cdots & \frac{\partial a_{mi}}{\partial x_1}x_i \\ \frac{\partial a_{1i}}{\partial x_2}x_i & \frac{\partial a_{2i}}{\partial x_2}x_i & \cdots & \frac{\partial a_{mi}}{\partial x_2}x_i \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial a_{1i}}{\partial x_n}x_i & \frac{\partial a_{2i}}{\partial x_n}x_i & \cdots & \frac{\partial a_{mi}}{\partial x_n}x_i \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \begin{bmatrix} a_{1i}\bar{\delta}_{i1} & a_{2i}\bar{\delta}_{i1} & \cdots & a_{mi}\bar{\delta}_{i1} \\ a_{1i}\bar{\delta}_{i2} & a_{2i}\bar{\delta}_{i2} & \cdots & a_{mi}\bar{\delta}_{i2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{1i}\bar{\delta}_{in} & a_{2i}\bar{\delta}_{in} & \cdots & a_{mi}\bar{\delta}_{in} \end{bmatrix} + \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} & a_{2i} & \cdots & a_{mi}\end{bmatrix}\right)x_i \qquad \text{by Lemma K.1}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{21} & \cdots & a_{m1} \\ a_{12} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{m2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{1n} & a_{2n} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} + \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} & a_{2i} & \cdots & a_{mi}\end{bmatrix}\right)x_i \qquad \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta}$$

$$= \mathbf{A}^T + \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} & a_{2i} & \cdots & a_{mi}\end{bmatrix}\right)x_i$$

✏

Theorem K.3 (Affine equations). [5]

THM *$\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are independent of $\mathbf{x}$* $\implies \begin{cases} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{A}^T & \forall \mathbf{x}\in\mathbb{R}^n,\ \mathbf{A}\in\mathbb{C}^m\times\mathbb{C}^n \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{B}\right) = \mathbf{B} & \forall \mathbf{x}\in\mathbb{R}^n,\ \mathbf{B}\in\mathbb{C}^n\times\mathbb{C}^m \end{cases}$

✎PROOF: Let $\mathbf{B} \triangleq \mathbf{A}^T$.

1. Proof that $\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}(A\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{A}^T$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}) &= \mathbf{A}^T + \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} & a_{2i} & \cdots & a_{mi}\end{bmatrix}\right)x_i && \text{by Theorem K.2 page 260} \\
&= \mathbf{A}^T + \sum_{i=1}^{n}\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}a_{1i} & \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}a_{2i} & \cdots & \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}a_{mi}\end{bmatrix}x_i \\
&= \mathbf{A}^T + \underbrace{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0\end{bmatrix}x_i}_{0} && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \mathbf{A}^T
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{B}\right) = \mathbf{B}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{B}\right) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left(\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{A}^T\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B} \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}\left[(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x})^T\right] \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}) && \text{by Definition K.2 page 257} \\
&= \mathbf{A}^T && \text{by Theorem K.3 page 261} \\
&= \mathbf{B} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[5] Graham (1981), page 54, Graham (2018), page 549780486824178§"4.2 The Derivatives of Vectors"

Theorem K.4 (Product rule). [6] *Let* $\boldsymbol{y}$ *and* $\boldsymbol{z}$ *be functions of* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *and*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{z}^T\boldsymbol{y} = \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{z}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{y} + \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{z} \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x}\in\mathbb{R}^n,\ \boldsymbol{y}\in\mathbb{R}^m,\ \boldsymbol{z}\in\mathbb{R}^m$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{z}^T\boldsymbol{y} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\sum_{k=1}^{m} z_k y_k \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{m}\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} z_k y_k \\
&= \sum_{k=1}^{m}\frac{\partial z_k}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} y_k + \sum_{k=1}^{m}\frac{\partial y_k}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} z_k && \text{by Lemma K.3 page 259} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_1}y_1 & + & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_1}y_2 & + & \cdots & + & \frac{\partial z_n}{\partial x_1}y_n \\
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_1}y_1 & + & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_1}y_2 & + & \cdots & + & \frac{\partial z_n}{\partial x_1}y_n \\
\vdots & & & & \ddots & & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_1}y_1 & + & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_1}y_2 & + & \cdots & + & \frac{\partial z_n}{\partial x_1}y_n
\end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1}z_1 & + & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1}z_2 & + & \cdots & + & \frac{\partial y_n}{\partial x_1}z_n \\
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1}z_1 & + & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1}z_2 & + & \cdots & + & \frac{\partial y_n}{\partial x_1}z_n \\
\vdots & & & & \ddots & & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1}z_1 & + & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1}z_2 & + & \cdots & + & \frac{\partial y_n}{\partial x_1}z_n
\end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_n}{\partial x_1} \\
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_n}{\partial x_1} \\
\vdots & & \ddots & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_n}{\partial x_1}
\end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_n}{\partial x_1} \\
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_n}{\partial x_1} \\
\vdots & & \ddots & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_n}{\partial x_1}
\end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \\ \vdots \\ z_n \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{z}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{y} + \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{z}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem K.5.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\left(\boldsymbol{x}^T\boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{x}\right) = \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{A}^T\boldsymbol{x} + \left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} & a_{2i} & \cdots & a_{ni}\end{bmatrix}\right)x_i\right]\boldsymbol{x} \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x}\in\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbf{A}\in\mathbb{R}^n\times\mathbb{R}^n$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\left(\boldsymbol{x}^T\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}\right) &= \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{x}\right]\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}\right]\boldsymbol{x} && \text{by Theorem K.4 page 262} \\
&= \mathbf{I}\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \left[\mathbf{A}^T + \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} & a_{2i} & \cdots & a_{ni}\end{bmatrix}\right)x_i\right]\boldsymbol{x} && \text{by Theorem K.1 and Theorem K.2} \\
&= \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{A}^T\boldsymbol{x} + \left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} & a_{2i} & \cdots & a_{ni}\end{bmatrix}\right)x_i\right]\boldsymbol{x} && \text{by definition of identity operator } \mathbf{I}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem K.6 (Quadratic form). [7]

$$\boldsymbol{A} \text{ is independent of } \boldsymbol{x} \quad\Longrightarrow\quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\left(\boldsymbol{x}^T\boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{x}\right) = \boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{A}^T\boldsymbol{x} \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x}\in\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbf{A}\in\mathbb{R}^n\times\mathbb{R}^n$$

[6] Scharf (1991), page 274, Trees (2002), page 1398
[7] Graham (1981), page 54

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\left(\boldsymbol{x}^T \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}\right) &= \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{x}\right]\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}\right]\boldsymbol{x} && \text{by Theorem K.4 page 262}\\
&= \mathbf{I}\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{A}^T\boldsymbol{x} && \text{by Theorem K.1 page 259 and Theorem K.3 page 261}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Corollary K.1. [8]

COR
$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{x}^T\boldsymbol{x}) = 2\boldsymbol{x} \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{x}^T\boldsymbol{x}) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{x}^T\mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by property of identity operator } I\\
&= \mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{I}^T\boldsymbol{x} && \text{by previous result 3.}\\
&= \boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{x} && \text{by property of identity operator } I\\
&= 2\boldsymbol{x}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem K.7 (Chain rule). [9] *Let* $\boldsymbol{z}$ *be a function of* $\boldsymbol{y}$ *and* $\boldsymbol{y}$ *a function of* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *and*

$$\boldsymbol{x} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} x_1\\ x_2\\ \vdots\\ x_n\end{bmatrix} \qquad \boldsymbol{y} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} y_1\\ y_2\\ \vdots\\ y_m\end{bmatrix} \qquad \boldsymbol{z} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} z_1\\ z_2\\ \vdots\\ z_k\end{bmatrix}$$

THM
$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\boldsymbol{z} = \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{z}}{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{z}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}} &= \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_k}{\partial x_1}\\
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_2} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_k}{\partial x_2}\\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots\\
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial x_n} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_k}{\partial x_n}
\end{bmatrix}\\
&= \begin{bmatrix}
\sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_1} & \sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_2}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_k}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_1}\\
\sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_2} & \sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_2}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_k}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_2}\\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots\\
\sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_n} & \sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_2}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \sum_{j=0}^{m}\frac{\partial z_k}{\partial y_j}\frac{\partial y_j}{\partial x_n}
\end{bmatrix}\\
&= \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_1}\\
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_2} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_2}\\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots\\
\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_n} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_n}
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial y_1} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial y_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_k}{\partial y_1}\\
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial y_2} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial y_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_k}{\partial y_2}\\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots\\
\frac{\partial z_1}{\partial y_m} & \frac{\partial z_2}{\partial y_m} & \cdots & \frac{\partial z_k}{\partial y_m}
\end{bmatrix}\\
&= \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{z}}{\partial \boldsymbol{y}}
\end{aligned}$$

[8] Graham (1981), page 54
[9] Graham (1981), pages 54–55

K.2 First derivative of a matrix with respect to a scalar

Definition K.3. *Let* $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $\{y_{jk} \in \mathbb{C} | j = 1, 2, \ldots, m;\ k = 1, 2, \ldots, n\}$ *and*

$$Y = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & \cdots & y_{1n} \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & \cdots & y_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{m1} & y_{m2} & \cdots & y_{mn} \end{bmatrix}}_{m \times n \text{ matrix}}$$

The ***derivative of*** Y ***with respect to*** x *is*

DEF

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}Y}{\mathrm{d}x} \triangleq \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{11}}{\mathrm{d}x} & \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{12}}{\mathrm{d}x} & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{1n}}{\mathrm{d}x} \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{21}}{\mathrm{d}x} & \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{22}}{\mathrm{d}x} & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{2n}}{\mathrm{d}x} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{m1}}{\mathrm{d}x} & \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{m2}}{\mathrm{d}x} & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}y_{mn}}{\mathrm{d}x} \end{bmatrix}}_{m \times n \text{ matrix}}$$

Theorem K.8. [10] *Let* $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $\{y_{jp} \in \mathbb{C} | j = 1, 2, \ldots, m;\ p = 1, 2, \ldots, n\}$, $\{w_{jp} \in \mathbb{C} | j = 1, 2, \ldots, n;\ p = 1, 2, \ldots, k\}$, *and*

$$Y = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & \cdots & y_{1n} \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & \cdots & y_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{m1} & y_{m2} & \cdots & y_{mn} \end{bmatrix}}_{m \times n \text{ matrix}} \qquad W = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} w_{11} & w_{12} & \cdots & w_{1k} \\ w_{21} & w_{22} & \cdots & w_{2k} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ w_{p1} & w_{p2} & \cdots & w_{pk} \end{bmatrix}}_{p \times k \text{ matrix}}$$

THM

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(Y + W\right) &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}Y + \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}W && (\text{for } p = m,\ k = n) \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(YW\right) &= \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}Y\right)W + Y\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}W\right) && (\text{for } p = n) \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(Y^T\right) &= \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}Y\right)^T && \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(Y^{-1}\right) &= -Y^{-1}\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}Y\right)Y^{-1} && (\text{for } m = n \text{ and } Y \text{ invertible}) \end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(Y + W\right) &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(\begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & \cdots & y_{1n} \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & \cdots & y_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{m1} & y_{m2} & \cdots & y_{mn} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} w_{11} & w_{12} & \cdots & w_{1n} \\ w_{21} & w_{22} & \cdots & w_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ w_{m1} & w_{m2} & \cdots & w_{mn} \end{bmatrix}\right) \\ &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\begin{bmatrix} y_{11} + w_{11} & y_{12} + w_{12} & \cdots & y_{1n} + w_{1n} \\ y_{21} + w_{21} & y_{22} + w_{22} & \cdots & y_{2n} + w_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{m1} + w_{m1} & y_{m2} + w_{m2} & \cdots & y_{mn} + w_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

[10] Gradshteyn and Ryzhik (1980), pages 1106–1107

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \begin{bmatrix} (y_{11}+w_{11})' & (y_{12}+w_{12})' & \cdots & (y_{1n}+w_{1n})' \\ (y_{21}+w_{21})' & (y_{22}+w_{22})' & \cdots & (y_{2n}+w_{2n})' \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ (y_{m1}+w_{m1})' & (y_{m2}+w_{m2})' & \cdots & (y_{mn}+w_{mn})' \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} y'_{11}+w'_{11} & y'_{12}+w'_{12} & \cdots & y'_{1n}+w'_{1n} \\ y'_{21}+w'_{21} & y'_{22}+w'_{22} & \cdots & y'_{2n}+w'_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y'_{m1}+w'_{m1} & y'_{m2}+w'_{m2} & \cdots & y'_{mn}+w'_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} y'_{11} & y'_{12} & \cdots & y'_{1n} \\ y'_{21} & y'_{22} & \cdots & y'_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y'_{m1} & y'_{m2} & \cdots & y'_{mn} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} w'_{11} & w'_{12} & \cdots & w'_{1n} \\ w'_{21} & w'_{22} & \cdots & w'_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ w'_{m1} & w'_{m2} & \cdots & w'_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & \cdots & y_{1n} \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & \cdots & y_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{m1} & y_{m2} & \cdots & y_{mn} \end{bmatrix} + \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\begin{bmatrix} w_{11} & w_{12} & \cdots & w_{1n} \\ w_{21} & w_{22} & \cdots & w_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ w_{m1} & w_{m2} & \cdots & w_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}Y + \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}W
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(YW\right) &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(\begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & \cdots & y_{1n} \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & \cdots & y_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{m1} & y_{m2} & \cdots & y_{mn} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} w_{11} & w_{12} & \cdots & w_{1k} \\ w_{21} & w_{22} & \cdots & w_{2k} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ w_{n1} & w_{n2} & \cdots & w_{nk} \end{bmatrix}\right) \\
&= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\begin{bmatrix} \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{1j}w_{j1} & \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{1j}w_{j2} & \cdots & \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{1j}w_{jk} \\ \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{2j}w_{j1} & \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{2j}w_{j2} & \cdots & \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{2j}w_{jk} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{mj}w_{j1} & \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{mj}w_{j2} & \cdots & \sum_{j=1}^{n} y_{mj}w_{jk} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\begin{bmatrix} y_{1j}w_{j1} & y_{1j}w_{j2} & \cdots & y_{1j}w_{jk} \\ y_{2j}w_{j1} & y_{2j}w_{j2} & \cdots & y_{2j}w_{jk} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{mj}w_{j1} & y_{mj}w_{j2} & \cdots & y_{mj}w_{jk} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\begin{bmatrix} y_{1j}w_{j1} & y_{1j}w_{j2} & \cdots & y_{1j}w_{jk} \\ y_{2j}w_{j1} & y_{2j}w_{j2} & \cdots & y_{2j}w_{jk} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{mj}w_{j1} & y_{mj}w_{j2} & \cdots & y_{mj}w_{jk} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n}\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{1j}w_{j1}) & \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{1j}w_{j2}) & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{1j}w_{jk}) \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{2j}w_{j1}) & \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{2j}w_{j2}) & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{2j}w_{jk}) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{mj}w_{j1}) & \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{mj}w_{j2}) & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}(y_{mj}w_{jk}) \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n}\begin{bmatrix} \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y'_{1j}w_{j1}+y_{1j}w'_{j1} & y'_{1j}w_{j2}+y_{1j}w'_{j2} & \cdots & y'_{1j}w_{jk}+y_{1j}w'_{jk} \\ y'_{2j}w_{j1}+y_{2j}w'_{j1} & y'_{2j}w_{j2}+y_{2j}w'_{j2} & \cdots & y'_{2j}w_{jk}+y_{2j}w'_{jk} \\ y'_{mj}w_{j1}+y_{mj}w'_{j1} & y'_{mj}w_{j2}+y_{mj}w'_{j2} & \cdots & y'_{mj}w_{jk}+y_{mj}w'_{jk} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n} \left(\begin{bmatrix} y'_{1j} w_{j1} & y'_{1j} w_{j2} & \cdots & y'_{1j} w_{jk} \\ y'_{2j} w_{j1} & y'_{2j} w_{j2} & \cdots & y'_{2j} w_{jk} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y'_{mj} w_{j1} & y'_{mj} w_{j2} & \cdots & y'_{mj} w_{jk} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} y_{1j} w'_{j1} & y_{1j} w'_{j2} & \cdots & y_{1j} w'_{jk} \\ y_{2j} w'_{j1} & y_{2j} w'_{j2} & \cdots & y_{2j} w'_{jk} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{mj} w'_{j1} & y_{mj} w'_{j2} & \cdots & y_{mj} w'_{jk} \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

$$= \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} Y \right) W + Y \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} W \right)$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(Y^T\right) = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} \left(\begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & \cdots & y_{1n} \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & \cdots & y_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{m1} & y_{m2} & \cdots & y_{mn} \end{bmatrix}^T \right)$$

$$= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} \begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{21} & \cdots & y_{n1} \\ y_{12} & y_{22} & \cdots & y_{n2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{1n} & y_{2n} & \cdots & y_{nm} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} y'_{11} & y'_{21} & \cdots & y'_{n1} \\ y'_{12} & y'_{22} & \cdots & y'_{n2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y'_{1n} & y'_{2n} & \cdots & y'_{nm} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} y'_{11} & y'_{12} & \cdots & y'_{1n} \\ y'_{21} & y'_{22} & \cdots & y'_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y'_{m1} & y'_{m2} & \cdots & y'_{mn} \end{bmatrix}^T$$

$$= \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} \begin{bmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & \cdots & y_{1n} \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & \cdots & y_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_{m1} & y_{m2} & \cdots & y_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \right)^T$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\left(Y^{-1}\right) = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} \frac{\mathrm{adj} Y}{|Y|}$$

$\vdots$

no proof at this time

$\vdots$

$$= -Y^{-1} \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} Y \right) Y^{-1}$$

✏

K.3 Second derivative of a scalar with respect to a vector

Definition K.4. [11] *Let*

$$\boldsymbol{x} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix}$$

[11] Lieb and Loss (2001), page 240, Horn and Johnson (1990), page 167

*The **Hessian matrix** of a scalar y with respect to the vector $\boldsymbol{x}$ is*

DEF

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}^2} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}}\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_n} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_n}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial}{\partial x_n}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial}{\partial x_n}\frac{\partial y}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}}_{n \times n \text{ matrix}}$$

K.4 Multiple derivatives of a vector with respect to a scalar

Definition K.5. *Let*

$$\boldsymbol{y} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_m \end{bmatrix}$$

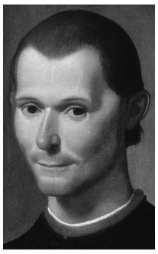
The derivative of a vector $\boldsymbol{y}$ with respect to the scalar x is

DEF

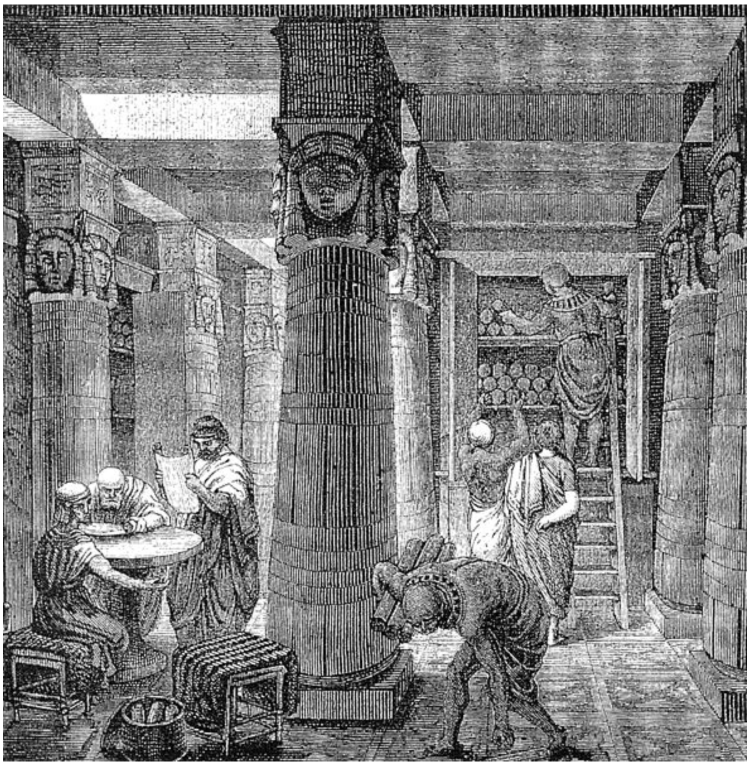
$$\begin{bmatrix} \boldsymbol{y} \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\boldsymbol{y} \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\boldsymbol{y} \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}x^n}\boldsymbol{y} \end{bmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & \cdots & y_m \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}y_1 & \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}y_2 & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}y_m \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}y_1 & \frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}y_2 & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}y_m \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}x^n}y_1 & \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}x^n}y_2 & \cdots & \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}x^n}y_m \end{bmatrix}}_{(n+1) \times m \text{ matrix}}$$

Back Matter

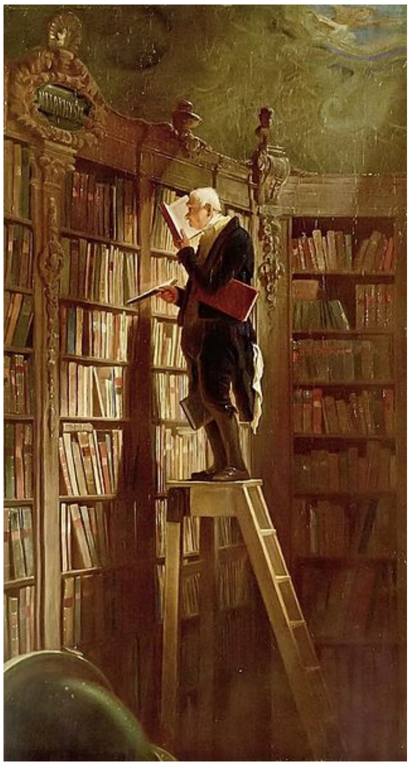
❝*It appears to me that if one wants to make progress in mathematics, one should study the masters and not the pupils.*❞
Niels Henrik Abel (1802–1829), Norwegian mathematician [12]



❝*When evening comes, I return home and go to my study. On the threshold I strip naked, taking off my muddy, sweaty workaday clothes, and put on the robes of court and palace, and in this graver dress I enter the courts of the ancients and am welcomed by them, and there I taste the food that alone is mine, and for which I was born. And there I make bold to speak to them and ask the motives of their actions, and they, in their humanity reply to me. And for the space of four hours I forget the world, remember no vexation, fear poverty no more, tremble no more at death; I pass indeed into their world.*❞
Niccolò Machiavelli (1469–1527), Italian political philosopher, in a 1513 letter to friend Francesco Vettori. [13]



ancient library of Alexandria



The Book Worm by *Carl Spitzweg*, circa 1850

[14]

❝*To sit alone in the lamplight with a book spread out before you, and hold intimate converse with men of unseen generations—such is a pleasure beyond compare.*❞
Yoshida Kenko (Urabe Kaneyoshi) (1283? – 1350?), Japanese author and Buddhist monk [15]

---

[12] quote: Simmons (2007), page 187.
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Niels_Henrik_Abel.jpg, public domain

[13] quote: Machiavelli (1961), page 139?.
image: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Santi_di_Tito_-_Niccolo_Machiavelli%27s_portrait_headcrop.jpg, public domain

[14] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ancientlibraryalex.jpg, public domain http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Carl_Spitzweg_021.jpg,

[15] quote: Kenko (circa 1330)
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yoshida_Kenko

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Milton Abramowitz and Irene A. Stegun, editors. *Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables*. National Bureau of Standards, 1972. URL http://www.cs.bham.ac.uk/~aps/research/projects/as/book.php.

Charalambos D. Aliprantis and Owen Burkinshaw. *Principles of Real Analysis*. Acedemic Press, London, 3 edition, 1998. ISBN 9780120502578. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0120502577.

Theodore Wilbur Anderson. *An introduction to multivariate statistical analysis*. Wiley series in probability and mathematical statistics. Wiley, 1 edition, 1958. URL https://books.google.com/books?id=7YpqAAAAMAAJ.

Theodore Wilbur Anderson. *An Introduction to Multivariate Statistical Analysis*, volume 114 of *Wiley Series in Probability and Statistics—Applied Probability and Statistics Section Series*. Wiley, 2 edition, 1984. ISBN 9780471889878. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780471889878.

George E. Andrews, Richard Askey, and Ranjan Roy. *Special Functions*, volume 71 of *Encyclopedia of mathematics and its applications*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, U.K., new edition, February 15 2001. ISBN 0521789885. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521789885.

Léon Autonne. Sur l'hermitien (on the hermitian). In *Comptes Rendus Des SéAnces De L'AcadéMie Des Sciences*, volume 133, pages 209–268. De L'Académie des sciences (Academy of Sciences), Paris, 1901. URL http://visualiseur.bnf.fr/Visualiseur?O=NUMM-3089. Comptes Rendus Des SéAnces De L'AcadéMie Des Sciences (Reports Of the Meetings Of the Academy of Science).

Léon Autonne. Sur l'hermitien (on the hermitian). *Rendiconti del Circolo Matematico di Palermo*, 16:104–128, 1902. Rendiconti del Circolo Matematico di Palermo (Statements of the Mathematical Circle of Palermo).

George Bachman. *Elements of Abstract Harmonic Analysis*. Academic paperbacks. Academic Press, New York, 1964. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=ZP8-AAAAIAAJ.

George Bachman and Lawrence Narici. *Functional Analysis*. Academic Press textbooks in mathematics; Pure and Applied Mathematics Series. Academic Press, 1 edition, 1966. ISBN 9780486402512. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486402517. “unabridged republication” available from Dover (isbn 0486402517).

George Bachman, Lawrence Narici, and Edward Beckenstein. *Fourier and Wavelet Analysis*. Universitext Series. Springer, 2000. ISBN 9780387988993. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387988998.

Stefan Banach. Sur les opérations dans les ensembles abstraits et leur applications aux équations intégrales (on abstract operations and their applications to the integral equations). *Fundamenta Mathematicae*, 3:133–181, 1922. URL http://matwbn.icm.edu.pl/ksiazki/fm/fm3/fm3120.pdf.

Stefan Banach. *Théorie des opérations linéaires*. Monografje Matematyczne, Warsaw, Poland, 1932a. URL http://matwbn.icm.edu.pl/kstresc.php?tom=1&wyd=10. (Theory of linear operations).

Stefan Banach. *Theory of Linear Operations*, volume 38 of *North-Holland mathematical library*. North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1932b. ISBN 0444701842. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0444701842/. English translation of 1932 French edition, published in 1987.

Julius S. Bendat and Allan G. Piersol. *Measurement and Analysis of Random Data*. John Wiley & Sons, 1966.

Julius S. Bendat and Allan G. Piersol. *Engineering Applications of Correlation and Spectral Analysis*. John Wiley & Sons, 1980. ISBN 9780471058878. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0471058874.

Julius S. Bendat and Allan G. Piersol. *Random Data: Analysis and Measurement Procedures*, volume 729 of *Wiley Series in Probability and Statistics*. John Wiley & Sons, 4 edition, 2010. ISBN 9781118210826. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1118210824.

John Benedetto and Ahmed I. Zayed, editors. *A Prelude to Sampling, Wavelets, and Tomography*, pages 1–32. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Springer, 2004. ISBN 9780817643041. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817643044.

Sterling Khazag Berberian. *Introduction to Hilbert Space*. Oxford University Press, New York, 1961. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821819127.

M. Bertero and P. Boccacci. *Introduction to Inverse Problems in Imaging*. CRC Press, 1998. ISBN 9781439822067. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9781439822067.

Béla Bollobás. *Linear Analysis; an introductory course*. Cambridge mathematical textbooks. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2 edition, March 1 1999. ISBN 978-0521655774. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521655773.

William M. Bolstad. *Introduction to Bayesian Statistics*. Wiley, 2 edition, 2007. ISBN 9780470141151. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780470141151.

Umberto Bottazzini. *The Higher Calculus: A History of Real and Complex Analysis from Euler to Weierstrass*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1986. ISBN 0-387-96302-2. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387963022.

A. Böttcher and B. Silbermann. *Introduction to Large Truncated Toeplitz Matrices*. Springer, 1999. ISBN 9780387985701. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780387985701.

Carl Benjamin Boyer and Uta C. Merzbach. *A History of Mathematics*. Wiley, New York, 2 edition, 1991. ISBN 0471543977. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0471543977.

Ronald Newbold Bracewell. *The Fourier transform and its applications*. McGraw-Hill electrical and electronic engineering series. McGraw-Hill, 2, illustrated, international student edition edition, 1978. ISBN 9780070070134. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN007007013X.

Florian Cajori. A history of mathematical notations; notations mainly in higher mathematics. In *A History of Mathematical Notations; Two Volumes Bound as One*, volume 2. Dover, Mineola, New York, USA, 1993. ISBN 0-486-67766-4. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486677664. reprint of 1929 edition by *The Open Court Publishing Company*.

Peter G. Casazza and Mark C. Lammers. *Bracket Products for Weyl-Heisenberg Frames*, pages 71–98. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, 1998. ISBN 9780817639594.

Sung C. Choi. *Introductory applied statistics in science*. Prentice-Hall, 1978. ISBN 9780135016190. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780135016190.

Alexandre J. Chorin and Ole H. Hald. *Stochastic Tools in Mathematics and Science*, volume 1 of *Surveys and Tutorials in the Applied Mathematical Sciences*. Springer, New York, 2 edition, 2009. ISBN 978-1-4419-1001-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9781441910011.

Ole Christensen. *An Introduction to Frames and Riesz Bases*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, Boston/Basel/Berlin, 2003. ISBN 0-8176-4295-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817642951.

Peter M. Clarkson. *Optimal and Adaptive Signal Processing*. Electronic Engineering Systems Series. CRC Press, 1993. ISBN 0849386098.

T.M. Cover and Joy A. Thomas. *Elements of Information Theory*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1991. ISBN 0-471-06259-6. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0471062596.

I. Csiszar. Information-type measures of difference of probability functions and indirect observations. *Studia Scientiarum Mathematicarum Hungarica*, 2:299–318, 1961.

Xingde Dai and David R. Larson. *Wandering vectors for unitary systems and orthogonal wavelets*. Number 640 in Memoirs of the American Mathematical Society. American Mathematical Society, Providence R.I., July 1998. ISBN 0821808001. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821808001.

Xingde Dai and Shijie Lu. Wavelets in subspaces. *Michigan Math. J.*, 43(1):81–98, 1996. doi: 10.1307/mmj/1029005391. URL http://projecteuclid.org/euclid.mmj/1029005391.

Charles Jean de la Vallée-Poussin. Sur l'intégrale de lebesgue. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*, 16(4):435–501, October 1915. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/1988879.

René Descartes. *Discours de la méthode pour bien conduire sa raison, et chercher la verite' dans les sciences*. Jan Maire, Leiden, 1637a. URL http://www.gutenberg.org/etext/13846.

René Descartes. *Discourse on the Method of Rightly Conducting the Reason in the Search for Truth in the Sciences*. 1637b. URL http://www.gutenberg.org/etext/59.

René Descartes. *Regulae ad directionem ingenii*. 1684a. URL http://www.fh-augsburg.de/~harsch/Chronologia/Lspost17/Descartes/des_re00.html.

René Descartes. *Rules for Direction of the Mind*. 1684b. URL http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/Rules_for_the_Direction_of_the_Mind.

Jean Alexandre Dieudonné. *Foundations of Modern Analysis*. Academic Press, New York, 1969. ISBN 1406727911. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1406727911.

Nelson Dunford and Jacob T. Schwartz. *Linear operators. Part 1, General Theory*, volume 7 of *Pure and applied mathematics*. Interscience Publishers, New York, 1957. ISBN 0471226394. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0471608483. with the assistance of William G. Bade and Robert G. Bartle.

Yuli Eidelman, Vitali D. Milman, and Antonis Tsolomitis. *Functional Analysis: An Introduction*, volume 66 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, 2004. ISBN 0821836463. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821836463.

Leonhard Euler. *Introductio in analysin infinitorum*, volume 1. Marcum-Michaelem Bousquet & Socios, Lausannæ, 1748. URL http://www.math.dartmouth.edu/~euler/pages/E101.html. Introduction to the Analysis of the Infinite.

Leonhard Euler. *Introduction to the Analysis of the Infinite*. Springer, 1988. ISBN 0387968245. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387968245. translation of 1748 Introductio in analysin infinitorum.

David Ewen. *The Book of Modern Composers*. Alfred A. Knopf, New York, 1950. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=yHw4AAAAIAAJ.

David Ewen. *The New Book of Modern Composers*. Alfred A. Knopf, New York, 3 edition, 1961. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=bZIaAAAAMAAJ.

Robert M. Fano. The transmission of information. Technical Report 65, Research Laboratory of Electronics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, March 17 1949. URL http://hcs64.com/files/fano-tr65-ocr.pdf.

Carlos A. Felippa. *Matrix Calculus*. University of Colorado at Boulder, August 18 1999. URL http://caswww.colorado.edu/courses.d/IFEM.d/.

R. A. Fisher. On the mathematical foundations of theoretical statistics. *Philosophical Transacations of the Royal Society*, January 1922. URL https://doi.org/10.1098/rsta.1922.0009.

G.L. Fix and G. Strang. Fourier analysis of the finite element method in ritz-galerkin theory. *Studies in Applied Mathematics*, 48:265–273, 1969.

Francis J. Flanigan. *Complex Variables; Harmonic and Analytic Functions*. Dover, New York, 1983. ISBN 9780486613888. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486613887.

Gerald B. Folland. *Fourier Analysis and its Applications*. Wadsworth & Brooks / Cole Advanced Books & Software, Pacific Grove, California, USA, 1992. ISBN 0-534-17094-3. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0534170943.

Brigitte Forster and Peter Massopust, editors. *Four Short Courses on Harmonic Analysis: Wavelets, Frames, Time-Frequency Methods, and Applications to Signal and Image Analysis*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Springer, November 19 2009. ISBN 9780817648909. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817648909.

Jean-Baptiste-Joseph Fourier. *Théorie Analytique de la Chaleur (The Analytical Theory of Heat)*. Chez Firmin Didot, pere et fils, Paris, 1822. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=04X2vlqZx7hydlQUWEq&id=TDQJAAAAIAAJ.

Jean-Baptiste-Joseph Fourier. *The Analytical Theory of Heat (Théorie Analytique de la Chaleur)*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, February 20 1878. URL http://www.archive.org/details/analyticaltheory00fourrich. 1878 English translation of the original 1822 French edition. A 2003 Dover edition is also available: isbn 0486495310.

Ferdinand Georg Frobenius. Uber lineare substitutionen und bilineare formen. *Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik (Crelle's Journal)*, 84:1–63, 1878. ISSN 0075-4102. URL http://www.digizeitschriften.de/home/services/pdfterms/?ID=509796.

Ferdinand Georg Frobenius. Uber lineare substitutionen und bilineare formen. In Jean Pierre Serre, editor, *Gesammelte Abhandlungen (Collected Papers)*, volume I, pages 343–405. Springer, Berlin, 1968. URL http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/253015. reprint of Frobenius' 1878 paper.

Dennis Gabor. Theory of communication. *Journal of the Institution of Electrical Engineers*, 93(26): 429–457, November 1946. URL http://bigwww.epfl.ch/chaudhury/gabor.pdf.

Robert G. Gallager. *Information Theory and Reliable Communication*. Wiley, 1968. ISBN 0471290483. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0471290483.

Carl Friedrich Gauss. *Carl Friedrich Gauss Werke*, volume 8. Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften, B.G. Teubneur In Leipzig, Göttingen, 1900. URL http://gdz.sub.uni-goettingen.de/dms/load/img/?PPN=PPN236010751.

Israel M. Gelfand and Mark A. Naimark. *Normed Rings with an Involution and their Representations*, pages 240–274. Chelsea Publishing Company, Bronx, 1964. ISBN 0821820222. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821820222.

John Robilliard Giles. *Introduction to the Analysis of Normed Linear Spaces*. Number 13 in Australian Mathematical Society lecture series. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2000. ISBN 0-521-65375-4. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521653754.

T. N. T. Goodman, S. L. Lee, and W. S. Tang. Wavelets in wandering subspaces. *Transactions of the A.M.S.*, 338(2):639–654, August 1993a. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/2154421. Transactions of the American Mathematical Society.

T. N. T. Goodman, S. L. Lee, and W. S. Tang. Wavelets in wandering subspaces. *Advances in Computational Mathematics 1*, pages 109–126, February 1993b.

Jaideva C. Goswami and Andrew K. Chan. *Fundamentals of Wavelets; Theory, Algorithms, and Applications*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1999. ISBN 0-471-19748-3. URL http://vadkudr.boom.ru/Collection/fundwave_contents.html.

I.S. Gradshteyn and I.M. Ryzhik. *Table of Integrals, Series, and Products*. 1980. ISBN 0-12-294760-6. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0122947606.

Alexander Graham. *Kronecker Products and Matrix Calculus: With Applications*. Ellis Horwood Series; Mathematics and its Applications. Ellis Horwood Limited, Chichester, 1981. ISBN 0-85312-391-8. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0853123918.

Alexander Graham. *Kronecker Products and Matrix Calculus: With Applications*. Dover Books on Mathematics. Courier Dover Publications, 2018. ISBN 9780486824178. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780486824178.

Robert M. Gray. Toeplitz and circulant matrices: A review. Technical Report AD0727139, Stanford University California Stanford Electronics Labs, Norwell, Massachusetts, June 1971. URL https://apps.dtic.mil/docs/citations/AD0727139.

Robert M. Gray. Toeplitz and circulant matrices: A review. *Foundations and Trends® in Communications and Information Theory*, 2(3):155–239, January 31 2006. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.1561/0100000006. URL https://ee.stanford.edu/~gray/toeplitz.pdf.

Ulf Grenander and Gábor Szegö. *Toeplitz Forms and Their Applications*. California monographs in mathematical sciences. University of California Press, 1958. URL https://www.worldcat.org/title/toeplitz-forms-and-their-applications/oclc/648601989.

Ulf Grenander and Gábor Szegö. *Toeplitz Forms and Their Applications*. Chelsea Publishing Company, 2 edition, 1984. ISBN 9780828403214. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780828403214.

Norman B. Haaser and Joseph A. Sullivan. *Real Analysis*. Dover Publications, New York, 1991. ISBN 0-486-66509-7. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486665097.

Paul R. Halmos. *Finite Dimensional Vector Spaces*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1 edition, 1948. ISBN 0691090955. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0691090955.

Paul R. Halmos. *Finite Dimensional Vector Spaces*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 2 edition, 1958. ISBN 0-387-90093-4. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0387900934.

Paul R. Halmos. *Intoduction to Hilbert Space and the Theory of Spectral Multiplicity*. Chelsea Publishing Company, New York, 2 edition, 1998. ISBN 0821813781. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821813781.

Godfrey H. Hardy. *A Mathematician's Apology*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1940. URL http://www.math.ualberta.ca/~mss/misc/A%20Mathematician's%20Apology.pdf.

Ralph V. L. Hartley. Transmission of information. *Bell System Technical Journal*, 7(3):535–563, July 1928. doi: https://doi.org/10.1002/j.1538-7305.1928.tb01236.x. URL http://dotrose.com/etext/90_Miscellaneous/transmission_of_information_1928b.pdf. https://doi.org/10.1002/j.1538-7305.1928.tb01236.x, "Presented at the International Congress of Telegraphy and Telephony, Lake Como, Italy, September 1927.".

Felix Hausdorff. *Set Theory*. Chelsea Publishing Company, New York, 3 edition, 1937. ISBN 0828401195. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0828401195. 1957 translation of the 1937 German *Grundzüge der Mengenlehre*.

S. Haykin and S. Kesler. *Prediction-Error Filtering and Maximum-Entropy Spectral Estimation*, volume 34 of *Topics in Applied Physics*, pages 9–72. Springer-Verlag, 1 edition, 1979.

S. Haykin and S. Kesler. *Prediction-Error Filtering and Maximum-Entropy Spectral Estimation*, volume 34 of *Topics in Applied Physics*, pages 9–72. Springer-Verlag, "second corrected and updated edition" edition, 1983.

Simon Haykin. *Adaptive Filter Theory*. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, 4 edition, September 24 2001. ISBN 978-0130901262. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0130901261.

Jean Van Heijenoort. *From Frege to Gödel : A Source Book in Mathematical Logic, 1879-1931*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1967. URL http://www.hup.harvard.edu/catalog/VANFGX.html.

Christopher Heil. *A Basis Theory Primer*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, Boston, expanded edition edition, 2011. ISBN 9780817646868. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780817646868.

Christopher E. Heil and David F. Walnut. Continuous and discrete wavelet transforms. *Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics*, 31(4), December 1989. URL http://citeseer.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/download?doi=10.1.1.132.1241&rep=rep1&type=pdf.

John Rowland Higgins. *Sampling Theory in Fourier and Signal Analysis: Foundations*. Oxford Science Publications. Oxford University Press, August 1 1996. ISBN 9780198596998. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0198596995.

David Hilbert, Lothar Nordheim, and John von Neumann. über die grundlagen der quantenmechanik (on the bases of quantum mechanics). *Mathematische Annalen*, 98:1–30, 1927. ISSN 0025-5831 (print) 1432-1807 (online). URL http://dz-srv1.sub.uni-goettingen.de/cache/toc/D27776.html.

Roger A. Horn and Charles R. Johnson. *Matrix Analysis*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1990. ISBN 0-521-30586-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0521305861. Library: QA188H66 1985.

Alfred Edward Housman. *More Poems*. Alfred A. Knopf, 1936. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=rTMiAAAAMAAJ.

Shun ichi Amari. *Differential-Geometrical Methods in Statistics*, volume 28 of *Lecture Notes in Statistics*. Springer Science & Business Media, 2012. ISBN 9781461250562. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1461250560.

Julius O. Smith III. *Introduction to Digital Filters*. URL http://www-ccrma.stanford.edu/~jos/filters/.

Umran S. Inan and Aziz S. Inan. *Electromagnetic Waves*. Prentice Hall, 2000. ISBN 0-201-36179-5. URL http://www-star.stanford.edu/~/umran.html.

Klaus Jänich. *Topology*. Undergraduate Texts in Mathamatics. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1984. ISBN 0387908927. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0387908927. translated from German edition *Topologie*.

A. J. E. M. Janssen. The zak transform: A signal transform for sampled time-continuous signals. *Philips Journal of Research*, 43(1):23–69, 1988.

Bjorn Jawerth and Wim Sweldens. An overview of wavelet based multiresolutional analysis. *SIAM Review*, 36:377–412, September 1994. URL http://cm.bell-labs.com/who/wim/papers/papers.html#overview.

Alan Jeffrey and Hui Hui Dai. *Handbook of Mathematical Formulas and Integrals*. Handbook of Mathematical Formulas and Integrals Series. Academic Press, 4 edition, January 18 2008. ISBN 9780080556840. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0080556841.

Iain M. Johnstone and Bernard W. Silverman. Wavelet threshold estimators for data with correlated noise. *Royal Statistical Society*, 59(2):319–351, 1997. doi: https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-9868.00071. URL http://citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/download?doi=10.1.1.50.9891&rep=rep1&type=pdf.

David W. Kammler. *A First Course in Fourier Analysis*. Cambridge University Press, 2 edition, 2008. ISBN 9780521883405. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521883407.

Ming-Seng Kao. Digital communications lecture notes. September 2004 – January 2005 2005. URL http://cmbsd.cm.nctu.edu.tw/~icm5201/digicom/.

Edward Kasner and James Roy Newman. *Mathematics and the Imagination*. Simon and Schuster, 1940. ISBN 0486417034. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486417034. "unabridged and unaltered republication" available from Dover.

Steven M. Kay. *Modern Spectral Estimation: Theory and Application*. Prentice-Hall signal processing series. Prentice Hall, 1988. ISBN 9788131733561. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN8131733564.

James P. Keener. *Principles of Applied Mathematics; Transformation and Approximation*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Reading, Massachusets, 1988. ISBN 0-201-15674-1. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0201156741.

John Leroy Kelley. *General Topology*. University Series in Higher Mathematics. Van Nostrand, New York, 1955. ISBN 0387901256. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387901256. Republished by Springer-Verlag, New York, 1975.

Yoshida Kenko. *The Tsuredzure Gusa of Yoshida No Kaneyoshi. Being the meditations of a recluse in the 14th Century (Essays in Idleness)*. circa 1330. URL http://www.humanistictexts.org/kenko.htm. 1911 translation of circa 1330 text.

Anthony W Knapp. *Advanced Real Analysis*. Cornerstones. Birkhäuser, Boston, Massachusetts, USA, 1 edition, July 29 2005a. ISBN 0817643826. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817643826.

Anthony W Knapp. *Basic Real Analysis*. Cornerstones. Birkhäuser, Boston, Massachusetts, USA, 1 edition, July 29 2005b. ISBN 0817632506. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817632506.

Jin Au Kong. *Electromagnetic Wave Theory*. Wiley Interscience, 2 edition, 1990. ISBN 0-471-52214-7. URL http://cetaweb.mit.edu/jakong/.

Carlos S. Kubrusly. *The Elements of Operator Theory*. Springer, 1 edition, 2001. ISBN 9780817641740. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817641742.

S. Kullback and R. A. Leibler. On information and sufficiency. *The Annals of Mathematical Statistics*, 22(1):79–86, March 1951. URL https://projecteuclid.org/download/pdf_1/euclid.aoms/1177729694. https://www.jstor.org/stable/2236703.

Solomon Kullback. *Information Theory and Statistics*. John Wiley & Sons, 1959. ISBN 9780486142043. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486142043.

Traian Lalescu. *Sur les équations de Volterra*. PhD thesis, University of Paris, 1908. advisor was Émile Picard.

Traian Lalescu. *Introduction à la théorie des équations intégrales (Introduction to the Theory of Integral Equations)*. Librairie Scientifique A. Hermann, Paris, 1911. URL http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/1278521. first book about integral equations ever published.

Rupert Lasser. *Introduction to Fourier Series*, volume 199 of *Monographs and textbooks in pure and applied mathematics*. Marcel Dekker, New York, New York, USA, February 8 1996. ISBN 978-0824796105. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0824796101. QA404.L33 1996.

Peter D. Lax. *Functional Analysis*. John Wiley & Sons Inc., USA, 2002. ISBN 0-471-55604-1. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0471556041. QA320.L345 2002.

Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz. Letter to christian huygens, 1679. In Leroy E. Loemker, editor, *Philosophical Papers and Letters*, volume 2 of *The New Synthese Historical Library*, chapter 27, pages 248–249. Kluwer Academic Press, Dordrecht, 2 edition, September 8 1679. ISBN 902770693X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN902770693X.

Elliott H. Lieb and Michael Loss. *Analysis*, volume 14 of *Graduate studies in mathematics*. American Mathematical Soceity, Providence, Rhode Island, USA, 2 edition, 2001. ISBN 0821827839. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821827839.

J. Liouville. Sur l'integration d'une classe d'équations différentielles du second ordre en quantités finies explicites. *Journal De Mathematiques Pures Et Appliquees*, 4:423–456, 1839. URL http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k16383z.

Lynn H. Loomis and Ethan D. Bolker. *Harmonic analysis*. Mathematical Association of America, 1965. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=MEfvAAAAMAAJ.

Niccolò Machiavelli. *The Literary Works of Machiavelli: Mandragola, Clizia, A Dialogue on Language, and Belfagor, with Selections from the Private Correspondence*. Oxford University Press, 1961. ISBN 0313212481. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0313212481.

Stéphane G. Mallat. *A Wavelet Tour of Signal Processing*. Elsevier, 2 edition, September 15 1999. ISBN 9780124666061. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN012466606X.

R. Viswanathan Mandyam D. Srinath, P.K. Rajasekaran. *Introduction to Statistical Signal Processing with Applications*. Prentice Hall Inc, Upper Saddle River, 1996. ISBN 013125295X. URL http://engr.smu.edu/ee/mds/.

Stefan Mazur and Stanislaus M. Ulam. Sur les transformations isométriques d'espaces vectoriels normées. *Comptes rendus de l'Académie des sciences*, 194:946–948, 1932.

Heinrich Meyr, Marc Moeneclaey, and Stefan A. Fechtel. *Digital Communication Receivers; Synchronization, Channel Estimation, And Signal Processing*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1998. ISBN 0-471-50275-8. URL http://www.iss.rwth-aachen.de/1_institut/dok/meyr.html.

Anthony N. Michel and Charles J. Herget. *Applied Algebra and Functional Analysis*. Dover Publications, Inc., 1993. ISBN 0-486-67598-X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN048667598X. original version published by Prentice-Hall in 1981.

Todd K. Moon and Wynn C. Stirling. *Mathematical Methods and Algorithms for Signal Processing*. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, 2000. ISBN 0-201-36186-8. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0201361868.

James R. Munkres. *Topology*. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2 edition, 2000. ISBN 0131816292. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0131816292.

Oliver Nelles. *Nonlinear System Identification*. Springer, New York, 2001. ISBN 9783540673699.

Ben Noble and James W. Daniel. *Applied Linear Algebra*. Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, USA, 3 edition, 1988. ISBN 0-13-041260-0. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0130412600. Library QA184.N6 1988 512.5 87-11511.

Timur Oikhberg and Haskell Rosenthal. A metric characterization of normed linear spaces. *Rocky Mountain Journal Of Mathematics*, 37(2):597–608, 2007. URL http://www.ma.utexas.edu/users/rosenthl/pdf-papers/95-oikh.pdf.

Alan V. Oppenheim and Ronald W. Schafer. *Discrete-Time Signal Processing*. Prentice Hall, 2 edition, 1999. ISBN 9780137549207. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0137549202.

Judith Packer. Applications of the work of stone and von neumann to wavelets. In Robert S. Doran and Richard V. Kadison, editors, *Operator Algebras, Quantization, and Noncommutative Geometry: A Centennial Celebration Honoring John Von Neumann and Marshall H. Stone : AMS Special Session on Operator Algebras, Quantization, and Noncommutative Geometry, a Centennial Celebration Honoring John Von Neumann and Marshall H. Stone, January 15-16, 2003, Baltimore, Maryland*, volume 365 of *Contemporary mathematics—American Mathematical Society*, pages 253–280, Baltimore, Maryland, 2004. American Mathematical Society. ISBN 9780821834022. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0821834029.

Lincoln P. Paine. *Warships of the World to 1900*. Ships of the World Series. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2000. ISBN 9780395984147. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780395984149.

Anthanasios Papoulis. *Probability, Random Variables, and Stochastic Processes*. McGraw-Hill, New York, 3 edition, 1991. ISBN 0070484775. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0070484775.

Giuseppe Peano. *Calcolo geometrico secondo l'Ausdehnungslehre di H. Grassmann preceduto dalle operazioni della logica deduttiva*. Fratelli Bocca Editori, Torino, 1888a. Geometric Calculus: According to the *Ausdehnungslehre* of H. Grassmann.

Giuseppe Peano. *Geometric Calculus: According to the Ausdehnungslehre of H. Grassmann*. Springer (2000), 1888b. ISBN 0817641262. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0817641262. originally published in 1888 in Italian.

Michael Pedersen. *Functional Analysis in Applied Mathematics and Engineering*. Chapman & Hall/CRC, New York, 2000. ISBN 9780849371691. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0849371694. Library QA320.P394 1999.

John G. Proakis. *Digital Communications*. McGraw Hill, 4 edition, 2001. ISBN 0-07-232111-3. URL http://www.mhhe.com/.

Ptolemy. *Ptolemy's Almagest*. Springer-Verlag (1984), New York, circa 100AD. ISBN 0387912207. URL http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k3974x.

Shie Qian and Dapang Chen. *Joint time-frequency analysis: methods and applications*. PTR Prentice Hall, 1996. ISBN 9780132543842. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0132543842.

Charles Earl Rickart. *General Theory of Banach Algebras*. University series in higher mathematics. D. Van Nostrand Company, Yale University, 1960. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=PVrvAAAAMAAJ.

Murray Rosenblatt. Remarks on some non-parametric estimates of a density function. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics*, 27(3):832–837, September 1956. URL https://link.springer.com/content/pdf/10.1007/978-1-4419-8339-8_13.pdf. https://projecteuclid.org/download/pdf_1/euclid.aoms/1177728190.

Maxwell Rosenlicht. *Introduction to Analysis*. Dover Publications, New York, 1968. ISBN 0-486-65038-3. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486650383.

Walter Rudin. *Real and Complex Analysis*. McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, New York, USA, 3 edition, 1987. ISBN 9780070542341. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0070542341. Library QA300.R8 1976.

Walter Rudin. *Functional Analysis*. McGraw-Hill, New York, 2 edition, 1991. ISBN 0-07-118845-2. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0070542252. Library QA320.R83 1991.

Shôichirô Sakai. *C*-Algebras and W*-Algebras*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1 edition, 1998. ISBN 9783540636335. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3540636331. reprint of 1971 edition.

Louis L. Scharf. *Statistical Signal Processing*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Reading, MA, 1991. ISBN 0-201-19038-9.

Isaac Schur. Uber die charakterischen wurzeln einer linearen substitution mit enier anwendung auf die theorie der integralgleichungen (over the characteristic roots of one linear substitution with an application to the theory of the integral). *Mathematische Annalen*, 66:488–510, 1909. URL http://dz-srv1.sub.uni-goettingen.de/cache/toc/D38231.html.

Atle Selberg. Harmonic analysis and discontinuous groups in weakly symmetric riemannian spaces with applications to dirichlet series. *Journal of the Indian Mathematical Society*, 20:47–87, 1956.

Jun Shao. *Mathematical Statistics*. Springer Texts in Statistics. Springer Science & Business Media, 2003. ISBN 9780387953823. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387953825.

Bernard. W. Silverman. *Density Estimation for Statistics and Data Analysis*, volume 26 of *Monographs on Statistics & Applied Probability*. Chapman & Hall/CRC, illustrated, reprint edition, 1986. ISBN 9780412246203. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780412246203.

George Finlay Simmons. *Calculus Gems: Brief Lives and Memorable Mathematicians*. Mathematical Association of America, Washington DC, 2007. ISBN 0883855615. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0883855615.

Karl J. Smith. *The Nature of Mathematics*. Brooks/Cole Publisher, 9 edition, 1999/2000. URL http://www.mathnature.com/.

D. E. Smylie, G. K. C. Clarke, and T. J. Ulrych. *Analysis of Irregularities in the Earth's Rotation*, volume 13 of *Geophyics*, pages 391–340. Academic Press, 1973. ISBN 9780323148368. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780323148368.

Lynn Arthur Steen. Highlights in the history of spectral theory. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 80(4):359–381, April 1973. ISSN 00029890. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/2319079.

Marshall Harvey Stone. *Linear transformations in Hilbert space and their applications to analysis*, volume 15 of *American Mathematical Society. Colloquium publications*. American Mathematical Society, New York, 1932. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821810154. 1990 reprint of the original 1932 edition.

Alan Stuart and J. Keith Ord. *Kendall's Advanced Theory of Statistics Volume 2 Classical Inference and Relationship*. Hodder & Stoughton, 5 edition, 1991. ISBN 9780340560235. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780340560235.

Wim Sweldens and Robert Piessens. Wavelet sampling techniques. In *1993 Proceedings of the Statistical Computing Section*, pages 20–29. American Statistical Association, August 1993. URL http://citeseer.ist.psu.edu/18531.html.

Audrey Terras. *Fourier Analysis on Finite Groups and Applications*. Number 43 in London Mathematical Society Student Texts. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1999. ISBN 0-521-45718-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521457181.

Harry L. Van Trees. *Detection, Estimation, and Modulation Theory, Part I*. Wiley-Interscience, reprint edition edition, September 27 2001. ISBN 0471095176. URL http://ece.gmu.edu/faculty_info/van.html.

Harry L. Van Trees. *Otimum Array Processing; Part IV of Detection, Estimation, and Modulation Theory*. Wiley-Interscience, New York, 2002. ISBN 0-471-09390-4. URL http://ece.gmu.edu/faculty_info/van.html.

Stanislaw Marcin Ulam. *Adventures of a Mathematician*. University of California Press, Berkeley, 1991. ISBN 0520071549. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0520071549.

Jussi Väisälä. A proof of the mazur-ulam theorem. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 110(7):633–635, August–September 2003. URL http://www.helsinki.fi/~jvaisala/mazurulam.pdf.

Brani Vidakovic. *Statistical Modeling by Wavelets*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc, New York, 1999. ISBN 9780471293651. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0471293652.

John von Neumann. Allgemeine eigenwerttheorie hermitescher funktionaloperatoren. *Mathematische Annalen*, 102(1):49–131, 1929. ISSN 0025-5831 (print) 1432-1807 (online). URL http://resolver.sub.uni-goettingen.de/purl?GDZPPN002273535. General eigenvalue theory of Hermitian functional operators.

David F. Walnut. *An Introduction to Wavelet Analysis*. Applied and numerical harmonic analysis. Springer, 2002. ISBN 0817639624. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817639624.

Gilbert G. Walter and XiaoPing Shen. *Wavelets and Other Orthogonal Systems*. Chapman and Hall/CRC, New York, 2 edition, 2001. ISBN 9781584882275. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1584882271.

Stephen B. Wicker. *Error Control Systems for Digital Communication and Storage*. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, 1995. ISBN 0-13-200809-2. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0132008092.

Harold Widom. *Toeplitz Matrices*, volume 3 of *MAA Studies in Mathematics*, pages 179–209. Mathematical Association of America; distributed by Prentice-Hall, 1965. ISBN 9780883851036. URL https://www.worldcat.org/title/studies-in-real-and-complex-analysis/oclc/506377.

Stephen Willard. *General Topology*. Addison-Wesley Series in Mathematics. Addison-Wesley, 1970. ISBN 9780486434797. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486434796. a 2004 Dover edition has been published which "is an unabridged republication of the work originally published by the Addison-Wesley Publishing Company ...1970".

Stephen Willard. *General Topology*. Courier Dover Publications, 2004. ISBN 0486434796. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486434796. republication of 1970 Addison-Wesley edition.

Peter Willett, Peter F. Swaszek, and Rick S. Blum. The good, bad, and ugly: Distributed detection of a known signal in dependent gaussian noise. *IEEE Transactions on Signal Processing*, 48(12):3266–3279, December 2000.

P. Wojtaszczyk. *A Mathematical Introduction to Wavelets*, volume 37 of *London Mathematical Society student texts*. Cambridge University Press, February 13 1997. ISBN 9780521578943. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521578949.

G. W. Wornell and A. V. Oppenheim. Estimation of fractal signals from noisy measurements using wavelets. *IEEE Transactions on Signal Processing*, 40(3):611–623, March 1992. ISSN print: 1053-587X, electronic: 1941-0476. URL https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/abstract/document/120804.

Ahmed I. Zayed. *Handbook of Function and Generalized Function Transformations*. Mathematical Sciences Reference Series. CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1996. ISBN 0849378516. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0849378516.

Gary Zukav. *The Dancing Wu Li Masters : An Overview of the New Physics*. Bantam Books, New York, 1980. ISBN 055326382X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN055326382X.

REFERENCE INDEX

SUBJECT INDEX

License

…last page …please stop reading …